

C A N T O N E S E

BASIC COURSE VOLUME TWO



ELIZABETH LATIMORE BOYLE
with the assistance of
PAULINE NG DELBRIDGE and others

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402
Stock No. 044-000-01289-3/ Catalog No. S 1.114/2:C 16/V.2

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page
LESSON 16	1
LESSON 17	23
LESSON 18	44
LESSON 19	64
LESSON 20	93
LESSON 21	122
LESSON 22	146
LESSON 23	170
LESSON 24	195
LESSON 25	219
LESSON 26	239
LESSON 27	262
LESSON 28	283
LESSON 29	308
LESSON 30	333
CONVERSATION FOR LISTENING	355
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	384
CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY	389

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

Cháhn Táai

káhnmyaht

Néih káhnmyaht heui bíndouh a?

Léih Sàang

hóih

gwo hóih

Ngóh káhnmyaht gwo hóih.

yesterday

Where did you go yesterday?

sea

cross the sea, harbour

I went over to Kowloon

yesterday.

Cháhn Táai

Gwo hóih jough méyéh a?

Léih Sàang

háahng gūngsí

Ngóh túhng ngóh taaitáai heui

háahng gūngsí.

windowshop

I went with my wife to window-

shop.

Cháhn Táai

Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Léih Sàang

dáfógèih

Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèih.

Did you buy anything?

(cigarette) lighter

Yeah, I got a cigarette

lighter.

Cháhn Táai

daihyih-[+ M] (var: daih+M)

daihyih dí yéh

Móuh máaihndou daihyih dí yéh

áh.

other [M]

other things

You didn't buy anything else,

huh.

Léih Sàang

jihngaih

Móuh, jihngaih máaihjó go

dáfógèih jō.

-laih

only

No, just the lighter.

verb phrase suffix (see

Note 5)

Néihdeih nē?--káhyaht heui
bīndouh lāih a?

Hòh Siujé

Móuh heui gāi--
dá páai
Jihaghaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai
lāih.

Chàhn Tsai

tái heì
heiyún
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún

Ngòh túhng ngòh sīnsàng heui
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún táiheì lāih.

chēut

Néih táigwo gó chēut heì meih a?

Hòh Siujé

Juhng meih.
sīhgaan
Káhyaht móuh sīhgaan, móuh
heuidou.
gámnyaht
dākhhàahn
Gámnyaht dākhhàahn, jauh gámnyaht
heui.
tīngyaht
Àhdākhhàahn, jauh tīngyaht
heui lā.

How about you two? Where did
you go yesterday?

I didn't go out--
play mahjong

I just stayed at home and
played mahjong.

see a movie
movie theatre
Hoover Theatre (a movie
theatre in Hong Kong)

My husband and I went to the
Hoover Theatre to see a
movie.

Measure for movie

Have you seen that film?

Not yet. [still not yet]
time

I didn't have time yesterday,
and didn't go.

today
free time, leisure

If I'm free today, then I'll
go today.

tomorrow

If I'm busy, then I'll go
tomorrow.

B. Recapitulation:

(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee,
and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the
previous day, which was Sunday:)

Chàhn Tái

Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh a?

Where did you go yesterday?

Léih Sàng

Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói.

I went over to Kowloon
yesterday.

Chàhn Tái

Gwo hói jough mēyéh a?

What did you do over there?

Léih Sàng

Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitái heui
hàahng gūngsí.

I went with my wife to window-
shop.

Chàhn Tái

Yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Did you buy anything?

Léih Sàng

Yáuh--máaihjó go dáfógèi.

Yeah, I got a cigarette
lighter.

Chàhn Tái

Móuh máaihdu daihyih dí yéh
àh.

You didn't buy anything else,
huh.

Léih Sàng

Móuh, jihngaih máaihjó go
dáfógèi jē.

No, just the lighter.

Néihdeih nē?--kàhmyaht heui
bīndouh làih a?

How about you two? Where did
you go yesterday?

Hòh Siujé

Móuh heui gāai--
Jihngaih hái ngūkkéi dá páai
laih.

I didn't go out--
I just stayed at home and
played mahjong.

Chàhn Tái

Ngóh tùhng ngóh sīnsàng heui
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún tái hei làih.

My husband and I went to the
Hoover Theatre to see a
movie.

Néih táigwo go cheut hei meih a?

Have you seen that film?

Hòh Siuyé

Juhng meih.
Kàhmyaht móuh síhgaan, móuh
heuidou.

Not yet.
I didn't have time yesterday,
and didn't go.

Gàmyaht dākhaahn, jauh gàmyaht
heui.

If I'm free today, then I'll
go today.

Mhdākhaahn, jauh tìngyaht
heui lā.

If I'm busy, then I'll go
tomorrow.

II. NOTES

1. Verb forms: past reference.

a. Class 1 Verbs: those partially distinguishing past and non-past forms.

Most verbs exhibit partial distinction between past and non-past forms. The basic affirmative form for past and non-past is the same, but the negative and choice question forms differ.

Ex: **sihk** = eat; ate

past:	aff: sihk	ate
	neg: móuh sihk	didn't eat
	que: yáuh móuh sihk a?	did (he) eat?
non-past:	aff: sihk	eat
	neg: m̀sihk	doesn't eat
	que: sihk m̀sihk a?	does (he) eat?

Example sentences:

a	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht sihk Sāichāan.	He ate Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht sihk Sāichāan.	He is going to eat Western food tomorrow.
n	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh sihk Sāichāan.	He didn't eat Western food yesterday.
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht m̀sihk Sāichāan.	He's not going to eat Western food tomorrow.
q	Past	Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sihk Sāichāan a?	Did he eat Western food yesterday?
	Non-Past	Kéuih tìngyaht sihk m̀sihk Sāichāan a?	Is he going to eat western food tomorrow?

(See Drills 3, 4, 5)

From the point of view of semantic meaning, the verbs that pattern as described above can be called performance verbs, since they are verbs that denote actions performed. For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 1 Verbs.

b. Class 2 Verbs: those showing no distinction between past and non-past.

A few verbs make no distinction in form between past and non-past.

These verbs use the same forms for the affirmative, negative and choice-question for both past and non-past.

Ex: yáuh = have; had

yáuh sih = have something to do; had something to do

Example sentences:

a	Past	Ngóh <u>káhmyaht yáuh</u> sih.	I had some business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh <u>tìngyaht yáuh</u> sih.	I have some business to do tomorrow.
n	Past	Ngóh <u>káhmyaht móuh</u> sih.	I didn't have any business to do yesterday.
	Non-Past	Ngóh <u>tìngyaht móuh</u> sih.	I don't have any business to do tomorrow.
q	Past	Néih <u>káhmyaht yáuh móuh</u> sih a?	Did you have any business to do yesterday?
	Non-Past	Néih <u>tìngyaht yáuh móuh</u> sih a?	Do you have any business to do tomorrow?

In addition to yáuh, other verbs which show no distinction in form between past and non-past include:

hái, 'is located'

haih, 'is'

most auxiliary verbs: ex: jùngyi, 'like'

Adjectives: ex: hóu, 'good'

(See Drills 1, 2)

Semantically, these verbs can be called 'non-performance verbs,' or 'steady-state verbs,' or perhaps 'existence verbs.' For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 2 Verbs.

2. Past reference with uninflected verb to express general activity.

For describing general activity performed in the past, Cantonese uses the plain form of the verb, without any suffixes.

Examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ngūkkéi tái syu. | Yesterday at home I read. |
| 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihk Sāichāan. | Yesterday I ate Western food. |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yāuhséui. | Yesterday I went swimming. |
| 4. Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói hàahng gūngsí. | Yesterday I went across the harbour to windowshop. |
| 5. Ngóh yíhchíhn hohk Yíngmàhn. | I formerly studied English. |

The general activity sentence with uninflected verb is more apt to be a 'set the stage' initiating sentence which starts a conversation than it is to be a follow sentence. The follow sentences, describing particular things accomplished within the general activity, are apt to be V + suffix sentences. Remember the rainy day 'I went to see my Grandmother' game of your childhood which goes down the alphabet with things you took along? 'I went to see my grandmother and I took an apple, a box, a cocconut, etc.' Cantonese would render the general activity 'I went to see my grandmother' part with an uninflected verb and the particular accomplishments, 'took A, B, C' part with a two-part (performance + accomplishment) verb + suffix.

3. Past reference with verb + suffix, to express performance + achievement, experience, success, or other information.

The role of verb suffixes in Cantonese is to give additional information about the action performed-- that it has been done before, that the objective was achieved, that the performance was temporary, etc.

Examples:

1. Ngóh máaihjó go dáfógei. [I buy-accomplish a cigarette lighter.]
i.e., I accomplish the purchasing of a cigarette lighter; I bought a cigarette lighter.

(Think of buying as a performance of dickering back and forth. Then you see that maaih-jó is to dicker for and achieve the objective of purchasing, to engage in a purchase transaction and carry it through.)

2. Ngóh síhkgwo Jùngchoi,
daahnhaih ngóh kahm-
yaht dòu síh Saichāan.

I eat-experience Chinese food, but I
yesterday in every case eat Western
food.

i.e., I have had the experience of
eating Chinese food, but yesterday
in every case I ate Western food.

4. Role of verb suffixes in English and Cantonese compared.

In English verb suffixes are time-markers, relating the moment of speaking (i.e., now) to the moment spoken about (past, present, future). Note, for example, how the suffixes -s and -ed in English give information on the relation of time of speaking and time spoken about in the sentences: 'She loves me.' and 'She loved me.' In English the verb form changes according to the time spoken about, and this change is compulsory. In sentences relating to the past, English uses a past form of the verb, and in sentences relating to non-past time, a non-past form.

In Cantonese, verb suffixes themselves do not indicate when the performance took/takes/will take/ place in relation to the time of speaking, as verb suffixes do in English. In Cantonese, different suffixes represent 'accomplish,' 'succeed,' 'good,' 'possible,' 'temporary,' 'in progress,' etc. (It is very hard to talk about this in English, because when you make a sentence in English, you have to put past or present marks on the verbs. 'Perform-accomplish' doesn't make sense in English, you have to say 'performance accomplished' in which case you indicate that it has already happened, or 'Performance will have been accomplished' in which case you indicate that it hasn't happened yet but will have by the time you are speaking of, and so on.) For example, in Cantonese, Verb-jó = 'perform-accomplish,' indicates that the performance is viewed from the standpoint of its being accomplished, but when Verb-jó occurs in a subordinate clause without a timeword as clue, the sentence must rely on context, not grammar, to determine whether it refers to a past event or a non-past one. (Example given on following page.)

Ex: Gwojó sàam go gàaiháu,
jauh haih laak.

(1) (He) crossed three intersections,
then (there it) was.

(2) (After you) cross three inter-
sections, then (there it) is.

(gwojó = pass-accomplish) i.e.,
cross (an intersection)

i.e., When you have crossed three
intersections, it'll be right
there.

In a later lesson you will encounter another use of -jó in reference
to non-past.

5. VP + sen. suf. làih in past reference sentences

VP + làih is used in two different types of past reference sentences,
with different stress on làih in each and different meanings of the
VP + làih set.

1) Movement VP + làih, to indicate having returned from having been away.

The làih in this instance receives medium stress.

- Ex: 1. Néih heui bīndouh làih a? Where have you been?
2. Néih kàhmyaht heui bīndouh làih a? Where did you go yesterday?
làih a?
3. Kéuih ngāamngāam heuilàih. He has just returned from
having been away.

(See BC)

2) VP + làih in a response sentence which contradicts the stimulus
sentence's assertion of action performed. The speaker emphasizes
by VP + làih that that was the action done, not what the stimulus
sentence asserts or implies. The làih in this instance receives
light stress. In this use the verb of the VP to which làih is
attached does not have to be a movement verb, though it can be.

Ex: A: Néih saimúí wah ngóh jī néih kàhmyaht heui tai hei. Your younger sister told me
you went to the movies
yesterday.

B: Mhahai gwā! Ngóh hái ngúkkei dá paai làih-- Un-un! I played mahjong at
home, that's what-- (I)
mouh heui tai hei. didn't go to the movies.

(See BC and Drill 9)

séung has another meaning-- 'to think of'-- with the connotation 'it occurred to me.' In this sense séung takes móuh and yáuh móuh? in sentences of past reference.

Ex: Ngóh kàhmyaht séung heui.	I thought of going yesterday.
Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh séung-dou heui.	It didn't occur to me to go yesterday.
Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh séung heui a?	Did it occur to you to go yesterday?

III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from affirmative to negative.

Ex: T: Ngóh sām dím bun
dākhàahn.

I'm free at three-thirty.

S: Ngóh sām dím bun
mhdākhàahn.

I'm busy at three-thirty.
[I'm not free at 3:30.]

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht dākhàahn.
I was free yesterday. | 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhdākhàahn.
I wasn't free yesterday. |
| + 2. Ngóh ní páai dākhàahn.
<u>/recently, these few days/</u>
I've been free lately.
I'll be free these few days. | 2. Ngóh ní páai mhdākhàahn.
I've been busy lately.
I'll be busy these few days. |
| 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht dākhàahn. | 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhdākhàahn. |
| 4. Ngóh gǎmyaht dākhàahn. | 4. Ngóh gǎmyaht mhdākhàahn. |
| 5. Ngóh sígēi yǐngā dākhàahn. | 5. Ngóh sígēi yǐngā mhdākhàahn. |
| 6. Ngóh tǐngyaht yāt dím
dākhàahn. | 6. Ngóh tǐngyaht yāt dím mhdāk-
hàahn. |
| 7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dím
dākhàahn. | 7. Ngóh kàhmyaht sei dím
mhdākhàahn. |

Repeat: Students changing statement into question, thus:

T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dāk-
hàahn.

I was free yesterday.

S: Néih kàhmyaht dāk-
hàahn a?

Were you busy yesterday?

Comment: Adjectives exhibit no formal distinction between past and non-past.

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tǐngyaht hái
úkkéi.

He will be home tomorrow.

S: Kéuih kàhmyaht hái
úkkéi.

He was home yesterday.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih tǐngyaht dāk mhdāk-
hàahn a? | 1. Néih kàhmyaht dāk mhdāk-
hàahn a? |
| 2. Ngóh tǐngyaht yáuh sih. | 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht yáuh sih. |
| 3. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhdākhàahn. | 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhdākhàahn. |
| 4. Ngóh tǐngyaht mhsái fàangùng. | 4. Ngóh kàhmyaht mhsái fàangùng. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5. Ngóh tǐngyaht m̄hséung heui taam kéuih.
Tomorrow I don't want to go see her. | 5. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̄hséung heui taam kéuih.
Yesterday I didn't want to go see her. |
| 6. Néih tǐngyaht yáuh móuh sih a? | 6. Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh sih a? |
| 7. Kéuih tǐngyaht hái m̄hhái séjihlauh a? | 7. Kéuih kàhmyaht hái m̄hhái séjihlauh a? |
| 8. Ngóh tǐngyaht m̄hgau sihgaan gwo hóih. | 8. Ngóh kàhmyaht m̄hgau sihgaan gwo hóih. |
| 9. Ngóh tǐngyaht móuh sihgaan. | 9. Ngóh kàhmyaht móuh sihgaan. |
| 10. Ngóh tǐngyaht séung tái chēut hei. | 10. Ngóh kàhmyaht séung tái chēut hei. |

Comment: Non-performance verbs do not differentiate past and non-past by verb form.

3. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from tǐngyaht to kàhmyaht.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht dá m̄hjáuk.
+ | T: He's going to <u>play mahjong</u> tomorrow. |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dá m̄hjáuk. | S: He played mahjong yesterday. |
| 2. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht m̄hdá m̄hjáuk. | T: He's not going to play mahjong tomorrow. |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá m̄hjáuk. | S: He didn't play mahjong yesterday. |
| 3. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht dá m̄hdá m̄h-jéuk a? | T: Is he going to play mahjong tomorrow? |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá m̄h-jéuk a? | S: Did he play mahjong yesterday? |
| 1. Kéuih tǐngyaht dá dihnwá bēi néih. | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht dá dihnwá bēi néih. |
| 2. Kéuih tǐngyaht m̄hdá dihnwá bēi néih. | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá dihnwá bēi néih. |
| 3. Kéuih tǐngyaht dá m̄hdá dihnwá bēi néih a? | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá dihnwá bēi néih a? |
| 4. Kéuih tǐngyaht fàanlaih. | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht fàanlaih. |
| 5. Kéuih tǐngyaht m̄hfàanlaih. | 5. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlaih. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. Kéuih tǐngyaht fàan mǎfàan-làih a? | 6. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh fàanlàih a? |
| 7. Kéuih tǐngyaht wán néih. | 7. Kéuih kàhmyaht wán néih. |
| 8. Kéuih tǐngyaht mǎhwán néih. | 8. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán néih. |
| 9. Kéuih tǐngyaht wán mǎhwán néih a? | 9. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán néih a? |
| + 10. Kéuih tǐngyaht heui <u>yàuhséui</u> .
(swim)
He's going swimming to-morrow. | 10. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui yàuh-séui.
He went swimming yesterday. |
| 11. Kéuih tǐngyaht mǎheui yauhseui. | 11. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yauhseui. |
| 12. Kéuih tǐngyaht heui mǎheui yauhseui a? | 12. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yauhseui a? |

4. Transformation Drill: Pos → Neg

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gàulùhng. | He went over to Kowloon yesterday. |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gàulùhng. | He didn't go over to Kowloon yesterday. |
| 2. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht gwo Gàulùhng. | He's going over to Kowloon tomorrow. |
| S: Kéuih tǐngyaht mǎgwo Gàulùhng. | He's not going over to Kowloon tomorrow. |
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui tái hei. | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui tái hei. |
| + 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui <u>dá bō</u> .
/play ball/ | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui dá bō. |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang tǐngyaht heui Méihgwok. | 3. Wòhng Sàang tǐngyaht mǎheui Méihgwok. |
| 4. Chàhn Táai tǐngyaht heui Jùngwàahn. | 4. Chàhn Táai tǐngyaht mǎheui Jùngwàahn. |
| 5. Ngóh taaitái kàhmyaht heui yám chàh. | 5. Ngóh taaitái kàhmyaht móuh heui yám chàh. |
| 6. Ngóh sǐnsàang tǐngyaht heui Gàulùhng taam pǎhngyáuh. | 6. Ngóh sǐnsàang tǐngyaht mǎheui Gàulùhng taam pǎhngyáuh. |
| 7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng lô chín. | 7. Ngóh go jái kàhmyaht móuh heui ngàhnhòhng lô chín. |

Repeat as choice-type question transformation.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo
Gáulùhng. | He went over to Kowloon
yesterday. |
| S: Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh
móuh gwo Gáulùhng
a? | Did he go over to Kowloon
yesterday? |
| 2. T: Kéuih tìngyaht gwo
Gáulùhng. | He will go over to Kowloon
tomorrow. |
| S: Kéuih tìngyaht gwo
m̀hgwò Gáulùhng a? | Will he go over to Kowloon
tomorrow? |

5. Transformation Drill: Change haih m̀hhaih Verb? to the suitable form of Verb m̀h Verb?

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Néih tìngyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui tái hei
a? | T: Are you going to the movies
tomorrow? |
| S: Néih tìngyaht heui
m̀hheui tái hei
a? | S: Will you go to the movies
tomorrow? |
| T: Néih kàhmyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui tái
hei a? | T: Did you go to the movies
yesterday? |
| S: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh
móuh heui tái
hei a? | S: Did you go to the movies
yesterday? |
-
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Néih sígēi tìngyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a? | 1. Néih sígēi tìngyaht heui
m̀hheui Gáulùhng a? |
| 2. Chàhn Sàang tìngyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui yám chàh a? | 2. Chàhn Sàang tìngyaht heui
m̀hheui yám chàh a? |
| 3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui Jùngwàahn a? | 3. Néih taaitáai kàhmyaht
yáuh móuh heui Jùngwàahn
a? |
| 4. Gó go yàhn kàhmyaht haih
m̀hhaih heui Gáulùhng a? | 4. Gó go yàhn kàhmyaht yáuh
móuh heui Gáulùhng a? |
| + 5. Néih dī <u>sailóugō</u> tìngyaht
haih m̀hhaih heui Méihgwok a?
(<u>child(ren)</u>) | 5. Néih dī <u>sailóugō</u> tìngyaht
heui m̀hheui Méihgwok a? |

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai. /tái hei/

T: I played mahjong yesterday.
/see movie/

S: Ngóh kàhmyaht dá páai làih--móuh tái hei.

S: I played mahjong yesterday,
I didn't see a movie.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh. /tái hei/ | 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui chàhlàuh yám chàh làih--móuh tái hei. |
| + 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ùkkéi tái <u>dihnsih</u> . (watch television) /cheut gāai/ | 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht hái ùkkéi tái dihnsih làih--móuh cheut gāai. |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín. /yàuhséui/ | 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui ngàhnhòhng ló chín làih--móuh yàuhséui. |
| 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá. /dá páai/ | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht gaau ngóh Gwóngdùngwá làih--móuh dá páai. |
| 5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui. /tái dihnsih/ | 5. Ngóh kàhmyaht heui yàuhséui làih--móuh tái dihnsih. |

Comment: The suffix--laih is used in the past reference sentence in the affirmative form only. The speaker emphasizes with VP-laih that that was the activity he did, not some other activity. The plainfact sentence without laih has no special emphasis.

7. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih sēutsāam làih. /sāam gihn/

T: I bought some shirts yesterday. /3 unit/

S1: Máaihjó géidō gihn nē?

S1: How many did you buy?
[buy-accomplish how many?]

S2: Máaihjó sāam gihn.

S2: I bought three.
[buy-accomplish three.]

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht yám bējáu làih. /léuhng jí/ | 1. S1: Yámjó géidō jí a?
S2: Yámjó léuhng jí. |
| 2. Ngóh kàhmyaht sihk pihnggwó làih. /sei go/ | 2. S1: Sihkjó géidō go a?
S2: Sihkjó sei go. |
| 3. Ngóh kàhmyaht ló chín làih. /yāt baak mán/ | 3. S1: Lójó géidō a?
S2: Lójó yāt baak mán. |

4. Ngóh kàhmyaht máaih maht làih. /sàam deui/ 4. S1: Máaihjó géidō deui a?
S2: Máaihjó sàam deui.

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih kàhmyaht móuh máaih sēutsāam àh. T: You didn't buy a shirt yesterday, did you.
S: Yáuh! Máaihjó la. S: Yes, I did buy one.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái hei àh.
You didn't see a movie yesterday, did you. | 1. Yáuh! Táijó la.
<u>Yes</u> , I <u>did</u> see one. |
| 2. Wòhng Sàang kàhmyaht móuh <u>chéng haak</u> ah.
Mr. Wong didn't <u>have a dinner party</u> yesterday, did he. | 2. Yáuh! Chéngjó la. |
| 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh fàanlài àh. | 3. Yáuh! Fàanjó la. |
| 4. Néih kàhmyaht móuh tái yī-sāng àh. | 4. Yáuh! Táijó la. |
| 5. Néih kàhmyaht móuh cheung chin àh. | 5. Yáuh! Cheungjó la. |

Comment: chéng haak = have a dinner party
chéng sihk faahn, chéng yàhn sihk faahn = invite someone for dinner.

9. Response Drill: Contradict the other person's impression.

Ex: T: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá páai àh. He didn't play mahjong yesterday, did he.
S: Yáuh! Dá làih. Yes, he did play.

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh wán kéuih àh. | 1. Yáuh, wán làih. |
| 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh dá bò àh. | 2. Yáuh, dá làih. |
| 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tái dihn-sih àh. | 3. Yáuh, tái làih. |
| 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh heui yáuhséui àh. | 4. Yáuh, heui làih. |

Comment: The answers in Drills 8 and 9 above represent spirited denial. Ordinary denial would be:

Q: ...móuh tái hei àh. Q: ...didn't see a movie, huh.
A: Yáuh, yáuh tái. A: Yes, I did.

10. Expansion-Transformation Drill: Expand or transform as appropriate.

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulühng taam sînsaang.
/haih mhhaih a?/
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih mhhaih gwo Gáulühng taam sînsaang a?
Y: Yesterday he crossed over to Kowloon to see his teacher. /isn't that right?/
S: Did he cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher?
2. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht haih mhhaih gwo Gáulühng taam sînsaang a? /móuh/
S: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulühng taam sînsaang.
Y: Did he cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher? /didn't/
S: He didn't cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh.
/kàhmyaht/ | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh. |
| 2. /móuh/ | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh. |
| 3. /yáuh móuh a?/ | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh a? |
| 4. /haih mhhaih/ | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih mhhaih gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh a? |
| 5. /mhhaih aak/ | 5. Kéuih kàhmyaht mhhaih gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh aak. |
| 6. /haih aak/ | 6. Kéuih kàhmyaht haih gwo Gáulühng máaih yéh aak. |

11. Question and Answer drill

- Ex: T: /tái dihnsih/ /watch television/
S₁ Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái dihnsih a? Did you watch television yesterday?
S₂ Yáuh, yáuh tái. Yes, I did.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1. /dá bō/ | 1. S ₁ : Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh dá bō a?
S ₂ : Yáuh, yáuh dá. |
| 2. /tái syù/ | 2. S ₁ : Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái syù a?
S ₂ : Yáuh, yáuh tái. |

3. /yám jáu/ 3. S₁: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh yám jáu a?
S₂: Yáuh, yáuh yám.
4. /heui yám chàh/ 4. S₁: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh heui yám chàh
a?
S₂: Yáuh, yéuh heui.
5. /tái yísāng/ 5. S₁: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh tái yísāng a?
S₂: Yáuh, yáuh tái.
6. /wán kéuih/ 6. S₁: Néih kàhmyaht yáuh móuh wán kéuih a?
S₂: Yáuh, yáuh wán.

Comment: The above represents the ordinary way to ask and answer with no special emphasis or assumption.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to worklist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) wáan = amuse oneself, play (general verb for leisure time activity)
- 2) sóyih = therefore
- 3) dá móhng kàuh = play tennis
 - a) móhng kàuh = tennis ball
- 4) Bóuwàhn Douh = Power Road
- 5) kàuh chèuhng = tennis court
- 6) daih yaht = daih (yih) yaht = another day
- 7) beisyù = secretary
- 8) Mámèihlāai = Manila
- 9) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
- 10) gūngjái = doll
- 11) Wei! = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's attention
- 12) yārchàih = together
- 13) ginmihh = meet

- 14) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.
 15) M'óuh heui bīndouh. = Haven't gone anywhere.
 16) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way:
 'This is pretty obvious.'
 17) haih bo = here: by the way, ...
 18) máaih sung = buy groceries

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. You say to the classmate sitting next to you: | B. And he responds: |
| 1. What'd you do yesterday? | 1. I went to the movies with my wife. |
| 2. What movie did you see? | 2. I forget the name. |
| 3. I didn't go out yesterday, I stayed at home watching television. | 3. I watched television yesterday too. |
| 4. Where'd you go yesterday? I went to your house to look for you, but you weren't home. | 4. I went swimming yesterday. |
| 5. I'd like to learn to play mahjong-- could you teach me? | 5. Sure. When are you free these days? |
| 6. Could you please tell me how to get to the Hoover Theater? | 6. First go to the next intersection and turn left, then go straight until the second intersection, and it's on the right hand side. |
| 7. What would you like to do today-- play ball or go swimming? | 7. I went swimming yesterday, let's play ball today. |
| 8. Did you go to Kowloon to see your girl friend yesterday? | 8. No, I was very busy yesterday and didn't go. |
| 9. I went to the Central District yesterday to buy shoes-- I bought a pair of white ones. | 9. I went shopping for shoes too, but I didn't buy any. |
| 10. (still talking about yesterday) I bought a nice-looking lighter at a department store. | 10. I also wanted to buy a lighter, but I didn't get one. |
| 11. My son played ball yesterday. Did your son go? | 11. No, he didn't. He stayed home and read. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 12. Miss Chan went to the movies with Mr. Lee yesterday. | 12. Not so! She didn't go with Mr. Lee, she went with me! |
| 13. Mr. Lee took Miss Chan swimming yesterday. | 13. Not so! They didn't go swimming, they stayed at Miss Chan's house and played mahjong. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 16

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. bō | n: ball |
| 2. chéng haak | VO: have a dinner party [invite-guests] |
| 3. chéng sihk faahn, <u>or</u>
cheng yahn sihk faahn | VO: invite someone to dinner |
| 4. chēut | m: M for a movie, a film |
| 5. dá bō | VO: play ball |
| 6. dá mǎhjeuk | VO: play mahjong |
| 7. dá páai | VO: play mahjong [hit-tiles] |
| 8. dáfógei | n: (cigarette) lighter |
| 9. daihdí | Ph: var. of 'daihyih dí,' others, other (ones) |
| 10. daihyih (+ M) | another (M) [lit: the 2d M] |
| 11. daihyih dí | Ph: others, other (ones) [lit: the 2d ones] |
| 12. dākhaahn | Adj: free, at leisure |
| 13. dihsih | n: television |
| 14. gāmyaht | TW: today |
| 15. gwo hói | VO: cross the sea, harbor |
| 16. hāahng gūngsī | VO: windowshop |
| 17. hei | n: movie |
| 18. heiyún | n/PW: movie theater |
| 19. hói | n: sea |
| 20. Hòuh wàh Heiyún | PW: Hoover Theater |
| 21. jihngaih <u>V</u> | Adv: just, merely, only <u>V</u> |
| 22. kàmyaht | TW: yesterday |
| 23. -laih | ss: suffixed to a heui VP,
indicates that person spoken
about has returned from where he went |
| 24. -laih | ss: VP suffix in response sentence
adding connotation of 'that's what
happened, not the thing you thought' |

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 25. mǎh jéuk | m: mahjong |
| 26. mǎh dāk hāahn | Adj: busy |
| 27. nǐ pǎai | TW: lately, recently, these few days |
| 28. sǎi lóugō | n: child, children |
| 29. sǐh gaan | n: time |
| 30. tái dihnsih | VO: watch television |
| 31. tái hei | VO: see a movie |
| 32. tǐng yaht | TW: tomorrow |
| 33. yǎuh séui | VO: swim; swimming |
-

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Two acquaintances, one Chinese, one American, talk together at a party:)

Jüנגgwokyähñ

noih	long (time)
hóu noih móuh gin	'long time no see'
Wòhng Sàang! Hóu noih móuh gin	Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you
bo.	in a long time.
fàanheui	go back, return
fàanheui Méihgwok	go back to America
lái hbaai	week
hah go lái hbaai	next week
hah go lái hbaai fàanheui	go back next week
tèngginwah	hear tell, I hear ...
Tèngginwah néih hah go lái hbaai	I hear you're going back to
fàanheui Méihgwok--hah	the States next week--is that
mhah a?	right?

Méihgwokyähñ

Móuh cho.	That's right.
-houh	day of the month
yahluhk houh	the 26th (of the month)
dásyun	plan on, plan to
dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui	plan to go back on the 26th
lái hbaaisei	Thursday
jíkhah	that is, in other words,
	that is to say
Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh	I plan to go back on the 26th-
fàanheui--jíkhah lái hbaaisei.	-Thursday, that is.

Jüנגgwokyähñ

Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.	I plan to go to America, too.
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

Méihgwokyähñ

Hah mē? Néih géisih heui nē?	Is that so?! When are you going?
------------------------------	----------------------------------

Jùnggwokyáhn

wah m̀hdihng	can't say for sure; uncertain
Wah m̀hdihng ga.	I'm not sure.
chēutnín	next year
yihyuht	February
Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.

Méihgwokyáhn

Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo	Have you ever been to the
Méihgwok a?	States before?

Jùnggwokyáhn

-níhn	year
yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt níhn	in 1967
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt níhn	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
heuilàih.	

Méihgwokyáhn

deihfòng	place
bīn dī deihfòng	which places?
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?

Jùnggwokyáhn

Sàamfàahnsíh	San Francisco
Wáhsihngdeuhn	Washington
Heuigwo Sàamfàahnsíh túhng	I went to San Francisco and
Wáhsihngdeuhn jē.	Washington, that's all.
daat	Measure for <u>deihfòng</u>
gó léuhng daat deihfòng	those two places
chānchík	relatives
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh	In those two places I have
dōu yáuh chānchík hái douh.	relatives.

Méihgwokyáhn

hahchi	next time
Néih hahchi haih m̀hahih dōuhaih	Will you go to Washington
heui Wáhsihngdeuhn a?	next time, too?

Jùnggwokyáhn

Haih a.	That's right.
---------	---------------

Méihgwokyáhn

deihjí
 Dáng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí
 béi néih lā.
 jigányiu

address

Let me write my address and
 give it to you.

be sure to, by all means
 do [most important]

Lāih chóh lā.

'Come visit me.' [come sit]

Doujó Wáhsihngdeuhn jigányiu
 lāih ngóhdouh chóh ā.

When you get to Washington, be
 sure to come see me.

Júnggwokyáhn

A: Ngóh dōu àhjí néih ngūkkéi
 hái Wáhsihngdeuhn tím.

Oh--I didn't know your home
 was in Washington.

Méihgwokyáhn

chēutsai
 Haih a. Ngóh hái gódeuh chēutsai
 ge.

born

Yes, I was born there.

B. Recapitulation:Júnggwokyáhn

Wòhng Sàang! Hóu noih móuh
 gin bo.
 Tèngginwah néih hah go lāihbaai
 fàanheui Méihgwok--hah
 àhhah a?

Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you
 in a long time.

I hear you're going back to
 the States next week--is
 that right?

Méihgwokyáhn

Móuh cho.

That's right.

Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh fàanheui-
 -jǐkhaih lāihbaaisei.

I plan to go back on the 26th--
 Thursday, that is.

Júnggwokyáhn

Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.

I'm planning to go to America,
 too.

Méihgwokyáhn

Haih mē? Néih géisih heui nē?

Is that so?! When are you going?

Júnggwokyáhn

Wah àhdihng ga--

I'm not sure--

Waahkjé chéutnín yihyuht lā.	Maybe February next year.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Néih yáuh nóuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?	Have you ever been to the States before?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Yáuh--yāt-gáu-luhk-chāt nihh heuiláih.	Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Heuigwo bīn dī deihfòng a?	What places did you go?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Heuigwo Sàanfàahnsih tùhng Wáhsihngdeuhn jē.	I went to San Fransisco and Washington, that's all.
Gó léuhng daat deihfòng ngóh dōu yáuh chānchík hái douh.	In those two places I have relatives.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Néih hahchi haih mhhaih dōuhaih heui Wáhsihngdeuhn a?	Will you go to Washington next time too?
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
Haih .	That's right.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Dáng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí béi néih lā.	Let me write my address for you.
Doujō Wáhsihngdeuhn jigányiu làih ngóhdouh chók lā.	When you get to Washington be sure to come visit me.
<u>Júnggwokyáhn</u>	
A! Ngóh dōu mǎhjí néih ngúkkéi hái Wáhsihngdeuhn tím.	Oh--I didn't know your home was in Washington.
<u>Méihgwokyáhn</u>	
Haih a. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsái ge.	Yes, I was born there.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

1. Lunar and solar calendar. In Hong Kong dates are reckoned by the solar calendar. Many people, however, reckon the dates of births, deaths, and weddings by the traditional lunar calendar. (On traditional Chinese wedding invitations both the lunar date and the solar date are given.)
2. Where you're born and where you're from. Traditionally a Chinese counts himself as being from the place where his ancestral village is, which may or may not be where he was born and brought up. A similar way of looking at things might be held by a person born to American parents living outside the U.S.

B. Structure Notes:

1. Fixed order in dates and addresses. Larger units precede smaller in descending order:

Ex: chēutníhn yihyuht next year on February 3rd
saam houh

(See BC and Drill 6)

Addresses are given in the same descending order:

Ex: Ngóh ge séjihlauh My office is at 149 Queen's Road
hai Daaih Douh Jung Central, on the 3rd floor.
yāt-sei-gáu houh,
sei lau.

2. Dates.

- a. Days of the week. Starting with Monday as the first day, Monday through Saturday are serially numbered:

1. Láihbaaiyāt	Monday
2. Láihbaaiyih	Tuesday
3. Láihbaaisaam	Wednesday
4. Láihbaaisei	Thursday
5. Láihbaaiñgh	Friday
6. Láihbaailuhk	Saturday
7. Láihbaai(yaht)	Sunday

Láihbaai is commonly used for 'Sunday'; but láihbaai also means 'week.' Láihbaaiyáht, 'Sunday,' may be used in sentences which would be ambiguous with the use of láihbaai; generally, however, context makes the meaning clear.

- Ex: 1. Tíngyáht láihbaai. Tomorrow is Sunday.
 2. Ngóh hángo láihbaai } I'm busy next week. or
 mhdákhaahn. } I'm busy next Sunday.

(See Drill 2)

Another word for 'week' is síngkèih. Síngkèih is substitutable for láihbaai everywhere, with one exception: Síngkèih is not used to mean 'Sunday.'

b. Months of the year. Starting with January as the first month, January through December are serially numbered.

yātyuht	January	chātyuht	July
yihyuht	February	baatyuht	August
sāamyuht	March	gāuyuht	September
seiyuht	April	sahpyuht	October
nghyuht	May	sahpyātyuht	November
luhkyuht	June	sahpyihyuht	December

c. Years.

1. -nìhn, 'year,' is preferred, but not obligatory, in year dates.

- Ex: yāt-gáu-yāt-yāt (nìhn) 1911
 yāt-gáu-sei-gáu-(nìhn) 1949

2. Note that -nín is a rising tone in:

gauh [́] nín	last year
gám [́] nín	this year
chēut [́] nín	next year

-nìhn is, however, used by some people in these phrases:

gauh[̀]nìhn
 gám[̀]nìhn
 chēut[̀]nìhn

d. Question-Word formulas for dates:

bīn nih̄n?	which (<u>or</u> what) year?
bīn nih̄n bīn yuht bīn yaht?	what date?
gēi yuht?	which (<u>or</u> what) month?
gēi(dō) houh?	which (<u>or</u> what) day?
lāihbaaigēi?	which (<u>or</u> what) day of the week?
bīn yaht?	which (<u>or</u> what) day? (answer stated as day of week or tingyaht, gamyaht, etc.)

(See Drill 3)

3. Timewords.

- a. A word or phrase which can fill the position before or after ji 'until,' 'to' is a Timeword (TW).

Ex: Lāihbaaisei ji lāihbaailuhk Thursday to Saturday

Kéuih lāihbaaisei ji lāihbaailuhk He has to go to work
 yiu faangung. from Thursday until
 Saturday.

- b. Timewords fill the Time When position before a verb. (See example above.)

- c. Names of months are Timewords, but one month, two months, etc., are number-measure compounds that cannot fill the Timeword position. Instead they fill the length of time (time span) position after the verb.

Ex:	<u>TimeWhen</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Time-span</u>
1. Kéuih	Sáamyuht	heui.	He's going in March.
2. Kéuih séung	heui	sáam go yuht.	He plans to go for three months.

4. Sentence suffix lā, for uncertainty.

Suffixed to sentences predicting time of an action the raised intonation lā suggests a degree of uncertainty, suggests that the time is approximate rather than exact.

Ex: 1. A. Néih géi dím yiu jáu a?	When do you have to go?
B. Léuhng dím lā.	About two o'clock.
2. A. Néih géisih heui a?	When are you going?
B. Waahkjé chēutnín yihyuht lā.	Oh, probably February next year.

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill:

- | | |
|---|---|
| + 1. a. <u>yuht</u> | 1. a. <u>month</u> |
| + b. <u>hahgo yuht</u> | b. <u>next month</u> |
| c. hahgo yuht heui | c. go next month |
| d. hahgo yuht fàanheui | d. go back next month |
| e. dásyun hahgo yuht fàanheui | e. plan to go back next month |
| f. Ngóh dásyun hahgo yuht fàanheui Yíngwok. | f. I plan to go back to England next month. |

2. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|--|
| + 1. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyāt</u> heui tái hei.
I'm going to a movie <u>Monday</u> . | 1. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyāt</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 2. / <u>láhbaaiyih</u> /
(<u>Tuesday</u>) | 2. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyih</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 3. / <u>láhbaaisàam</u> /
(<u>Wednesday</u>) | 3. Ngóh <u>láhbaaisàam</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 4. / <u>láhbaaiŋgh</u> /
(<u>Friday</u>) | 4. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiŋgh</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 5. / <u>láhbaailuhk</u> /
(<u>Saturday</u>) | 5. Ngóh <u>láhbaailuhk</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 6. / <u>láhbaaiyaht</u> /
(<u>Sunday</u>) | 6. Ngóh <u>láhbaaiyaht</u> heui tái hei. |
| + 7. / <u>láhbaai</u> /
(<u>Sunday</u>) | 7. Ngóh <u>láhbaai</u> heui tái hei. |

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge.
He came yesterday. | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht làih ge. |
| + 2. / <u>gauh nín</u> /
(<u>last year</u>) | 2. Kéuih gauh nín làih ge. |
| + 3. / <u>gám nín</u> /
(<u>this year</u>) | 3. Kéuih gám nín làih ge.
He came this year. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| + 4. / <u>seuhng go yuht</u> / | 4. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih ge. |
| + 5. / <u>seuhng go làihbaai</u> / | 5. Kéuih seuhnggo làihbaai làih ge. |
| + 6. / <u>nī go làihbaai</u> /
(<u>this week</u>) | 6. Kéuih nīgo làihbaai làih ge.
He came this week. |
| + 7. / <u>nī go yuht</u> /
(<u>this month</u>) | 7. Kéuih nīgo yuht làih ge.
He came this month. |
| + 8. / <u>gēi yuht?</u> /
(<u>which month?</u>)
(<u>what month?</u>) | 8. Kéuih gēi yuht làih ga?
What month did he come? |
| + 9. / <u>bīn nīhn?</u> /
(<u>which year?</u>)
(<u>what year?</u>) | 9. Kéuih bīn nīhn làih ga?
What year did he come? |
| + 10. / <u>bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?</u> /
(<u>what date?</u>) | 10. Kéuih bīn nīhn bīn yuht, bīn yaht làih ga?
What date did he come? |
| + 11. / <u>gēi(dō) houh?</u> /
(<u>what day?</u>)
(<u>of the month</u>) | 11. Kéuih gēi(dō) houh làih ga? |
| + 12. / <u>lāihbaaigēi?</u> /
(<u>what day of the week?</u>) | 12. Kéuih lāihbaaigēi làih ga? |
| + 13. / <u>bīn yaht?</u> /
(<u>what day?</u>) | 13. Kéuih bīn yaht làih ga? |

Comment: gēi yuht? is the usual way for asking which/what month? but in a nīhn yuht yaht 'year-month-day' phrase, bīn is preferred as question-word: bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht a? = what date?

4. Conversation Drill: Students should recite the days of the week after the teacher before beginning this drill.

Ex: T: Gàm yaht làihbaaisei. T: Today is Thursday.

S1: Tīng yaht làihbaai-gēi a? S1: What day of the week is tomorrow?

S2: Tīng yaht làihbaai-ńgh. S2: Tomorrow is Friday.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. Gàm yaht làihbaaiyih. | 1. A. Tīng yaht làihbaaigēi a?
B. Tīng yaht làihbaaisám. |
| 2. Gàm yaht làihbaaisei. | 2. A. Tīng yaht làihbaaigēi a?
B. Tīng yaht làihbaaińgh. |

3. Gàm yaht lách baai yāt.

3. A. Tíng yaht lách baai géi a?

B. Tíng yaht lách baai yih.

4. Gàm yaht lách baai.

4. A. Tíng yaht lách baai géi a?

B. Tíng yaht lách baai yāt.

5. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: Lách baai yāt sām
houh.

T: Monday is the third.

S1: Lách baai yih géidō
houh a?

S1: What day of the month is it
Tuesday?

S2: Lách baai yih sei
houh.

S2: Tuesday is the 4th.

1. Lách baai yaht baat houh.

1. A. Léih baai yāt géidō houh a?

B. Lách baai yāt gáu houh.

2. Lách baai sei yih houh.

2. A. Lách baai íng gh géidō houh a?

B. Lách baai íng gh sām houh.

3. Lách baai sām sahpluhk houh.

3. A. Lách baai sei géidō houh a?

B. Lách baai sei sah pchāt houh.

4. Léih baai íng gh sah pchāt houh.

4. A. Lách baai luhk géidō houh
a?

B. Lách baai luhk sah pbaat
houh.

5. Lách baai luhk yah yāt houh.

5. A. Lách baai yaht géidō houh
a?

B. Léih baai yaht yah yih houh.

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngóh yih houh
lách ge.
/chāt yuht/

T: I came on the 2nd. /July/

S: Ngóh chāt yuht
yih houh lách ge.

S: I came on July 2nd.

1. Ngóh luhk yuht lách ge.
/yahsei houh/

1. Ngóh luhk yuht yahsei houh
lách ge.

2. Ngóh sei yuht lách ge.
/yāt-gáu-luhk-sām nihh/

2. Ngóh yāt-gáu-luhk-sām nihh
sei yuht lách ge.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Ngóh gauh nín làih ge.
/sàam yuht/ | 3. Ngóh gauh nín sàam yuht
laih ge.
I came in March last year. |
| 4. Ngóh chāt houh làih ge.
/gáu yuht/ | 4. Ngóh gáu yuht chāt houh
laih ge. |
| 5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nihn
laih ge. /baat yuht/ | 5. Ngóh yāt gáu luhk sei nihn
baat yuht laih ge. |

7. Translation-Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: /last year/

S1: Kéuih géisih làih ga? S1: When did he come?
ga?

S2: Kéuih gauhnín làih ge. S2: He came last year.

2. T: /next year/

S1: Kéuih géisih làih a? S1: When is he coming?

S2: Kéuih chēutnín làih. S2: He's coming next year.

1. /last month/

1. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?
B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht làih.

2. /last week/

2. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?
B. Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai
laih ge.

3. /13th of last month/

3. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?
B. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht sah-
sàam houh làih ge.

4. /next month/

4. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?
B. Kéuih hahgo yuht làih.

5. /September next year/

5. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?
B. Kéuih chēutnín gáuyuht
laih.

6. /next Wednesday/

6. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?
B. Kéuih hahgo láihbaaisàam
laih.

7. /January last year/

7. A. Kéuih géisih làih ga?
B. Kéuih gauhnín yāt yuht
laih ge.

8. /29th of next month/

8. A. Kéuih géisih làih a?

B. Kéuih hahgo yuht yahgáu
houh làih.

8. Question & Answer Drill

Ex: T: 'Jáugā' haih sihk Jùng-T: 'Jáugā' is a place where you
choi ge deihfòng. eat Chinese food.

S1: Mēyéh giujouh
'jáugā' a?

S1: What thing is called a 'jáugā'?

S2: 'Jáugā' jíkhaih
sihk Jùngchoi
ge deihfòng.

S2: 'Jáugā' is a place where you
eat Chinese food, that's
what.

1. 'Chāansāt' haih sihk Sāichāan
ge deihfòng.

1. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chāansāt'
a?

S2: 'Chāansāt' jíkhaih sihk
Sāichāan ge deihfòng.

2. 'Séjihlāuh' haih jouh sih ge
deihfòng.

2. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'séjih-
lāuh' a?

S2: 'Séjihlāuh' jíkhaih jouh
sih ge deihfòng.

3. 'Gūngsī' haih maaih yéh ge
deihfòng.

3. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'gūngsī' a?

S2: 'Gūngsī' jíkhaih maaih
yéh ge deihfòng.

4. 'Ngūk' haih jyuh ge deihfòng.

4. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'ngūk' a?

S2: 'Ngūk' jíkhaih jyuh ge
deihfòng.

5. 'Chàhlāuh' haih yám chàh ge
deihfòng.

5. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'chàhlāuh'
a?

S2: 'Chàhlāuh' jíkhaih yám
chàh ge deihfòng.

6. 'Heiyún' haih tái hei ge
deihfòng.

6. S1: Mēyéh giujouh 'heiyún' a?

S2: 'Heiyún' jíkhaih tái hei
ge deihfòng.

9. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dásyun géisih heui a? /hahgo yuht/
T: When does she plan to go? /next month/
S: Dásyun hahgo yuht heui. S: (She) plans to go next month.
2. T: Kéuih géisih heui ga? /seuhnggo yuht/
T: When did she go? /last month/
S: Seuhnggo yuht heui ge. S: She went last month.
1. Wòhng Sàang dásyun géisih jáu a? /nígo yuht/ 1. Dásyun nígo yuht jáu.
2. Néih dásyun géisih máaih a? /hahgo láihbaai/ 2. Dásyun hahgo láihbaai máaih.
3. Néihdeih géisih jough ga? /seuhnggo yuht/ 3. Seuhnggo yuht jough ge.
4. Néih sánsàang géisih fàanlaih ga? /nígo yuht yāt houh/ 4. Nígo yuht yāt houh fàanlaih ge.
5. Hòh Táai dásyun géisih fàanheui a? /tingyaht/ 5. Dásyun tìngyaht fàanheui.

Comment: If the action expressed by the verb has already occurred, the géisih question adds ge (ga) to the verb phrase. To a géisih VP-ga question, the answer is stated in VP-ge form.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih géisih heui Yíngwok ga? 1. When did he go to England?
2. Kéuih gauhnín heui ge. 2. He went last year. (It was last year that he went.)

But if the statement sentence is a lead sentence, not a response to a géisih question, the preferred form is without ge.

- Ex: Kéuih gauhnín heui Yíngwok. He went to England last year.

This sentence is a plain fact statement of general activity and as such uses SVO word order and an uninflected verb. The geisih question throws the focus of the sentence to the Timeword. The sentence pattern for highlighting the Timeword in a past reference sentence is: S Timeword V ge.

10. Transformation Drill: Change the sentence to a time expression question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih yāt-gáu-luhk-baat(nihn) làih ge.

T: What year did he come to Hong Kong?

S: Kéuih bīn nihn làih Hèunggóng ga?

S: He came in 1968.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih yāt gáu sei gáu nihn chēutsai ge. | 1. Kéuih bīn nihn chēutsai ga? |
| 2. Kéuih gáu yuht fàan Méihgwok. | 2. Kéuih géi yuht fàan Méihgwok a?
What month is he returning to America? |
| 3. Kéuih tīngyaht dākhaahn. | 3. Kéuih bīn yaht dāknaahn a?
What day is he free? |
| 4. Kéuih yāt-gáu-sàam-luhk nihn, sahpyāt yuht, sei houh chēutsai ge. | 4. Kéuih bīn nihn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht chēut sai ga? |
| 5. Kéuih yahluhk houh heui taam kéuih làih. | 5. Kéuih géi houh heui taam kéuih làih a? |
| 6. Kéuih séung gáu dīm bun chēut gāai. | 6. Kéuih séung géi dīm jūng chēut gāai a? |

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái douh. /gò léuhng gàan jáudim/

T: I have friends there.

S: Gó léuhng gàan jáu-dim, ngóh dòu yáuh pàhngyauh hái douh.

S: I have friends in both of those two hotels.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh yáuh jáinéui hái douh. /gò léuhng gàan hohkhaauh/ | 1. Gó léuhng gàan hohkhaauh, ngóh dòu yáuh jáinéui hái douh. |
| 2. Ngóh yáuh taaitái hái douh. /gò léuhng daat deihfòng/ | 2. Gó léuhng daat deihfòng, ngóh dòu yáuh taaitái hái douh. |
| 3. Ngóh yáuh chín hái douh. /gò léuhng gàan ngànhòhng/ | 3. Gó léuhng gàan ngànhòhng, ngóh dòu yáuh chín hái douh. |
| 4. Ngóh yáuh ngūk hái douh. /Hèunggóng, Gàulùhng/ | 4. Hèunggóng, Gàulùhng, ngóh dòu yáuh ùk hái douh. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>5. Kéuih yáuh nàahmpàhngyáuh hái douh. /chíhn, hauh, jó, yauh/ /ahead, behind, right and left/</p> | <p>5. Chíhn, hauh, jó, yauh, kéuih dōu yáuh nàahmpàhngyáuh hái douh.</p> |
|---|--|
-

12. Transformation Drill

<p>Ex: T: Ngóh chānchík jjuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn. S: Ngóh yáuh chānchík jjuh hái Wàhsihngdeuhn.</p>	<p>T: My relatives live in Washington DC. S: I have relatives who live in Washington DC.</p>
---	--

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Kéuih fu ngáhgéng hóu leng.
2. Kéuih gáan ngūk hóu daaih.
3. Ngóh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsih jough sih.
4. Néih bún syù hái douh.
5. Ngóh go jái hái Yíngwok gaau syù.
6. Ngóh chānchík hái gó gáan ngàhnhòhng jough sih.</p> | <p>1. Kéuih yáuh fu ngáhgéng hóu leng.
2. Kéuih yáuh gáan ngūk hóu daaih.
3. Ngóh yáuh pàhngyáuh hái Sàamfàahnsih jough sih.
4. Néih yáuh bún syù hái douh.
5. Ngóh yáuh go jái hái Yíngwok gaau syù.
6. Ngóh yáuh chānchík hái gó gáan ngàhnhòhng jough sih.</p> |
|---|---|
-

13. Expansion Drill

<p>Ex: T: Mhgoi néih giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh lá. S: Mhgoi néih jigányiu giu kéuih dá dihnwá béi ngóh a.</p>	<p>T: Please tell him to telephone me. S: Please be sure to tell him to telephone me.</p>
--	---

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Geidāk bo!
2. Mhhou mhgeidāk a!
3. Néih mhhou wah kéuih jí a!
4. Tíngyaht làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn lá.</p> | <p>1. Jigányiu geidāk a!
2. Jigányiu mhhou mhgeidāk a!
3. Néih jigányiu mhhou wah kéuih jí a!
4. Tíngyaht jigányiu làih ngóhdouh sihk faahn a.</p> |
|--|--|
-

14. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the cue words.

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu heui taam
Cháhn Táai.
/láihbaai/

T: I'm going to go visit Mrs.
Chan. /Sunday/

S: Ngóh láihbaai yiu
heui taam Cháhn
Táai.

S: I'm going to go visit Mr.
Chan on Sunday.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh séung máaih dī yéh béi
ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh.
/ní go láihbaai/ | 1. Ngóh séung ní go láihbaai
máaih dī yéh béi ngóh
néuihpáhngyáuh. |
| 2. Ní deui hàaih juhng hóu sán bo.
/néih/ | 2. Néih ní deui hàaih juhng
hóu sán bo. |
| 3. Néih jyuh hái bīndouh a?
/kéuih dīm jí/
(how did he know) | 3. Kéuih dīm jí néih jyuh hái
bīndouh a? |
| 4. Yihyuht dāk yihshpbaat yaht
jē. /gāmnín/ | 4. Gāmnín yihyuht dāk yih-
shpbaat yaht jē. |
| + 5. Kéuih m̄hsík <u>jà faaijī</u> . /ngóh
m̄hjī/
He does not know how to
<u>use chopsticks</u> .
[clasp -chopsticks] | 5. Ngóh m̄hjī kéuih m̄hsík <u>jà
faaijī</u> . |
| + 6. Kéuih <u>hái</u> Méihgwok fàanjó làih.
/seuhng go yuht sei houh/
He has come back <u>from</u>
America. | 6. Seuhng go yuht sei houh
kéuih hái Méihgwok fàanjó
làih. |
| 7. Kéuih ūkkéi yáuh dihnsih.
/juhng meih/
Their house has (or had)
television. | 7. Kéuih ūkkéi juhng meih yáuh
dihnsih.
Their house doesn't (or
didn't) have television. |
| 8. M̄ngòì néih níng làih nīdouh lā.
/bùì chàh/ | 8. M̄ngòì néih níng bùì chàh
làih nīdouh lā. |
| 9. M̄ngòì néih béi jek gāng ngóh
lā. /dò/ | 9. M̄ngòì néih béi dò jek gāng
ngóh lā. |

Comment: hái, as 'from,' is interchangeable with yáuh, 'from,'
choice of hái or yáuh rests with personal preference,
personal habit. See #6 above, and Comment in Vol. One,
Lesson 15, p. 341.

15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yih houh heui. T: I'm going on the 2nd.
Ngóh hahgo yuht heui. I'm going next month.

S: Ngóh hahgo yuht yih S: I'm going on the 2nd of next
houh heui. month.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih chēutnín fāanheui.
Kéuih sei yuht fāanheui. | 1. Kéuih chēutnín sei yuht
fāanheui. |
| 2. Kéuihdeih láihbaaisám làih.
Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaai
làih. | 2. Kéuihdeih hah go láihbaai-
sám làih. |
| 3. Wòhng Sàng hah go yuht heui
Méihgwok.
Wòhng Sàng sahpyih houh
heui Méihgwok. | 3. Wòhng Sàng hah go yuht
sahpyih houh heui Méih-
gwok. |
| 4. Hòh Siujé seuhng go láihbaai
làih ge.
Hòh Siujé láihbaaiyāt làih
ge. | 4. Hòh Siujé seuhng go láih-
baaiyāt làih ge. |
| 5. Ngóh gauhnín heui ge.
Ngóh chāt yuht yahsám houh
heui ge. | 5. Ngóh gauhnín chāt yuht
yahsám houh heui ge. |

16. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nípáai yáuh móuh T: Have you seen any movies
tái hei a? lately?
/kàhmyaht/

S: Yáuh, kàhmyaht S: Yes, I saw one yesterday.
tái làih.

2. T: Nípáai yáuh móuh T: Have you played ball recently?
dá bō a?
/mhdākhaahn/

S: Móuh, nípáai dōu S: No, I haven't had (leisure)
mhdākhaahn dá. time to play lately.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nípáai yáuh móuh heui yàuh-
séui a? /láihbaailuhk/ | 1. Yáuh, láihbaailuhk heui
làih. |
| 2. Nípáai yáuh móuh dá màhjeuk a?
/mhdākhaahn/ | 2. Móuh, nípáai dōu mhdākhaahn
dá. |
| 3. Nípáai yáuh móuh heui máaih
yeh a? /seuhng go láihbaai/
(last week or last Sunday) | 3. Yáuh, seuhng go láihbaai
heui làih. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Ní páai yáuh móuh heui hàahng
gūngsí a? /m̀hdāk̀hàahn/ | 4. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn
heui. |
| 5. Ní páai yáuh móuh hohk já chē a?
/m̀hdāk̀hàahn/ | 5. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn
hohk. |
| 6. Ní páai yáuh móuh dá páai a?
/lái hbaaisám/ | 6. Yáuh, lái hbaaisám dá lái h. |
| 7. Ní páai yáuh móuh fāanheui taam
māhmā a? /seuhng go yuht yāt
houh/ | 7. Yáuh, seuhng go yuht yāt
houh fāanheui lái h. |
| 8. Ní páai yáuh móuh gwo hóí a?
/m̀hdāk̀hàahn/ | 8. Móuh, ní páai dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn
gwo. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Móuh = Nothing special
- 2) jí = (not until) then
- 3) go deihjí = here: your address
- 4) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
- 5) Sīnggabō = Singapore
- 6) ngāamngāam = just
- 7) jí = (only) then, (not until) then
- 8) tūhngmāaih = tūhng
- 9) Tòihwāan = Taiwan
- 10) yíhchíhn = previously
- 11) sàangyi = (commercial) business

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. What day of the week is it today?
2. What day of the month is Thursday?

B: And he replies:

1. It's _____.
2. Thursday's the _____ th/
rd/st/nd.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. What's your birth date? | 3. I was born on _____. |
| 4. When did you come to Hong Kong? | 4. I came last year. |
| 5. I hear you arrived last month-- is that right? | 5. No, I came this month. |
| 6. I hear he went to America last week--is that right? | 6. No, he went this week. |
| 7. What day are you free?--I'd like to ask you to dinner. | 7. How about tomorrow? |
| 8. Have you been to England before? | 8. Yes, I went in 1968, and returned last year. |
| 9. I hear you're leaving for Japan on October 10th. | 9. No, it's November 10th that I'm going. |
| 10. What is it that's called a <u>jáugā</u> ? | 10. A <u>jáugā</u> is a place where you eat Chinese food. |
| 11. Be sure to come see me when you get to San Francisco. | 11. Fine! Please give me your address. |
| 12. Do you have relatives in the States? | 12. No, I don't have any relatives there, but I have a few friends in San Francisco. |
| 13. Mr. Lee went to Shanghai last year and still hasn't returned. | 13. His wife told me he might be back next month. |
| 14. Where'd we read to last week? | 14. I'm not sure. We read lesson 17 last Friday, but I don't remember what page we got to. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 17

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. baatyuht | TW August |
| 2. bīn nīhn? | TW which year? |
| 3. bīn nīhn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht? | TW what date? |
| 4. bīn yaht? | TW what day? |
| 5. bīn yuht? | TW what month? (in a year-month-day phrase) |
| 6. chānchīk | n relative(s) |
| 7. chātyuht | TW July |
| 8. chēutnīn | TW next year |
| 9. chēutsai | VO to be born |

10. dásyun	AuxV plan on, plan to
11. daat	m M. for a place
12. deihfōng <u>or</u> deihfòng	n place
13. deihjí	n address
14. fàanheui	V go back, return
15. gámín	TW this year
16. gauhnín	TW last year
17. gáuyuht	TW September
18. géi(dō) houh?	TW what day of the month?
19. géiyuht	TW what month?
20. gin	V meet, see
21. hahchi	TW next time
22. hahgo láihbaai	TW next week
23. hahgo yuht	TW next month
24. hai	prep from
25. -houh	bf day of the month
26. Hóu noih móuh gin.	Ph 'Long time no see.'
27. jà faaijí	VO use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]
28. jigán(yiu) <u>V</u>	Ph be sure to--, by all means do <u>V</u>
29. jíkhaih	Ph that is, in other words, that is to say
30. Làih (PW) chónh } lā! } ā!	Ph Come visit (place)!
31. láihbaai	n week
32. láihbaai	TW Sunday
33. láihbaai géi?	TW what day of the week?
34. láihbaailuhk	TW Saturday
35. láihbaaiñgh	TW Friday
36. láihbaaisaam	TW Wednesday
37. láihbaaisei	TW Thursday
38. láihbaaiyaht	TW Sunday
39. láihbaaiyāt	TW Monday
40. láihbaaiyih	TW Tuesday
41. luhkyuht	TW June
42. nī go láihbaai	TW this week
43. nī go yuht	TW this month

44. nih̄n	m year
45. ŋghyuht	TW May
46. noih	Adj long (time)
47. Sàamfàahnsíh	PW San Francisco
48. sàamyuht	TW March
49. sahpyātyuht	TW November
50. sahpyihyuht	TW December
51. sahpyuht	TW October
52. seiyuht	TW April
53. seuhng go láihbaai	TW last week
54. seuhng go yuht	TW last month
55. tēngginwah	Ph hear tell, (I) hear... [hear-see-talk]
56. Wàhsihngdeuhn	PW Washington
57. Wah m̄hdihng.	Ph Can't say for sure, uncertain
58. yātyuht	TW January
59. yaht	M day
60. yihyuht	TW February
61. yuht	n month

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(University student Bàu Bok-lèuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

gājē

elder sister

Gājē

Néih haih bīndouh yáhn a?

What place are you from?

(i.e., Where is your family from?)

Bok-lèuhng

Gwóngjáu.

Canton.

Gājēgéi nôi? or géi noih?

how long?

jyuhjó géi nôi?

have lived how long?; lived

how long?

Néih hái Hèunggóng jyuhjó géi nôi a?

How long have you lived in Hong Kong?

Bok-lèuhng

-dóu

approximately

Léuhng nihh dóu.

About two years.

Gājē

Néih dásyun juhng jyuh géi

How much longer do you plan

nôi a?

to stay?

Bok-lèuhng

jisíu

at least

Jisíu yāt nihh.

At least a year.

daaihohk

university

duhk daaihohk

study at the university

duhk léuhng nihh daaihohk

study two years at the

university

Ngóh duhkjó léuhng nihh daaihohk ge la.

I've studied two years at the university.

bātyihp

graduate

Juhng yáuh yāt nihh jauh

I still have another year then

bātyihp.

I'll graduate.

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Gājē

yíhchíhn
duhk syù
Néih yíhchíhn hái bíndouh duhk
syù a?

previously
study
Where did you study before?

Bok-léuhng

jíhchíhn
meih..VP..jíhchíhn,...
ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng
jíhchíhn,...
Tòihwāan, or Tòihwāan
Ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng jíhchíhn,
ngóh hái Tòihwāan duhk syù.
Hái gódouh jjuhjó géi níhn.

before
before Verb Phrase.
before I came to Hongkong,...
Taiwan
Before I came to Hongkong, I
studied in Taiwan.
I lived there for several years.

Gājē

góján or gójahn
Néih hái Tòihwāan góján, hái
bíndouh jjuh a?

when, at the time
When you were in Taiwan, where
did you live?

Bok-léuhng

Tòihbāk
Hái Tòihbāk.

Taipei
In Taipei.

Gājē

jíhauh
bātjó yíhp jíhauh
Néih bātjó yíhp jíhauh, dásyun
heui bíndouh a?

after
after you graduate
After you graduate, where do
you plan to go? (i.e., what
do you plan to do?)

Bok-léuhng

kyutdihng
meih kyutdihng
juhng meih kyutdihng
hèimohng
hèimohng hóyíh heui Yíngwok
lauhhoik
Yíngā juhng meih kyutdihng,
daahnhaih ngóh hèimohng hóyíh
heui Yíngwok lauhhoik.

decide
not decided yet
still not decided yet
hope
I hope I can go to England
to study abroad
It's still not decided yet,
but I hope to be able to go
to England to study.

yùhgwó	if
yùhgwó àhheui làuhhohk	if I don't go abroad to study
wán yéh jòuh	look for a job [look for something to do]
Yùhgwó àhheui làuhhohk, jauh hái dòuh wán yéh jòuh.	If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

B. Recapitulation:

(University student Bàau Bok-léuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

Gāiē

Néih haih bíndòuh yáhn a?

What place are you from?

Bok-léuhng

Gwóng àu.

Canton.

Gāiē

Néih hái Hèunggóng jjuhjó géi nói a?

How long have you lived in Hong Kong?

Bok-léuhng

Léuhng nihh dóu.

About two years.

Gāiē

Néih dáayun juhng jjuh géi nói a?

How much longer do you plan to stay?

Bok-léuhng

Jisú yāt nihh.

At least a year.

Ngóh dukjó léuhng nihh daaihohk ge la.

I've studied two years at the university.

Juhng yáuh yāt nihh jauh bātyihp.

I still have another year then I'll graduate.

Gāiē

Néih yíhchíhn hái bíndòuh duk syú a?

Where did you study before?

Bok-léuhng

Ngóh meih láih Hèunggóng jíhíhn, ngóh hái Tòihwān duk syú.

Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Hái gódouh jyuhjó géi níhn. <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Gājē</u></p> Néih hái Tòihwāan góján hái bīndouh jyuh a?	I lived there several years. When you were in Taiwan, where did you live?
<u>Bok-lèuhng</u>	
Hái Tòihbāk. <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Gājē</u></p> Néih bātjò yihp jíhauh, dásyun heui bīndouh a?	In Taipei. After you graduate, what do you plan to do?
<u>Bok-lèuhng</u>	
Yíhgā juhng meih kyutdihng, daahn- haih ngóh hèimohng hóyih heui Yíngwok làuhhohk. Yúhgwó m̀hheui làuhhohk, jauh hái douh wán yēh jəuh.	It's still not decided yet, but I hope to be able to go to England to study. If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

II. NOTES

1. ...jíchihh,... = 'Before....'
- ...jihauh,... = 'After....'
- ...gójahn (góján),... = 'When....'

a. jíchihh, jihauh, and gójahn are conjunctions which stand at the end of the first (subordinate) clause and join it to the following (main) clause. The order of subordinate clause first and main second is irreversible.

Ex (from BC):

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh meih làih Hèunggóng
jíchihh, ngóh hái
Tòihwāan duk syù. | Before I came to Hongkong,
I studied in Taiwan. |
|---|--|

(See also Drill 12)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Néih bātjò yihp jíhauh,
dásyun heui bīndouh a? | After you graduate, where
do you plan to go? |
|--|---|

(See also Drill 12)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. Néih hái Tòihwāan góján,
hái bīndouh jyuh a? | When you were in Taiwan,
where did you live? <u>or</u> |
|--|---|

(See also Drill 11)

In such cases la is used to stress that the time spent is considered a long time. (For an example of the latter see CL 18.1)

b. Verb-gwo + time spent phrase

This pattern is used to express action which began in the past and ended in the past. This structure marks the action of the verb as terminating sometime before the moment of speaking.

Ex: Ngóh hohkgwo sàam nìhn Yíngmàhn. I studied English for 3 years.
(am not studying now)

6. Relative position of Timespent phrase and other post-verbal expressions.

a. With most VO phrases, the time-spent phrase precedes the direct object as modifier to it.

Ex: Ngóh dájó yĕtgo jūngtāuh bō. I played ball for an hour.
I played an hour of ball.

(See BC and Drill 13)

b. With other VO phrases, the time-spent phrase follows the object of the verb:

Ex: Ngóh dāngjó kéuih léuhng go jih. I waited for her for ten minutes.

(See Drill 5)

c. With still other VO phrases the preference is to treat the direct object and the time-spent phrase as two verbal expressions in series:

VO + V-jó timespent:

Ex: Kéuihdeih wán ũk, wánjó géi go yuht. They looked (or have been looking) for a house for several months.

(Lesson 19, D 15)

d. Another favorite treatment puts the logical object in topic position, with the comment an SVO clause, the O of SVO being the time-spent phrase:

Ex: Ní gāan ngŭk ngóhdeih jyuhjó sàam go yuht la. This house we've lived in three months.

e. When the VO is a movement verb + PW object, the time spent phrase follows the PW object.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih lâihjó Hèunggóng móuhgéinoih. 1. He's been in Hong Kong for just a short time.
 2. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwān (jyuh) sām nih. 2. He plans to go to Taiwan (to live) for three years.

(See Drill 15)

7. Time-since phrases

Time elapsed since a particular action or since the establishment of a state of affairs, is also expressed by V-jó + timespent. If the sentence is an SVO direct object sentence, the time spent phrase follows the direct object.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih gitjó fàn yāt nih. 1. He's been married for one year.
 or It's been a year since he got married.
 2. Kéuih bunjó ũk léuhng nih. 2. He's been moved for 2 years.
 bñ ngũk = [move-house], or It's been 2 years since he moved.
 i.e., move ie: He moved 2 years ago.
 3. Ngóh ga chē máaihjó sām nih. 3. My car has been bought for three years.
 i.e. I've had this car 3 years.

A sentence which is phrased Verb-jó + Timespent is potentially ambiguous, inasmuch as both the time-spent pattern and the time-since pattern both use this formula of expression. Thus:

- NĪ gĭhn sām joughjó leuhng yaht. This dress took two days to make.
 or This dress has been made (finished) for 2 days.

In an SVO construction there is no ambiguity--the time-since follows the SVO, and the time-spent adapts the pattern of verbal expressions in series:

- Ex: 1. Kéuih joughjó nĭgĭhn sām leuhng yaht. 1. She's had the dress made for 2 days. (since 2 days ago)
 2. Kéuih jough nĭ gĭhn sām, joughjó 2 jaht. 2. She took 2 days to make the dress.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih mǎhmǎ jyuh hǎi Sàam-fàahnsih. | 1. Kéuih mǎhmǎ jyuh hǎi Sàam-fàahnsih. |
| 2. /kéuih/Gwóngjǎu/
Canton | 2. Kéuih jyuh hǎi Gwóngjǎu.
He lives in Canton. |
| + 3. /ngóh ge sailóugō/Daaihluhk/
(continent)
(Mainland China) | 3. Ngóh ge sailóugō jyuh hǎi
Daaihluhk.
My children live on the
Mainland. |
| + 4. /ngóh mǎhmǎ/Oumún/
(Macau) | 4. Ngóh mǎhmǎ jyuh hǎi Oumún. |
| 5. /kéuih dī jáinéui/Tòihwāan/ | 5. Kéuih dī jáinéui jyuh hǎi
Tòihwāan. |

Comment: Chinese use the word for 'continent,' daaihluhk, to refer to Mainland China. We spell it with a capital letter to differentiate 'continent' from 'the Mainland.'

2. Transformation Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Làihjó géi nǎhn. | T: Has been here (<u>or</u> came here) for several years. |
| S: Làihjó géi(dō) nǎhn a? | S: How many years, has (he) been (<u>or</u> was he) here? |
| 2. T: Làihjó géigo jih. | T: Has been (<u>or</u> was) here for several 5 minute periods. |
| S: Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a? | S: How many 5 minute periods has (he) been (<u>or</u> was he) here? |
| 1. Làihjó géi nǎhn. | 1. Làihjó géi(dō) nǎhn a? |
| 2. Làihjó géi yaht. | 2. Làihjó géi(dō) yaht a? |
| 3. Làihjó géi go jih. | 3. Làihjó géi(dō) go jih a? |
| 4. Làihjó géi go láihbaai. | 4. Làihjó géi(dō) go láihbaai a? |
| + 5. Làihjó géi go jūngtǎuh.
Has been here several <u>hours</u> . | 5. Làihjó géi(dō) go jūngtǎuh a? |
| 6. Làihjó géi go yuht. | 6. Làihjó géi(dō) go yuht a? |
| 7. Làihjó géi fānjūng. | 7. Làihjó géi(dō) fānjūng a? |

Comment: lâihjǎ, 'arrived here,' is used in a time spent phrase with the meaning 'been (or was) here X length of time.'

Note that the question 'how many M?' can be either gái M? or gáidō M?, and if the form used is gái M?, the question sentences above differ from the statement sentences only by the final sentence suffix a. Note the intonation differences of the spoken forms.

3. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Lâihjǎ sàam go yuht. T: Has been here (or came here) /duhk/ for three months. /study/

S: Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht. S: Has studied (or studied) for three months.

- | | |
|--|--|
| + 1. Dángjǎ <u>móuhgéinoih</u> jē. /heui/
(not very long) | 1. Heuijǎ <u>móuhgéinoih</u> jē.
Has been gone for not very long. <u>or</u>
Has been gone for just a little while. |
| 2. Duhkjǎ <u>gái</u> nihh. /jyuh/ | 2. Jyuhjǎ <u>gái</u> nihh. |
| 3. Lâihjǎ <u>yāt</u> go jūngtǎuh. /dou/ | 3. Doujǎ <u>yāt</u> go jūngtǎuh. |
| 4. Máaihjǎ <u>géigo</u> láihbaai. /heui/
Has been bought for several weeks. [i.e. bought it several weeks ago; have had it for several weeks] | 4. Heuijǎ <u>géigo</u> láihbaai. |
| 5. Lâihjǎ <u>móuhgéinoih</u> jē. /dou/ | 5. Doujǎ <u>móuhgéinoih</u> jē. |
| 6. Duhkjǎ <u>hóudō</u> nihh la. /máaih/ | 6. Máaihjǎ <u>hóudō</u> nihh la. |
| 7. Doujǎ <u>sàam</u> go yuht la. /lâih/ | 7. Lâihjǎ <u>sàam</u> go yuht la. |
| 8. Lâihjǎ <u>gái</u> yaht jē. /heui/ | 8. Heuijǎ <u>gái</u> yaht jē. |

4. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht.
Studied 3 months. | 1. Duhkjǎ sàam go yuht. |
| 2. /móuhgéinoih/ | 2. Duhkjǎ móuhgéinoih. |
| 3. /dáng/ | 3. Dángjǎ móuhgéinoih. |
| 4. /gái go jih/ | 4. Dángjǎ <u>gái</u> go jih. |

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 5. /heui/ | 5. Heuijó géi go jih. |
| 6. /léuhng go jūngtəuh/ | 6. Heuijó léuhng go jūngtəuh. |
| 7. /laih/ | 7. Laihjó léuhng go jūngtəuh. |
| 8. /sei nih/ | 8. Laihjó sei nih. |

5. Transformation Drill: Transform from statement to question following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngóh dāngjó kéuih léuhng go jih jē.

T: I've waited for him for ten minutes, that's all.

S: Néih dāngjó kéuih géi(dō) go jih a?

S: How many 5 minute periods have you waited for him?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ngóh sīnsāang heuijó Daaihluhk sām go yuht la. | 1. Néih sīnsāang heuijó Daaihluhk géi(dō) go yuht a? |
| 2. Ngóh taaitāai fāanjólaih bun go jūngtəuh jē.
My wife has been back home for half an hour, that's all.
<u>or</u>
My wife came home just half an hour ago. | 2. Néih taaitāai fāanjólaih géi(dō) go jūngtəuh a? |
| 3. Wòhng Sāang dukjó sahp géi nih Yīngmāhn la. | 3. Wòhng Sāang dukjó géi(dō) nih Yīngmāhn a? |
| 4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan léuhng nih jē. | 4. Kéuih jyuhjó Tòihwāan géi(dō) nih a? |
| 5. Gó go Tòihwāan yāhn làihjó nīdoh sei go làihbaai la. | 5. Gó go Tòihwāan yāhn làihjó nīdoh géi(dō) go làihbaai a? |
| 6. Hòh Siujé go sà dáfógēi máaihjó géi yaht jē. | 6. Hòh Siujé go sà dáfógēi máaihjó géi(dō) yaht a? |
| 7. Kéuih sīnsāang gāan ūk máaihjó léuhng nih la.
Her husband's house was bought 2 years ago. [(has been) bought 2 years] | 7. Kéuih sīnsāang gāan ūk máaihjó géi(dō) nih a? |
| 8. Chāhn Táai fāanjó ūkkéi yāt go jūngtəuh jē.
Mrs. Chan went home an hour ago. | 8. Chāhn Táai fāanjó ūkkéi géi(dō) go jūngtəuh a? |

6. Transformation Drill

- Ex: T: Ngóh hái n̄douh jyhjó sah̄p nih̄n. T: I have lived here 10 years.
S: Ngóh dásyun hái n̄douh jyh sah̄p nih̄n. S: I plan to live here 10 years.
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh hái Hèunggóng duhkjó sàam go yuht. | 1. Ngóh dásyun hái Hèunggóng duhk sàam go yuht. |
| 2. Kéuih hái gódouh jouhjó géi go yuht. | 2. Kéuih dásyun hái gódouh jouh géi go yuht. |
| 3. Ngóh s̄nsàang hái n̄douh jyh-jó géi nih̄n. | 3. Ngóh s̄nsàang dásyun hái n̄douh jyh géi nih̄n. |
| 4. Ngóh taaitáai hái Méihgwok jyhjó hóu noih.
My wife has lived (or lived) in America for a long time. | 4. Ngóh taaitáai dásyun hái Méihgwok jyh hóu noih.
My wife intends to live in America for a long time. |
| 5. Ngóhdeih hái n̄douh dāngjó yātgowāt. | 5. Ngóhdeih dásyun hái n̄douh dāng yātgowāt. |
-

7. Expansion Drill

- Ex: T: Néihdeih dásyun jyh géi noih a? T: How long do you intend to stay?
S: Néihdeih dásyun juhng jyh géi noih a? S: How much longer do you intend to stay?
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih kyutdihng dāng géi noih tím a? | 1. Néih kyutdihng juhng dāng géi noih tím a? |
| 2. Néih hēimohng duhk géi noih tím a? | 2. Néih hēimohng juhng duhk géi noih tím a? |
| + 3. Ngóh <u>jidò</u> chéng chāt baat go yāhn jē.
I'm going to invite only 7 or 8 people <u>at most</u> . | 3. Ngóh <u>jidò</u> juhng chéng chāt baat go yāhn jē.
I'm only going to invite 7 or 8 more people at most. |
| 4. Néih jisíu yiu géi chín a? | 4. Néih jisíu juhng yiu géi chín a? |
| 5. Ngóh <u>jidò</u> dāng néih géi fānjūng jē. | 5. Ngóh <u>jidò</u> juhng dāng néih géi fānjūng jē. |
-

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chéng sík
faahn.

S: Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh
chín, ngóh jauh
chéng sík faahn.

T: I'm going to have a dinner
party.

S: If I have (or had) the money,
I'm going to have (or would
have) a dinner party.

1. Ngóh duhk daaihhoók.
 2. Ngóh heui Méihgwok jyuh.
 3. Ngóh máaih chē.
 - + 4. Ngóh gitfàn. [to get married]
I'm going to get married.
 5. Ngóh daai dí sailóugō heui
Tòihwāan.
 6. Ngóh mhsái tùhng kéuih jyuh.
 7. Ngóh taaitáai mhsái jough yéh.
1. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh duhk daaihhoók.
 2. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh heui Méihgwok jyuh.
 3. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh máaih chē.
 4. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh gitfàn.
 5. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh daai dí sailóugō
heui Tòihwāan.
 6. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
jauh mhsái tùhng kéuih
jyuh.
 7. Yùhgwó ngóh yáuh chín, ngóh
taaitáai jauh mhsái jough
yéh.

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih yíhchíhn hái
Hèunggóng jyuh.

S: Kéuih yíhchíhn hái
Hèunggóng jyuh,
yíhga hái bíndouh
jyuh a?

T: He lived in Hong Kong before.

S: He lived in Hong Kong before,
where does he live now?

1. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Tòihbāk
duhksyü.
 2. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Wíhng Ōn
Gūngsí jough síh.
 3. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Mánwàh
Jáudim jyuh.
1. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Tòihbāk
duhksyü, yíhga hái bín-
douh duhk a?
 2. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Wíhng Ōn
Gūngsí jough síh, yíhga
hái bíndouh jough a?
 3. Kéuih yíhchíhn hái Mánwàh
Jáudim jyuh, yíhga hái
bíndouh jyuh a?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Jèung Táai yíhchíhn hái Daaih-luhk gaau Gwokýúh. | 4. Jèung Táai yíhchíhn hái Daaihluhk gaau Gwokýúh, yíngā hái bíndouh gaau a? |
| 5. Kéuih yíhchíhn túhng kéuih páhngyáuh jyuh. | 5. Kéuih yíhchíhn túhng kéuih páhngyáuh jyuh, yíngā túhng bíngo jyuh a? |

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: M̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi ngòh. T: Please phone me.

S: Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi ngòh. S: Before you leave, please phone me.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. M̀ngòì nēih wah ngòh jí. | 1. Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih wah ngòh jí. |
| 2. M̀ngòì nēih giu Hòh Siujé yahplàih. | 2. Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih giu Hòh Siujé yahplàih. |
| + 3. M̀ngòì nēih <u>béifàan</u> bún syù ngòh.
(give back, return (something)) | 3. Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih béifàan bún syù ngòh. |
| 4. M̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi kéuih. | 4. Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih dá dihñwá bēi kéuih. |
| 5. M̀ngòì nēih séuhng heui wah bēi ngòh màhmā jí. | 5. Nēih jáu jíhchíhn, m̀ngòì nēih séuhng heui wah bēi ngòh màhmā jí. |

11. Response Drill: Transform each sentence to choice type question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngòh dukk daaihhoók gójahn, hái chànhík ukkéi jyuh. T: When I was at the university, I lived at my relative house.

S: Nēih dukk daaihhoók gójahn, hái m̀hái chànhík ukkéi jyuh a? S: when you were at the university, did you live at your relative's house?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngòh gitfán gójahn, ngòh màhmā hái Tòihwāan.
When I got married, my mother was in Taiwan. <u>or</u> | 1. Nēih gitfán gójahn, nēih màhmā hái m̀hái Tòihwāan a?
When you got married, was your mother in Taiwan? |
|---|---|

When I get married, my
mother will be in Taiwan.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>+ 2. Ngòh <u>bùn ùk</u> gójahn, m̄sái
máaih yéh.
When I <u>move</u>, I don't need
to buy anything.
(<u>bùn nguk</u> =
[<u>move-house</u>], <u>move</u>)</p> | <p>2. Néih <u>bùn ùk</u> gójahn, sái
m̄sái máaih yéh a?</p> |
| <p>3. Ngòh hái Tòihbāk gójahn, hái
Tòihwaan Daaihhoik dukh syù.</p> | <p>3. Néih hái Tòihbāk gójahn,
haih m̄hahh hái Tòihwaan
Daaihhoik dukh syù a?</p> |
| <p>4. Ngòh heui máaih yéh gójahn,
góng Gwokyùh.</p> | <p>4. Néih heui máaih yéh gójahn,
haih m̄hahh góng Gwokyùh a?</p> |
| <p>5. Ngòh gitfàn gójahn, hái Mánwáh
Jáudim chéng yám.
When I got married, I had the
wedding reception at the
Mandarin Hotel.</p> | <p>5. Néih gitfàn gójahn, haih
m̄hahh hái Mánwáh Jáudim
chéng yám a?
When you got married,
didn't you have the wedding
reception at the Mandarin
Hotel?</p> |
| <p>6. Ngòh gitfàn gójahn, séung hái
Mánwáh Jáudim chéng yám.</p> | <p>6. Néih gitfàn gójahn, séung
m̄hseung hái Mánwáh Jáudim
chéng yám a?</p> |

12. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dásyun
máaih ga chē.</p> | <p>T: He's planning to buy a car.</p> |
| <p>S: Kéuih làihjó
Hèunggóng jìhauh,
dásyun maaih ga
chē.</p> | <p>S: After he gets to Hong Kong,
he plans to buy a car.</p> |
| <p>T: Kéuih máaihjó ga
chē.</p> | <p>T: He bought a car.</p> |
| <p>S: Kéuih làihjó
Hèunggóng jìhauh,
máaihjó ga chē.</p> | <p>S: After he got to Hong Kong, he
bought a car.</p> |
| <p>1. Kéuih dásyun bñnheui Gáulùhng
jyuh.
He plans to move to Kowloon
to live.</p> | <p>1. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng
jìhauh, dásyun bñnheui
Gáulùhng jyuh.
After he gets to Hong Kong,
he plans to move to Kow-
loon to live.</p> |
| <p>2. Kéuih jòuhjó hóudò sām.</p> | <p>2. Kéuih làihjó Hèunggóng jì-
hauh, jòuhjó hóudò sām.</p> |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. Kéuih síkjó móuh géidò go Jùnggwok pahngyáuh jē. | 3. Kéuih làihjé Hèunggóng jì-hauh, síkjó móuh géidò go Jùnggwok pahngyáuh jē. |
| 4. Kéuih dásyun wán ngúk máaih. | 4. Kéuih làihjé Hèunggóng jì-hauh, dásyun wán ngúk máaih. |
| 5. Kéuih dásyun wán sih jòuh. | 5. Kéuih làihjé Hèunggóng jì-hauh, dásyun wán sih jòuh. |

13. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Ngòh go néui sé Jùngmahn. /yāt go jùngtāuh/ | T: My daughter writes Chinese. /one hour/ |
| S: Ngòh go néui séjò yāt go jùngtāuh Jùngmahn. | S: My daughter wrote (or has written) Chinese for an hour. |
| 1. Ngòh taaitāai dá páai. /gēi go jùngtāuh/ | 1. Ngòh taaitāai dájó gēi go jùngtāuh páai. |
| 2. Ngòh dá dihnwá. /sei fānjūng/ | 2. Ngòh dájó sei fānjūng dihnwá. |
| 3. Kéuih dukh syù. /sahp nihh/ | 3. Kéuih dukhjò sahп nihh syù. |
| 4. Kéuih tái dihnshih. /léuhng go jùngtāuh/ | 4. Kéuih táijò léuhng go jùngtāuh dihnshih. |
| 5. Ngòh gaau Yíngmahn. /yāt go yuht/ | 5. Ngòh gaaujò yāt go yuht Yíngmahn. |

14. Combining Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Néih yuhng saai dí chin. Néih móuhdāk yuhng. | T: You used up all the money. There isn't any to spend. |
| S: Yùhgwó néih yihgā yuhngsaai dí chin, <u>yihhauh</u> néih jauh móuhdāk yuhng laak. (afterwards) | S: If you use up all the money now, afterwards you won't have any to spend. |
| 1. Néih ànhohk. Ngòh àhgaau néih laak. | 1. Yùhgwó néih yihgā ànhohk, yihhauh ngòh jauh àhgaau néih laak. |
| 2. Néih àhduhk syù. Néih móuhdāk dukh laak. | 2. Yùhgwó néih yihgā àhduhk syù, |

- | | |
|--|--|
| | yihhauh néih jauh móuhdāk
duhk laak. |
| 3. Néih máaih gāan ūk. Néih mhsái
bái chin jauh yáuh deihfōng
jyuh laak. | 3. Yùhgwó néih yihgā máaih gāan
ūk, yihhauh néih mhsái bái
chin jauh yáuh deihfōng
jyuh laak. |
| 4. Néih hohk dōdī Gwóngdùngwá.
Néih máaih yéh hóyih pèhng-
dī laak. | 4. Yùhgwó néih yihgā hohk dōdī
Gwóngdùngwá, yihhauh néih
máaih yéh jauh hóyih
pèhngdī laak. |
| 5. Néih hohk sé Jùngmàhn.
Néih hóyih tái Jùngmàhn syù
laak. | 5. Yùhgwó néih yihgā hohk sé
Jùngmàhn, yihhauh néih
jauh hóyih tái Jùngmàhn
syù laak. |
| 6. Néih jegam dò chin bái kéuih.
Néih mhgau chin yuhng laak. | 6. Yùhgwó néih yihgā je gam dò
chin bái kéuih, jihhauh
néih jauh mhgau chin
yuhng laak. |

15. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih làihjò yāt
nihn. /Hèunggóng/ | T: He has been here a year.
/Hong Kong/ |
| S: Kéuih làihjò
Hèunggóng yāt
nihn. | S: He has been in Hong Kong a
year. |
| 2. T: Kéuih dásyun heui
gódouh. /géidō
yaht a?/ | T: He plans to go there.
/how many days?/ |
| S: Kéuih dásyun heui
gódouh géidō
yaht a? | S: How many days does he plan to
be away? |
| 1. Kéuih dásyun fàanheui géi
go yuht. /Méihgwok/ | 1. Kéuih dásyun fàanheui
Méihgwok géi go yuht.
He plans to go back to
America for a few months. |
| 2. Kéuih chānchik kyutdihng làih
Hèunggóng. /géi noih a?/ | 2. Kéuih chānchik kyutdihng
làih Hèunggóng géi noih a? |
| 3. Kéuih dásyun heui jyuh géidō
nihn a? /Tòihwāan/ | 3. Kéuih dásyun heui Tòihwāan
jyuh géidō nihn a? |
| 4. Kéuih hèimohng fàanlaih nīdouh.
/géi go lāihbaai/ | 4. Kéuih hèimohng fàanlaih
nīdouh géi go lāihbaai. |
| 5. Kéuih làihjò chāt baat nihn
laak. /nīdouh/ | 5. Kéuih làihjò nīdouh chāt
baat nihn laak. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Jauh mātyéh = How come?
- 2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.
- 3) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = eat lunch
 - a) ngaanjau = 'noon'
- 4) tūnghohk = schoolmate
- 5) jūnghohk = high school, middle school
- 6) yārchāih = together
- 7) gójahnsih = at that time
- 8) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]
- 9) ji = (not until) then, (only) then
- 10) wáan = play, amuse oneself, enjoy leisure time

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person next to you:

1. How long have you lived here?
2. How much longer do you plan to stay?
3. Where did you live before you came here?
4. I attended university in England--I lived there for three years.
5. At most, how long do you plan to stay?
6. After Mr. Ho comes back, he and Miss Chan are getting married.
7. That car of yours is very nice--when'd you get it?
8. That's a nice lighter--where did you get (buy) it?

B. And he replies:

1. About two years.
2. Can't say for sure--maybe one year, maybe ten.
3. Before I came here, I lived in Taiwan.
4. After I graduate, I plan to go to England for further study.
5. At most five years, at least three.
6. Really! Before he left, he planned to marry Miss Cheung!
7. I bought it after I got to Hong Kong.
8. I don't remember--I got (bought) it before I came to Hong Kong.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 9. (said in Hong Kong:) He told me he moved to Hong Kong last year. Do you know where he lived before? | 9. His wife told me they previously lived in Macau. |
| 10. He's been gone for three weeks-- do you know when he's coming back? | 10. He planned to be away about three weeks--maybe he'll be back tomorrow. |
| 11. I've been married 3 years-- How long have you been married? | 11. Not very long--only eleven months. |
| 12. How long did you play ball yesterday? | 12. We played ball for three hours, and afterwards then came home and studied Cantonese for two hours. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 18

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. bātyihp | VO graduate |
| 2. béifaan | v give back |
| 3. b̀un | v move |
| 4. b̀un (ng)ũk | VO move (house) |
| 5. daaihohk | n/PW university |
| 6. daaihluk | PW/n continent; term used to refer to Mainland China |
| 7. -d̀ou | suf. suf. to nu.m. expression = approximately <u>nu.m.</u> |
| 8. duhk daaihohk | VO study at a university, attend a university |
| 9. duhk sỳu | VO to study, to go to school |
| 10. gājē | TA/n elder sister |
| 11. géi ǹoi | Ph how long (time)? |
| 12. gitfàn | VO get married, be married |
| 13. <u>VP</u> góján, | Cj when, at the time of..., combines with preceding verb phrase to express 'at the time of (thus and so),' 'when' |
| 14. gójahn | Cj same as <u>góján</u> (QV) |
| 15. Gwóngj̀au | PW Canton, city of Canton |
| 16. h̀eimohng | v hope |
| 17. jid̀o | Ph at most |
| 18. jisíu | Ph at least |

19. ____ j'ich'hn	Cj before ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
20. ____ j'ihauh	Cj after ____ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)
21. -jó	vs verb suf. in time spent phrase of past reference
22. j'ung'tauh	n hour
23. kyutdihng	v decide
24. lauh'hok	v study abroad
25. meih <u>VP</u> j'ich'hn, ...	Cj before <u>VP</u> , ...
26. móuhg'éinoih	Ph not very long (time)
27. Oumín	PW Macau
28. Tòihbāk	PW Taipei
29. Tòihwāan or -wāan	PW Taiwan
30. wán yéh jouh	VP look for a job, search for work to do
31. y'ihch'hn	MA previously, formerly, before
32. y'ihhauh	MA afterwards
33. y'uhgwó	Cj if, on condition that

Búndeihyàhn

Gám, néih dásyun géisih bún nē? When do you plan to move?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

chéng invite, request
 chéngdóu hire, employ [invite-attain]
 chéngdóu gúngyàhn employ servants
 ji (not until) then (same as sinji)

Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gúngyàhn We won't move until after we
 jihauh, ji bún. hire servants.

Búndeihyàhn

Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a? Have you bought things (for the
 house)?

Sàn làih ge yàhn

Yáuh-- Yes--
 díp plates
 chéunglím curtains
 chéunglím bou curtain material
 a suffix to members of series
 in parallel construction

Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh taaitáai Last week my wife bought some
 máaihjó dí búi a, díp a, glasses, and plates, and some
 chéunglím bou a-- curtain material--
 gám that kind of thing, such things

Seuhng go láihbaai ngóh Last week my wife bought some
 taaitáai máaihjó dí búi a, glasses, and plates, and
 díp a, chéunglím bou a, gám some curtain material--that
 jē. kind of stuff, that's all.
 gāsi furniture
 tou gāsi set of furniture
 jòu to rent
 jòu tou gāsi rent a set of furniture

Kéuih juhng jòu tou gāsi tím She also rented a set of
 bo. furniture, too.

Bundeihyahn

-hóu

verb suffix: bring to
satisfactory conclusion

Dí yéh jinghóusaai meih a?

Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn làih ge yahn

yíhging

already

Yíhging jinghóusaai laak.

(Yes, it's) already all fixed
up.

Dākhàahn chéng heui choh lā.

When you have time, please go
visit.Bundeihyahn

Hóu aak.

Fine!

yātdihng

definitely, certainly

yātdihng yiu máaih ché

certainly want to buy a car

Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng

Say, in Hong Kong you'll

yiu máaih ché ga.

definitely have to buy a car.

Máaihjó meih a?

Have you bought one yet?

Sàn làih ge yahn

Ngóh meih máaihdu bo.

I haven't gotten around to
buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bīndouh máaih ga?

Where was yours bought?

Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.

Maybe I'll go there and have
a look.B. Recapitulation:(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in
the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident
in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)Sàn làih ge yahn

A, Léih Sàang, jóusahn.

Good morning, Mr. Lee.

Sihkjó jóuchāan meih a?

Have you had breakfast yet?

Bundeihyahn

Meih a.

Not yet.

Ángau síhgaan hái ūkkéi jing.

There wasn't enough time to
fix it at home.

Sàn lǎih ge yǎhn

Ngāam laak--yātchǎih lā! Great! (We can eat) together!

Búndeihyǎhn

Hóu aak.

Fine.

Tèngginwah néih wán ngūk, wánjǒ

I hear you've been looking for
a house for quite a while--

hóu noi--

Wándóu meih a?

Have you found one?

Sàn lǎih ge yǎhn

Wándóu laak.

Yeah, we did.

Seuhng go lǎihbaai sinji

Last week we finally found one.

wándóu jē.

Búndeihyǎhn

Gám, néih dásyun géisih bún nē?

When do you plan to move?

Sàn lǎih ge yǎhn

Dáng ngóhdeih chéngdóu gúngyǎhn

We won't move until after we
hire servants.

jihauh, ji bún.

Búndeihyǎhn

Néih yáuh móuh máaih yéh a?

Have you bought things (for
the house)?

Sàn lǎih ge yǎhn

Yáuh--

Yes--

Seuhng go lǎihbaai ngóh taai-

Last week my wife bought some
glasses, and plates, and
some curtain material--that
kind of stuff, that's all.

táai máaihjó dí búi a, díp a,
chēunglím bou a, gám jē.

Kéuih juhng jōu tou gāsi tím bo.

She also rented a set of
furniture, too.

Búndeihyǎhn

Dí yéh jǐnghóusaai meih a?

Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn lǎih ge yǎhn

Yíhging jǐnghóusaai laak.

Yes, (it's) already all fixed
up.

Dākhǎahn chéng heui chǒh lā.

When you have time, please go
visit.

Bundeihyahn

Hóu aak.

Fine!

Gám, néih hái Hèunggóng yātdihng
yiu máaih ché ga.Say, in Hong Kong you'll
definitely want to buy a car.

Máaihjó meih a?

Have you bought one yet?

Sàn làih ge yahn

Ngóh meih máaihdu bo.

I haven't gotten around to
buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bíndouh máaih ga?

Where was yours bought?

Ngóh waahkjé heui gódouh táihah.

Maybe I'll go there and have
a look.

II. NOTES

1. Verb forms for talking about what happened in the past: affirmative, negative, and question forms.

a. Affirmative forms for talking about the past: V, V-jó, V-gwo, V-hóu, V-ge, and others.

The way the verb is inflected (whether it is plain or how it is suffixed) depends in part on what aspect of the activity the speaker wishes to focus on.

1) Focus on general activity: V(O)

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. Ngóh kàhmyaht gwo hói
haahng gungsi. | I went across the harbour
yesterday to windowshop. |
| 2. Tèngginwah néih wán
nguk. | I hear you've been house-
hunting. |

2) Focus on a particular experience: V-gwo

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: Ngóh táigwo yísang, daahnhaih
keuih wah mouh meyh. | I <u>went</u> to the doctor, but
he said it wasn't anything. |
|---|---|

3) Focus on the success of a particular performance: V-hóu

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ex: Dí chéunglím jínghóusaai
laak. | The curtains are all fixed. |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|

4) Focus on accomplishment of a particular performance: V-jó

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuih máaihjó ga sán chè. | He bought a new car. |
| 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht heuijó
Méihgwok. | He took off for America
yesterday. |
| 3. Kéuih nípáai chéngjó
gungyahn. | He recently hired a
servant. |

5) Focus on attainment of a particular objective (though it was hard, you did it): V-dóu

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: Ngóh kàhmyaht sìnji chéngdóu
gungyahn laak. | I finally hired a servant
yesterday. |
|--|---|

6) Focus on the time or place the action happened: TW+V+ge; PW+V+ge

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht heui ge. | He went yesterday. |
| 2. Nídi yéh hái bíndouh máaih ga? | Where was this bought? |

Basically the verb forms are set by the grammar of the language, and the speaker has only limited flexibility within grammatical confines. For example, time spent doing something in the past is expressed as Vjó+ time-span phrase, or V-gwo+ time-span phrase. The -jó or -gwo is required in such cases by the grammar. If the speaker uses the V+ time-span pattern, he must use either -jó or -gwo, whichever is appropriate.

Ex: Ngóh {duhkjó } léuhng nihh I studied at college for two
{duhkgwo} daaihohk. years.

Money transactions accomplished are also expressed in VO form, with a -jó or -gwo suffix to the V, and a nu.-M money expression as O.

Ex: Ní ga ché yiu maaih maahn This car (we) wanted to sell for
ígh mán, sáuméi maaihjó \$15,000, but finally closed the
maahn yih mán. deal (sell-accomplish) for
\$12,000.

(See Drill 12)

b. Negative forms for talking about the past: móuh V and meih V.

1) móuh V

Móuh Verb (ex. móuh máaih, móuh síhk, móuh heui) concerns a certain time in the past and asserts that the action expressed by the verb phrase did not take place at that time.

Ex: Ngóh gámahnt móuh síhk I didn't eat breakfast today.
jóuchāan. (said in the afternoon)

2) meih V

Meih Verb (ex. meih máaih, meih síhk, meih heui) concerns an action which the speaker expects/expected to happen, but which hasn't/hadn't happened at the moment of speaking/moment spoken about, but which is/was still planned.

Ex: 1. Ngóh meih síhk I haven't eaten breakfast. (implies
jóuchāan. that you're planning to)
2. Ngóh góján meih At that time I hadn't graduated.
bátyihp. (implies that you later did graduate)

c. Choice-question forms for talking about the past: yáuh móuh V?, and

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \underline{V-jó} \\ \underline{V-gwo} \\ \underline{V-hóu} \\ \text{Etc.} \end{array} \right\} \text{meih?}$

1) yáuh móuh V?

This form concerns time prior to the time of speaking, and inquires whether an action expressed by the verb phrase took place. The speaker has no preconception of whether the action did or did not occur.

- Ex: 1. Néih yáuh móuh máaih sán chē a? Have you bought a new car? (I don't know that you plan to.)
2. Kéuih yáuh móuh daaih-hohk bātyihp ga? Did he graduate from college? (Is he a college graduate?-- I don't have any knowledge of his educational attainments)
3. Néih yáuh móuh tái yīsāng a? Have you seen a doctor?

2) V-jó/gwo/hóu, etc. meih?

In using the meih form the speaker indicates that he knows the action of the verb has happened or will happen at some time. The question is not whether the action occurred, but whether it has/had occurred at the time he is talking/talking about.

- Ex: 1. Néih máaihjó ga sán chē meih? Have you bought (or did you buy) a/the new car yet? (I know you plan to.)
2. Kéuih gójahnsìh bātjò yihp meih a? Had he graduated at that time?
3. Néih táigwo yīsāng meih a? Have you seen a doctor (yet)?

2. meih 'not (yet)' in sentences of future reference.

meih occasionally occurs in negative and question sentences referring to future events. The sentence patterns in such cases are:

Neg: future-TW meih V = will not have V-ed by future TW time

Q: future-TW V meih? = will have V-ed or not by future TW time?

Example sentences:

Neg: Tíngyaht meih fàanlāih. He won't have come back by tomorrow. [Tomorrow not yet return.]

Q: Tíngyaht fàanlāih meih a? Will he have come back by tomorrow? (You expected him back yesterday and have just been told that he is still not back.)

These are not garden variety futures-- (the garden variety futures being mhV and V mhV?). The negative expresses that something which you would normally expect to happen by a certain time will not have happened by then. The question indicates that you expected something to have happened by the time indicated by the timeword, but you now have reason to doubt that it will have happened by then.

(See Drill 5)

3. sínji (variant: ji) 'finally;' '(only) then;' '(not until) then'

(sín)ji implies 'later than one would expect or desire.' It functions as an adverb in a single clause sentence, and as a conjunction in a double clause sentence.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih tǐngyaht (sín)ji Tomorrow he finally leaves.
 jáu. Not until tomorrow does he leave.
2. Dǎng ngóhdeih chéngdóu We'll wait till after we get
 gungyahn jǐhauh, (sín)ji servants hired, only then will
 bun. we move.

(See BC and Drills 4,5,6)

4. a = suffix to members of series in parallel construction

Example:

1. Ngóh máaihjó dī bǐi a, díp a, I bought some cups, and plates,
 chéunglím a. and curtains.
2. Ngóh kǎhmyaht síkháh yéh a, Yesterday I ate, and read, and
 táihah syú a, fanhah gaau a. slept.

(See BC)

5. S $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hái bǐndouh} \\ \text{tùhng bǐngo} \\ \text{géisi} \end{array} \right\}$ V ge/ga = S is/was $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{where} \\ \text{with whom} \\ \text{when} \end{array} \right\}$ V-ed.

a. The central point of a sentence is sometimes not the 'who does what' of it, but the 'where, when, from or with whom' of it. For example, compare the following two English sentences:

1. I bought plates at Wing On, not at Sincere.
2. I bought plates at Wing On, not glasses.

When the point of the sentence is where, when, from whom, with whom something is done, the Cantonese preference is to split the basic VO phrase and reconstruct the sentence, putting the O of the VO into subject position, making the when/where part central and the verb last, followed by the sentence suffix *ge/ga* 'that's the way it is.'

Example:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih ga chē (haih) hái
bīndouh máaih ga? | Where was your car bought? |
| 2. Néih ga chē (haih) géisí
máaih ga? | When was your car bought? |
| 3. Neih ga chē (haih) túhng
bīngo maaih ga? | From whom was your car bought? |
| 4. Néih ga chē túhng bīngo
máaih ga? | For (on behalf of) whom was your
car bought? |

(See BC and Drill 16)

- b. For convenience in referring to this pattern we will call it the hái bīndouh V ge pattern, though as you see hái bīndouh is not the only phrase that fills the position.
- c. It usually turns out that this pattern translates into English in a past tense form, because ordinarily what is talked about using this pattern are things that have already happened. The form is, however, not a past reference form, and can be used for non-past situations.
- Ex: Nī júng bējáu hái Weihòhng This kind of beer is sold
maaih ga. at Wellcome Company.
- (Compare with:)
- Nī dī bējáu hái Weihòhng This beer was bought at
máaih ga. Wellcome Company.
(See Drill 14)
- d. When one wishes to highlight the 'what' part, rather than the 'where/when/from whom' part, the sentence is phrased in standard SVO form instead of the hái bīndouh V ge form.

Ex: Ngóh hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī I bought some glasses at
máaihjo dī bui. Wing On Company.

(Compare with:)

Nī dī búi hái Wíhng Ōn These glasses were bought at
Gūngsī máaih ge. Wing On Company.

6. -hóu = V.suf. indicating that the action expressed by the performance verb preceding is brought to a satisfactory conclusion.

- Ex: jíng = to work on, to make, to fix
jíng hóu = to fix up, to fix so that it's OK
góng = speak
góng hóu = to talk it over and come to an agreement
gwa = to hang
gwah hóu = to hang up

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 1. a. <u>ngūkjòu</u>, ngūkjōu
 b. géi(dō) chín ngūkjōu a?
 c. béi géi(dō) chín ngūkjōu a?
 d. yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?
 e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?
 f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géi(dō) chín ūkjōu a?</p> <p>+ 2. a. <u>yàhngùng</u>, yàhngūng
 b. géidō chín yàhngūng a?
 c. béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?
 d. yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?
 e. yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?
 f. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng a?
 g. Néih yāt go yuht yiu béi géidō chín yàhngūng néih gūngyáhn a?</p> <p>+ 3. a. <u>sànséui</u>
 + b. <u>maahn</u> lèhng mán sànséui gamseuhnghá
 (maahn = ten thousand)
 c. yáuh maahn lèhng mán sànséui gamseuhnghá
 d. yāt nihh yáuh maahn lèhng mán sànséui gamseuhnghá
 e. Kéuih yāt nihh yáuh maahn lèhng mán sànséui gamseuhnghá.</p> | <p>1. a. <u>house rent</u>
 b. how much rent?
 c. how much rent (do you) pay? [give]
 d. have to pay how much rent?
 e. have to pay how much rent per month?
 f. How much rent do you pay a month?</p> <p>2. a. <u>wages</u> (of servants, day laborers)
 b. how much wages?
 c. how much wages (do you) pay?
 d. How much wages do you have to pay?
 e. How much wages (do you) have to pay per month?
 f. How much wages do you have to pay per month?
 g. How much wages do you have to pay your servant per month? <u>or</u> What do you pay your servant per month?</p> <p>3. a. <u>salary</u> (of white collar workers)
 b. approximately ten thousand and some dollars salary
 c. gets approximately \$10,000 and some salary
 d. gets approximately \$10,000 and some salary a year
 e. He gets a salary of approximately \$10,000 and some per year.</p> |
|---|---|

4. a. jòu ge, jōu ge
 b. haih jòu ge
 c. gāan ngūk haih jòu ge
 d. Gó gāan ngūk haih jòu ge
 e. Gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?
 f. Néih jyuh gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?
 g. Néih chānchīk jyuh gó gāan ngūk haih m̄hahh jòu ga?
- + 5. a. jyú
 + b. jyú faahn
 c. sīk jyú faahn
 d. sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?
 e. go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?
 f. Gó go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?
 g. Néih gó go gūngyāhn sīk m̄hsīk jyú faahn a?
6. a. jīng
 + b. jīng chāan
 c. m̄hsīk jīng chāan
 d. m̄hsīk jīng jóuchāan
4. a. rented one, rented
 b. is a rented one
 c. The house is rented, is a rented one
 d. That house is a rented one
 e. Is that house a rented one?
 f. Is the house you are living in a rented one?
 g. Is the house your relative lives in a rented one?
5. a. cook
 b. cook rice, i.e., cook (Chinese style) food
 c. knows how to cook (Chinese) food
 d. know how to cook Chinese food?
 e. Does the servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
 f. Does that servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
 g. Does your servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
6. a. fix
 b. make, cook (Western) meals
 c. can't cook Western style food
 d. doesn't know how to cook breakfast

2. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih bātjǎo yihp T: Has she graduated yet?
meih a? /gauhnín/ /last year/
S: Bātjǎo laak. Gauhnín bāt ge. S: Yes, she has -- (she) graduated last year.
2. T: Kéuih bātjǎo yihp T: Has she graduated yet?
meih a? /chēutnín/ /next year/
S: Meih. Chēutnín S: Not yet. She graduates [not until] next year.
sínji bātyihp.
1. Kéuih fàanjǎo làih meih a? 1. Fàanjǎo laak. Seuhnggo
/seuhnggo làihbaai/ làihbaai fàan ge.
2. Néih sǐnsàang fàanjǎo heui 2. Meih. Hahgo yuht sínji fàan
Méihgwok meih a? heui.
/hahgo yuht/
3. Néih go néui bātjǎo yihp meih a? 3. Meih. Chēut nín sàam yuht
/cheut nín sàam yuht/ sínji bātyihp.
4. Néih go jái bātjǎo yihp meih a? 4. Bātjǎo laak. Gauh nín lukh
/gauh nín lukh yuht/ yuht bāt ge.
5. Chàhn Siujé dǎjǎo dihnwá bái 5. Dǎjǎo laak. Kàhmyaht dá ge.
néih meih a? /kàhmyaht/
- + 6. Néih táijǎo boujǐ meih a? 6. Meih. Dǎngjǎn sínji tái.
/dǎngjǎn/ Not yet. I'm going to
Have you read the newspaper read it in a little while.
yet? /in a (short) while/
7. Yǐngā chāt dím laak. Wòhng 7. Meih. Baat dím sínji síhk.
Sàang síhkjǎo máahnfaahn Not yet -- He's going to
meih a? /baat dím/ eat at 8.
(evening meal)
- + 8. Yǐngā bāat dím laak. Hōh 8. Héijǎo laak. Chāt dím héi
Taai héijǎo sǎn meih a? ge.
/chāt dím/
(néi sǎn =
get up (from sleeping))

3. Expansion Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai móuh heui. /hahgo láihbaai/
 S: Kéuih seuhnggo láihbaai móuh heui, hahgo láihbaai sinji heui. T: He didn't go last week. /next week/
2. T: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui. /hahgo yuht/
 S: Kéuih nīgo yuht meih heui, hahgo yuht sinji heui. T: He hasn't gone this month. /next month/
3. T: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht móuh síhgaan heui. /hahgo yuht/
 S: Kéuih seuhnggo yuht móuh síhgaan heui, hahgo yuht sinji heui. T: He didn't have time to go last month. /next month/
1. Ngóh taaitáai yāt houh meih heui. /sàam houh/
 2. Ngóh go jái gámnin meih bātyihp. /chēutnin/
 3. Ngóh sínsàang kàhmyaht móuh fàangung. /gāmyaht/
 4. Ngóh dí sailógō seuhng go láihbaai móuh heui yāuh séui. /nīgo láihbaai/
 5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht móuh síhgaan bün uk. /hahgo yuht/
 6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht móuh síhgaan jòuh sām. /hahgo láihbaaiyaht/
1. Ngóh taaitáai yāt houh meih heui, sām houh sinji heui.
 2. Ngóh go jái gámnin meih bātyihp, chēutnin sinji bātyihp.
 3. Ngóh sínsàang kàhmyaht móuh fàangung, gāmyaht sinji fàn.
 4. Ngóh dí sailógō seuhng go láihbaai móuh heui yāuh séui, nīgo láihbaai sinji heui.
 5. Wòhng Sàang nīgo yuht móuh síhgaan bün uk, hahgo yuht sinji bün.
 6. Hòh Táai nīgo láihbaaiyaht móuh síhgaan jòuh sām, hahgo láihbaaiyaht sinji jòuh.

4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih héijó sán
meih a? /shake;
gáu dimjūng/

T: Has he gotten up yet?
/shake; 9 o'clock/

S: Meih. Kéuih dá-
syun gáu dimjūng
ji heisán.

S: Not yet. He plans to get up
at 9 o'clock. [only then]

2. T: Kéuih fàanjógùng
meih a? nod;
baat dimjūng/

T: Has he gone to work yet?
/nod; 8 o'clock/

S: Fàanjó laak.
Kéuih baat dim-
jūng jauh fàanjó
laak.

S: Yes, he has. He went back at
8. [that soon]

1. Kéuih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a?
/nod/ yāt dimjūng/

1. Sihkjó la. Kéuih yāt dim-
jūng jauh sihkjó laak.

2. Néih sīnsāang fàanjólàih meih
a? /shake/ luhk dim géi/

2. Meih. Kéuih dásyun luhk dim
géi ji fàan.

3. Néih go jái heuijó dá bō meih
a? /nod/ gáu dimjūng/

3. Heuijó la. Kéuih gáu dim-
jūng jauh heuijó laak.

4. Néih taaitáai heuijó yám cháh
meih a? /shake/ gáu dim bun/

4. Meih. Kéuih dásyun gáu dim
bun ji heui.

5. Wòhng Sāang héijó sán meih a?
/nod/ baat dim/

5. Héijó la. Kéuih baat dim
jauh héijó laak.

6. Léih Táai sihkjó máahnfaahn
meih a? /nod/ baat dim
yātgowāt/

6. Sihkjó la. Kéuih baat dim
yātgowāt jauh sihkjó
laak.

Comment: The action expressed in a clause introduced by (sin)ji
is felt to be later than one might expect.

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tīngyaht fàan
m̀hfàanl̀aih a?

T: Will he be back tomorrow?

S: Kéuih tīngyaht fàan-
l̀aih meih a?

S: Will he be back by tomorrow?

1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu m̀hjáu a?

1. Kéuih tīngyaht jáu meih a?

2. Kéuih sīnsāang tīngyaht fàan
m̀hfàangùng a?

2. Kéuih sīnsāang tīngyaht
fàangùng meih a?

3. Néih tīngyaht heui m̀hheui ló
chín a?

3. Néih tīngyaht heui ló chín
meih a?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Néih taaitáai tǐngyaht heui
m̀hheui tái yǐsāng a? | 4. Néih taaitáai tǐngyaht heui
tái yǐsāng meih a? |
| 5. Kéuih gáu dǐm héi m̀hhéisàn a? | 5. Kéuih gáu dǐm héisàn meih a? |
| 6. Kéuih dǐ jǎinéui tǐngyaht
fàan m̀hfàanlǎih a? | 6. Kéuih dǐ jǎinéui tǐngyaht
fàanlǎih meih a? |

6. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht
fàanlǎih meih
a? /nod/ | T: Will he be back by tomorrow?
/nod/ |
| S: Fàan laak. | S: Yes, he will have returned by
then. |
| 2. T: Kéuih tǐngyaht
fàanlǎih meih
a? /shake/ hahgo
lǎihbaai/ | T: Will he be back by tomorrow?
/shake/ next week/ |
| S: Meih a, hahgo
lǎihbaai sinji
fàan. | S: It'll be next week before he
gets back. <u>or</u>
No, he's not coming back
until next week. |
| 1. Kéuih tǐngyaht heui meih a?
/nod/ | 1. Heui laak. |
| 2. Kéuih taaitáai tǐngyaht jáu
meih a? /nod/ | 2. Jáu laak. |
| 3. Kéuih sǐnsàang tǐngyaht lǎih
meih a? /shake/ hahgo lǎih-
baai/ | 3. Meih a, hahgo lǎihbaai
sinji lǎih. |
| 4. Néih tǐngyaht fàangùng meih a?
/shake/ hahgo lǎihbaaiyāt/ | 4. Meih a, hahgo lǎihbaaiyāt
sinji fàan. |
| 5. Néih go jái tǐngyaht heui tái
yǐsāng meih a? /nod/ | 5. Heui laak. |
| 6. Kéuihdeih tǐngyaht b̀un ūk
meih a? /shake/ hahgo yuht/ | 6. Meih a, hahgo yuht sinji
b̀un. |
| 7. Hòh Táai tǐngyaht máaih dǐp
meih a? /nod/ | 7. Máaih laak. |

7. Alteration Drill: Transform the sentences from géisih Verb to Verb-jó meih.

Ex: Kéuih géisih làih a?

T: When is he coming?

S: Kéuih làihjó meih a?

S: Has he come yet?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih géisih chēutgāai a? | 1. Kéuih chēutjó gāai meih a? |
| 2. Néih sīnsàng géisih heui Méihgwok a? | 2. Néih sīnsàng heuijó Méihgwok meih a? |
| 3. Wòhng Táai géisih b̀n ũk a? | 3. Wòhng Táai b̀njó ũk meih a? |
| 4. Néih géidimjūng sihk ngaanjau a? | 4. Néih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a? |
| 5. Néih géidimjūng sihk faahn a? | 5. Néih sihkjó faahn meih a? |
| 6. Néih taaitāai géisih fàan-làih a? | 6. Néih taaitāai fàanjólàih meih a? |
| 7. Kéuih géisí máaih s̀n ch̀e a? | 7. Kéuih máaihjó s̀n ch̀e meih a? |
| 8. Kéuih géisí jáu a? | 8. Kéuih jáujó meih a? |
| 9. Kéuih géisí heui Yahtbún.a? | 9. Kéuih heuijó Yahtbún meih a? |
| 10. Kéuih géisí heui dá b̀ a? | 10. Kéuih heuijó dá b̀ meih a? |
| 11. Kéuih géisí fāang̀ng a? | 11. Kéuih fāanjó g̀ng meih a? |
| 12. Kéuih géisí héisàn a? | 12. Kéuih héijó s̀n meih a? |
| 13. Kéuih géisí gitfan a? | 13. Kéuih gitjó fan meih a? |

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih b̀unjó uk meih a?
/t̄ingyaht/

T: Has he moved house yet?
/tomorrow/

S: Meih. Waahkjé t̄ing-
yaht lā.

S: Not yet -- maybe tomorrow.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih sihkj́o faahn meih a?
/yāt d̄imjūng/ | 1. Meih. Waahkjé yāt d̄imjūng
lā. |
| 2. Kéuih héijó s̀an meih a?
/gáu d̄im bun/ | 2. Meih. Waahkjé gáu d̄im bun lā. |
| 3. Néih s̄ins̀aang f̀aanj́o Méihgwok
meih a? /hahgo yuht/ | 3. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo yuht
lā. |
| 4. Néih taaitáai wándóu g̀ungyáhn
meih a? /hahgo láihbaai/ | 4. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo láih-
baai lā. |
| 5. Wòhng Táai làihj́o Hèunggóng
meih a? /hahgo yuht yāt
houh/ | 5. Meih. Waahkjé hahgo yuht
yāt houh lā. |
| 6. Néih go jái máaihj́o chē meih
a? /uigo láihbaai/ | 6. Meih. Waahkjé n̄igo láihbaai
lā. |

9. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from séung Verb to Verb-jó.

Ex: T: Tèngginwah kéuih séung máaih ga
s̀an chē.

T: I hear he plans to buy a new
car.

S: Tèngginwah kéuih máaihj́o ga s̀an
chē laak.

S: I hear he bought a new car.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tèngginwah kéuih séung b̀un
nguk. | 1. Tèngginwah kéuih b̀unjó
nguk laak. |
| 2. Tèngginwah néih s̄ins̀aang
séung f̀aan Méihgwok. | 2. Tèngginwah néih s̄ins̀aang
f̀aanj́o Méihgwok laak. |
| 3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai séung
maaih tou s̀an g̀así. | 3. Tèngginwah néih taaitáai
maaihj́o tou s̀an g̀así laak. |
| 4. Tèngginwah Léih S̀aang séung
heui Méihgwok. | 4. Tèngginwah Léih S̀aang heui-
j́o Méihgwok laak. |
| 5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai séung
maaih g̀aan uk. | 5. Tèngginwah Jèung Táai
maaihj́o g̀aan uk laak. |
| 6. Tèngginwah néih go jái séung
maaih ga chē. | 6. Tèngginwah néih go jái
maaihj́o ga chē laak. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Siujé séung wan ngük. | 7. Tèngginwah Chàhn Siujé wandóu ngük laak.
I hear Miss Chan found a house. |
| 8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai séung chéng gungyàhn. /chéngdóu/ | 8. Tèngginwah Hòh Táai chéngdóu gungyàhn laak.
I hear Mrs. Ho engaged a servant. |

10. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the given time expressions.

Ex: T: Hòh Sàang yínging dájò dihnwá bái ngòh laak.
/kàhmyaht/

T: Mr. Ho already called me.
/yesterday/

S: Hòh Sàang kàhmyaht yínging dájò dihnwá bái ngòh laak.

S: Mr. Ho already called me yesterday.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih yínging héijó sán laak.
/chāt dim bun/
He's already gotten up.
/7:30/ | 1. Kéuih chāt dim bun yínging héijó sán laak.
He's already gotten up by half past seven. |
| 2. Ngòh sīnsàang yínging máaihjó ga sán chē laak. /seuhnggo yuht/ | 2. Ngòh sīnsàang seuhnggo yuht yínging máaihjó ga sán chē laak. |
| 3. Chàhn Táai yínging chéngdóu gungyàhn laak. /seuhnggo láihbaaisám/ | 3. Chàhn Táai seuhnggo láihbaaisám yínging chéngdóu gungyàhn laak. |
| 4. Wòhng Siujé yínging bunjó ūk laak. /seuhnggo yuht sei houh/ | 4. Wòhng Siujé seuhnggo yuht sei houh yínging bunjó ūk laak. |
| 5. Ngòh taaitáai yínging heuijó yám chàh laak. /gáu dim bun/ | 5. Ngòh taaitáai gáu dim bun yínging heuijó yám chàh laak. |
| 6. Ngòh go jái yínging heuijó dá bō laak. /baat dimjūng/ | 6. Ngòh go jái baat dimjūng yínging heuijó dá bō laak. |

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih heuijǒ meih a? T: Has he gone yet? /last month/
/seuhnggo yuht/

S: Heuijǒ laak. Kéuih S: Yes - He went last month.
seuhnggo yuht
heui ge.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih làihjǒ meih a?
/seuhnggo làihbaai/ | 1. Làihjǒ laak. Kéuih seuhng-
go làihbaai làih ge. |
| 2. Néih sīnsàang fàanjǒ Méihgwok
meih a? /nigo yuht/ | 2. Fàanjǒ laak. Kéuih nigo
yuht fàan ge. |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang máaihjǒ chē meih
a? /seuhnggo làihbaaisàam/ | 3. Máaihjǒ laak. Kéuih seuhng-
go làihbaaisàam máaih ge. |
| 4. Néih taaitáai chéngjǒ gūngyahn
meih a? /kàhmyaht/ | 4. Chéngjǒ laak. Kéuih kàhmyaht
chéng ge. |
| 5. Chàhn Sīujé sihkjǒ ngaanjau
meih a? /dīm bun jūng/ | 5. Sihkjǒ laak. Kéuih dīm bun
jūng sihk ge. |

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /chē/maahn yih
mān/

S: Nī ga chē máaihjǒ
maahn yih mān.

T: /car/12 thousand dollars/

S: This car was bought for \$12,000.
or
This car (I) bought (it) for
\$12,000.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. /ūk/\$56,000/ | 1. Nī gān ūk máaihjǒ ngh
maahn luhk mān. |
| 2. /faaijǐ/\$8/ | 2. Nī deui faaijǐ máaihjǒ
baat mān. |
| 3. /gāng/\$6.50/ | 3. Nī jek gāng máaihjǒ luhk
go bun. |
| 4. /dáfógēi/\$46.50/ | 4. Nī go dáfógēi máaihjǒ sei-
sahp luhk go bun. |
| 5. /chē/\$35,000/ | 5. Nī ga chē máaihjǒ sàam
maahn ngh mān. |
| + 6. /jèung tói/\$16.00/
(table) | 6. Nī jèung tói máaihjǒ sahp-
luhk mān. |
| 7. /gāsi/\$10,000/ | 7. Nī tou gāsi máaihjǒ yāt
maahn mān. |

13. Alteration Drill

- + Ex: 1. T: Yāt m̄n Méihgām hóyih wuhn luhk
m̄n góngjī gamseuhnghá.
(American money)
(Hong Kong money)
- T: One dollar U.S. can be exchanged for about six dollars Hong Kong.
- S: Yāt m̄n Méihgām jikhaih luhk m̄n góngjī gamseuhnghá.
- S: One dollars U.S. -- well, that's about six dollars Hong Kong
2. T: Léuhng m̄n Méihgām hóyih wuhn géi chín góngjī a?
- T: How much in Hong Kong money can you get for two dollars U. S.?
- S: Léuhng m̄n Méihgām jikhaih géi chín góngjī a?
- S: Two dollars U.S. is how much in Hong Kong money?
- + 1. Yāt Yíngbohng hóyih wuhn sahpluhk m̄n Góngjī.
(English pound (sterling))
1. Yāt Yíngbohng jikhaih sahpluhk m̄n Góngjī.
2. Sahpyih m̄n góngjī hóyih wuhn géi chín Méihgām a?
2. Sahpyih m̄n Góngjī jikhaih géi chín Méihgām a?
3. Ngh Yíngbohng hóyih wuhn géi chín Góngjī a?
3. Ngh Yíngbohng jikhaih géi chín Góngjī a?
4. Yāt Yíngbohng hóyih wuhn géi chín Méihgām a?
4. Yāt Yíngbohng jikhaih géi chín Méihgām a?
5. Yāt Yíngbohng hóyih wuhn léuhng go géi ngáhnchín Méihgām gamseuhnghá.
5. Yāt Yíngbohng jikhaih léuhng go géi ngáhnchín Méihgām gamseuhnghá.
6. Ngh m̄n Méihgām hóyih wuhn sàam-sahp m̄n góngjī gamseuhnghá.
6. Ngh m̄n Méihgām jikhaih sàam-sahp m̄n góngjī gamseuhnghá.
7. Yāt maahn m̄n góngjī hóyih wuhn géi chín Yíngbohng a?
7. Yāt maahn m̄n góngjī jikhaih géi chín Yíngbohng a?
8. Sahp maahn m̄n Méihgām hóyih wuhn luhksahp maahn góngjī.
8. Sahp maahn m̄n Méihgām jikhaih luhksahp maahn góngjī.
9. Yāt maahn Yíngbohng hóyih wuhn sahpluhk maahn góngjī.
9. Yāt maahn Yíngbohng jikhaih sahpluhk maahn góngjī.
10. Yāt baak maahn góngjī hóyih wuhn géi chín Yíngbohng a?
10. Yāt baak maahn góngjī jikhaih géi chín Yíngbohng a?

Comment: Note that Yingbohng 'English pound (sterling)' (also pronounced Yingbong) has the grammatical status of a Measure, whereas Méihgām, 'American money', and Góngjī, 'Hong Kong money' have the status of Nouns:

Number - Measure - Noun

sàam Yingbohng = 3

sàam mán Méihgām = US\$300

sàam mán Góngjī = HK\$300

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ní go dáfógēi hái bindouh máaih ga? /Yahtbún/
T: Where did you buy this lighter? /Japan/

S: Ní go dáfógēi hái Yahtbún máaih ge. S: I bought this lighter in Japan.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ní go dáfógēi géisi máaih ga? /seuhnggo laihbaaiyāt/ | 1. Ní go dáfógēi seuhnggo laihbaaiyāt máaih ge. |
| 2. Ní jī bāt tūhng bīngō je ga? /Léih Táai/ | 2. Ní jī bāt tūhng Léih Táai je ge. |
| 3. Ní gihn seutsāam sung bēi bīngō ga? /ngóh bàhbā/ | 3. Ní gihn seutsāam sung bēi ngóh bàhbā ge. |
| 4. Ní júng hàaih hái bīn gàn gungsi máaih ga? /Wihng Ōn Gungsi/ | 4. Ní júng hàaih hái Wihng Ōn Gungsi máaih ge. |
| 5. Ní júng hàaih haih bīn gwok jōuh ga? /Yinggwok/ | 5. Ní júng hàaih haih Yinggwok jōuh ge. |
| 6. Ní dī bēng bīngō jīng ga? /ngóh taaitāai/ | 6. Ní dī bēng ngóh taaitāai jīng ge. |
| 7. Ní ga chē hái bīndouh máaih ga? /Hèunggóng/ | 7. Ní ga chē hái Hèunggóng máaih ge. |

Comment: The sentences above are not necessarily past in reference. For example #5 might be: This kind of shoe is made in what country? and #3: This shirt is one you're giving to whom?

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih wán ūk.
/hóu noih/

T: He is looking for (or looked
for) a house. /very long
(time)/

S: Kéuih wán ūk, wánjǒ
hóu noih.

S: He's been looking (or looked)
for a house for a long time.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih wán gúngyáhn. /hóu noih/ | 1. Kéuih wán gúngyáhn, wánjǒ
hóu noih. |
| 2. Kéuih sihk aan. /móuhgéinoih/ | 2. Kéuih sihk aan, sihkjǒ móuh-
géinoih.
He didn't take long to
eat lunch. |
| 3. Kéuih bün ūk. /gái go jūngtáuh/ | 3. Kéuih bün ūk, bünjǒ gái go
jūngtáuh.
He took several hours to
move. |
| 4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjàu. /sei go
yuht/ | 4. Kéuih fàan Gwóngjàu, fàanjǒ
sei go yuht. |
| 5. Kéuih duhk Yíngmáhn. /baat
nǐhn/ | 5. Kéuih duhk Yíngmáhn, duhkjǒ
baat nǐhn. |
| 6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan. /sàam go
yuht/ | 6. Kéuih heui Tòihwāan, heuijǒ
sàam go yuht. |
| 7. Kéuih jough sām. /yāt go láih-
baai/ | 7. Kéuih jough sām, joughjǒ
yāt go láihbaai. |
| + 8. Kéuih <u>jíng chē</u> . /léuhng yaht/
He <u>repairs cars</u> . | 8. Kéuih jíng chē, jíngjǒ
léuhng yaht. |
| 9. Kéuih jyú faahn. /bun go jūng-
táuh/ | 9. Kéuih jyú faahn, jyújǒ bun
go jūngtáuh. |
| + 10. Kéuih <u>sé jih</u> . /yihshap fān-
jūng/
(<u>write</u> [<u>write-words</u>]) | 10. Kéuih sé jih, séjǒ yihshap
fānjūng. |

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih ga chē tūhng bíngō jōu
ga?
Your car is/was rented from
whom?
i.e. Who'd you rent your
car from? | 1. Néih ga chē tūhng bíngō
jōu ga? |
| 2. /tou gāsi/ | 2. Néih tou gāsi tūhng bíngō
jōu ga? |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. /háı bīndouh/ | 3. Néih tou gāsi háı bīndouh
jōu ga? |
| 4. /máaih/ | 4. Néih tou gāsi háı bīndouh
máaih ga? |
| + 5. /tou bŭi-díp/
(tea set; i.e., a set of
cups and saucers) | 5. Néih tou bŭidíp háı bīndouh
máaih ga?
Where did you buy your
tea set? |
| + 6. /tou wún-dihp/
(a set of dishes--bowls and
plates) | 6. Néih tou wún-dihp háı bīn-
douh máaih ga?
Where did you buy your
set of china? |
| 7. /jèung tói/ | 7. Néih jèung tói háı bīndouh
máaih ga? |
| 8. /jǐng/ | 8. Néih jèung tói háı bīndouh
jǐng ga? |
| + 9. /jèung yí/ | 9. Néih jèung yí háı bīndouh
jǐng ga?
Where was your chair made? |

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng
wán mhdou gé.
A Sei! I can't find my
glasses! | 1. A Sei, ngóh fu ngáhngéng
wán mhdou gé. |
| 2. /jek díp/ | 2. A Sei, ngóh jek díp wán
mhdou gé! |
| 3. /tíuh dáifu/ | 3. A Sei, ngóh tíuh dáifu wán
mhdou gé! |
| 4. /go ngáhngéngdóı/ | 4. A Sei, ngóh go ngáhngéngdóı
wán mhdou gé! |
| 5. /tíuh kwáhn/ | 5. A Sei, ngóh tíuh kwáhn wán
mhdou gé! |
| 6. /go sáudóı/ | 6. A Sei, ngóh go sáudóı wán
mhdou gé! |
| 7. /jek gāng/ | 7. A Sei, ngóh jek gāng wán
mhdou gé! |

Comment: The rising intonation of final gé connotes impatience.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) m̀hheuidāk = can't go
 - a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix
- 2) yāt go ngàhnchín = one dollar (\$1.00) (See L-21, Ex. 8)
- 3) síhk ngaanjau = eat lunch
- 4) séuhng bāan = start work
- 5) daaihkoi = probably
- 6) beisyù = secretary
- 7) hóu chíh = it seems
- 8) Hóu wah = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all',
Response to being thanked for a service.
- 9) ā ma? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)
- 10) g̀ungfo = lessons, homework
- 11) g̀ondākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to
do it
- 12) f̀èi = ticket
- 13) -yùhn = finish
 - a) síhkyùhn = finish eating
 - b) duhkyùhn = finish studying
- 14) g̀ónm̀hchit = can't make it in time
- 15) ngāamngāam = just
- 16) lauhdài = leave behind
- 17) hónàhng = probably
- 18) f̀óng = room
- 19) ā ma = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also 16-CL-1)
- 20) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of
address to a man by good friends. (See
17-CL-3)
- 21) Hòì faahn = 'Dinner is ready'
- 22) Haih gám sìn la = 'That's all for now'
- 23) m̀eyéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything
- 24) chàbātdō = chàmhđō
- 25) Maahn hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite goodby form, said
to person leaving by person remaining.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
1. Has your younger sister graduated yet?
 2. (on the phone:) Has Mr. Wong gone to work yet?
 3. Have you moved yet?
 4. How much rent do you pay a month?
 5. How much is a US dollar in Hong Kong money?
 6. How much is an English pound?
 7. Has Mr. Ma come yet?
 8. Have you hired a servant yet?
 9. (on the phone:) Is Mr. Chan at home?
 10. Where did you buy that table?
 11. Your furniture is very nice-- did you buy it in Hong Kong?
 12. Mrs. Lau didn't eat breakfast until 10:15.
 13. Can your servant cook Chinese food?
 14. Did someone come to fix the phone?
 15. Have you cooked dinner yet?
 16. I hear you've recently moved-- did you buy any new furniture?
- B. And he replies:
1. Not yet--she doesn't graduate until next year.
 2. Not yet, he doesn't go until 8:30.
 3. Yes, we moved last week.
 4. We pay HK\$2,000.
 5. A US dollar is about HK\$6.00.
 6. I'm not sure (not clear)-- maybe it's around HK\$14.40.
 7. Not yet--when he arrives, I'll tell him to go see (look for) you.
 8. Yes, we hired one last week.
 9. No, he already went out-- at 8:00 o'clock--to have tea.
 10. It was bought in Japan.
 11. Yes, it was bought here, at a department store on the Kowloon side.
 12. What time did she get up?
 13. She can cook both Chinese food and Western food.
 14. Yes, it's already been fixed.
 15. I haven't started to make it yet.
 16. Yes, we bought a table and several chairs.
-

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 19

1. a	bf: suf. to members of series in parallel construction
2. āam	adj: see ngāam
3. boujī	n: newspaper
4. būi-díp	n: tea set
5. chéng	v: invite, request
6. chéngdóu	v: invite and have the invitation accepted
7. chéng gúngyáhn	VO: hire servant(s)
8. chēunglím	n: curtain
9. díp	n: plate
10. ...gám	pro: that kind of thing, such things
11. gāsi	n: furniture
12. góngjī	n: Hong Kong money
13. héisàn	VO: get up (from bed)
14. -hóu	vs: verb suf. = bring to satisfactory conclusion
15. jí	adv: finally, (not until) then, (only) then
16. jing	v: make, fix; repair
17. jing chāan	VO: make, cook (Western) meals
18. jing chē	VO: repair cars
19. jinghóu	v: fix satisfactorily
20. v-jó meih a?	VP: a question form
21. jòu	v: rent
22. jóuchāan	n: breakfast
23. jyú	v: cook
24. jyú faahn	VO: cook Chinese style food
25. maahn	m: ten thousand
26. máahnfaahn	n: supper
27. méihgām	n: American money
28. ngāam	adj: fitting, suitable
29. Ngāam laak!	Ph: That's fine! That's as it should be!
30. ngūkjòu, ngūkjòu	n: house rent
31. sán làih ge yáhn	Ph: newcomer, new arrival
32. sànséui	n: salary
33. sé jih	VO: write [write-words]

34. sɪnʒi	adv: (not until) then, (only) then, finally
35. tó1	n: table
36. tou	m: set, M. for furniture, dishes...
37. wándóu	v: find [search-succeed]
38. wún-dihp	n: a set of china
39. yàhngùng	n: wages
40. yāitchàih	adv: together
41. yātdihng	adv: certainly, definitely
42. yí	n: chair
43. yínging	adv: already
44. yíngbóng or -bohng	m: British pounds sterling

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sinsàang

gàyàhn	family
Jèung Sàang ge gàyàhn	Mr. Cheung's family
Yáuh yáhn góng ngóh tèng	somebody told me..
Yáuh yáhn góng ngóh tèng Jèung	Somebody told me Mr. Cheung's
Sàang ge gàyàhn káhmyaht	family went back to America
fàanheui Méihgwok.	yesterday.

Léih Siujé

Haih a. That's right.

Máh Sinsàang

tùhng person yatcháih verb	verb together with person
tùhng Jèung Sàang yatcháih	go with Mr. Cheung
heui	
díngáai?	why?
Kéuihdeih díngáai mhtùhng Jèung	Why didn't they go with Mr.
Sàang yatcháih heui nē?	Cheung?

Léih Siujé

-dāk	able to, can. Verb suffix
	indicating physical
	ability
mhheuidāk	can't go
Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht dōu	Mr. Cheung was unable to go
mhheuidāk a.	these few days.

Máh Sinsàang

Díngáai mhheuidāk a? Why couldn't he go?

Léih Siujé

Kéuih nīpáai dōu hóu mhdākháahn.	He's been awfully busy recently.
syùhn	ship
daap	catch, take (a train, plane,
	etc.)
daap syùhn	take a ship

gónm̀hchit	not have time [hurry-not make it]
gónm̀hchit daap syùhn	not have time to take a ship
Yùhgwó dāng kéuih dāk̀hàahn góján, jauh gónm̀hchit daap syùhn ge laak.	If they waited until he was free, then there wouldn't be time to take a ship.
fēigèi	airplane
daap fēigèi	catch, take a plane
pa	be afraid of
hóu pa daap fēigèi	afraid of taking a plane
yànwaih ...,	because, since
sóyih ...	so, therefore
yànwaih ..., sóyih ...	because ...
yànwaih Jèung Táai hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih ...	because Mrs. Cheung is afraid of taking the plane ...
yihché	furthermore
Yihché yànwaih Jèung Táai jauh hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih kéuih tùhng dī sailóugō daap syùhn heui sin.	Furthermore, because Mrs. Cheung also is afraid of taking planes, she went first with the children by boat.
Jèung Sàang hahgo láihbaaisàam ji daap fēigèi heui.	Mr. Cheung will go by plane next Wednesday.
	<u>Máh Sīnsàang</u>
yùhnlòih	origin, source; reason why
O, yùhnlòih haih gám gé.	Oh, so that's the reason.
yiu (+ time expression)	takes (amount of time)
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nôi a?	How long does it take by plane?
	<u>Léih Siujé</u>
Yāt yaht dōdī jē.	Only a little over one day.
sahpgéi	ten-several = a few more than ten
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi yaht ge la.	If you take a ship, then it takes more than ten days.

Máh Sînsàang

múih	every, each
múih go láihbaai	every week, each week
bāan	trip (voyage Measure)
Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō bāan	How many flights each week are
fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?	there going to America?

Léih síujé

sàamsei	three or four
Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bāan lā.	There are three or four
	flights a day.

Máh Sînsàang

hòih	start, leave, take off,
	(on voyage)
gó bāan géisí hòih a?	what time does the flight
	leave?
Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisí	The flight Mr. Cheung is
hòih a?	taking--when does it leave?

Léih Síujé

Ngòh m̀hji ga--yiu mahnháh kéuih	I don't know--you'll have to
ji jí laak.	ask him to find out. [ask him
	and only then you'll know.]

B. Recapitulation:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Máh Sînsàang

Yáuh yáhn góng ngòh t̀ng Jèung	Somebody toldme Mr. Cheung's
Sàang ge gàyáhn kàhmyaht fàan-	family went back to America
heui Méihgwok.	yesterday.

Léih Síujé

Haih a.	That's right.
---------	---------------

Máh Sînsàang

Kéuihdeih d̀mgáai m̀ht̀hng Jèung	Why didn't they go with Mr.
Sàang yáitcháih heui nē?	Cheung?

Léih Síujé

Jèung Sàang ní géi yaht dōu	Mr. Cheung couldn't leave
m̀hheuidāk a.	these few days.

Máh Sînsàang

Dínggáai m̀hheuidāk a?

Why couldn't he leave?

Léih Siujé

Kéuih nípáai dōu hóu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.
Yùhgwó dāng kéuih dāk̀hàahn góján,
jauh gónm̀hchit daap syùhn ge
laak.

He's been awfully busy recently.
If they waited until he was
free, then there wouldn't be
time to take a ship.

Yihché, yánwaih Jèung Táai jauh
hóu pa daap fēigèi gé, sóyih
kéuih tùhng sailóugō daap
syùhn heui sìn.

Furthermore, since Mrs. Cheung
also is afraid of taking
planes, she left first with
the children by ship.

Jèung Sàang hango láihbaaisàam
ji daap fēigèi heui.

Mr. Cheung will go by plane
next Wednesday.

Máh Sînsàang

O, yùhnlòih haih gám ge.
Daap fēigèi yiu géi nòí a?

Oh, so that's the reason.
How long does it take by plane?

Léih Siujé

Yāt yaht dōdī jē.
Daap syùhn jauh yiu sahpgéi
yaht ge la.

Only a little over one day.
If you take a ship, then it
takes more than ten days.

Máh Sînsàang

Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō
bāan fēigèi heui Méihgwok a?

How many flights each week are
there going to America?

Léih Siujé

Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bāan lā.

There are three or four flights
a day.

Máh Sînsàang

Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisi
hòí a?

The flight Mr. Cheung is taking--
when does it leave?

Léih Siujé

Ngóh m̀hji ga--Yiu mahnháh kéuih
ji jí laak.

I don't know--you'll have to ask
him to find out.

II. NOTES

1. -dāk as verb suffix, meaning 'able to,' 'can.'

Verb-dāk forms a unit meaning 'physically able to V,' 'can V.'

Examples, showing question, negative, and affirmative forms:

	Forms	Examples	English equivalents
q	VmhV-dāk?	Ga chē gam gauh-- <u>hàahng mhhaahngdāk</u> a?	The car is so old--can it run?
n	mhV-dāk	Ga chē gam gauh-- <u>mhhaahngdāk</u> tim!	The car is so old--it isn't able to run!
a	V-dāk	Ga chē <u>hàahngdāk</u> ga--neih meih hoi sosih ja!	The car <u>can</u> run--it's simply that you haven't turned on the ignition!

By extension (Vmh)V-dāk can be used when the (in)ability is not strictly physical, as in a sentence from the BC of this lesson:

Ex: Jèung Sàang nī géi yaht Mr. Cheung couldn't get away
dōu mhheuidāk a. these few days.

(See BC)

2. yànwaih..., sóyih... = 'because..., so...'; 'since..., therefore...'

Yànwaih, sóyih form a set of paired conjunctions linking the two clauses of a 'because' sentence. Use of both yànwaih and sóyih in one sentence is, however, not required.

A common pattern is to use either one or the other but not both. The order of the two clauses is irreversible.

Ex: 1. Yànwaih ngóh hái Gáulùhng Because I work in Kowloon, I
jouh sih, ngóh mhjúngyi wouldn't like to live in
hái Heunggóng jyuh. Hong Kong.

2. Ngóh hái Gáulùhng jouh I work in Kowloon, so I
sih, sóyih ngóh mhjúngyi wouldn't like to live in
hái Heunggóng jyuh. Hong Kong. (or: so I don't
like to live in Hong Kong.)

(See BC and Drill 7)

3. **Number-Measure expressions: with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers.**

a. In Nu-M expressions concerning units greater than 1:

For numbers greater than 1, fractions and other partials fit into a number expression following the grammatical Measure word, preceding the Noun (if any).

Ex:	<u>Nu.</u>	<u>M.</u>	<u>Fraction or Partial</u>	<u>N.</u>	
1.	sàam	go		jūngt'auh	3 hours
	sàam	go	g'ei	jūngt'auh	3 hours and some
	sàam	go	bun	jūngt'auh	3 1/2 hours
	sàam	go	dō	jūngt'auh	more than 3 hours
2.	léuhng	gàn		ng'auhyuhk	2 catties of beef
	léuhng	gàn	bun	ng'auhyuhk	2 1/2 catties of beef
3.	sahp	n'ihn			10 years
	sahp	n'ihn	dō		more than 10 years

Note that the fraction part comes after the Measure, and that though most Chinese standard measures (for time, length, weight, etc.) are grammatically Measures, some standard measures are grammatically Nouns.

Thus:	<u>Nu.</u>	<u>M.</u>	<u>1/2</u>	<u>(N)</u>	
	sàam	n'ihn	bun		3 1/2 years
	sàam	go	bun	jūngt'auh	3 1/2 hours

You will probably need considerable practice to be able to produce the two types smoothly.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. In number expressions for units less than 1:

bun, 'half' precedes the Measure word in number expressions concerning units less than 1.

Ex:	<u>1/2 M</u>	<u>(N)</u>	
	bun go	jūngt'auh	half an hour
	bun go	yuht	half a month
	bun	gàn	half a catty
	bun	máh	half a yard (of cloth, etc.)
	bun	yaht	half a day
	bun	n'ihn	half a year

c. Approximate numbers:

sàamsei	yaht	3 or 4 days
sei'ng	go y'ahn	4 or 5 people

Cantonese uses serial numbers as approximate numbers, as indicated above. Ordinarily the numbers used are adjacent numbers in series with the smaller first. Occasionally the larger number can be first;

for example: sàamléuhng geui, 'two or three sentences' [~~3-2-sentences~~]-
gáusahp is not used as an approximate number for 'nine or ten,' but is
used only as the specific number 'ninety.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

d. sahpgéi, [ten-several] 'ten some'

sahpgéi is an approximate number representing 'ten and a few more'--
more than ten but less than twenty. All the round numbers--sahp, baak,
chín--use this form in this way:

- Ex: 1. sahpgéi ten some, a few more than ten
2. yihshahpgéi twenty some
3. baakgéi a hundred some
4. yihbaakgéi two hundred some
5. chíngéi a thousand some

(See BC)

4. múih, 'every,' 'each,' in Time Expressions.

múih 'every,' 'each,' occupies the position of specifying words
(nī, gó) before the number in a numbered Time Expression.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih múih léuhng go 1. He goes to the New Territories
laihbaai heui Sanggai once every two weeks.
yāt chi.
2. Kéuih nī léuhng go 2. He has taken off for the New
laihbaai heuijo Territories twice these last
Sanggai léuhng chi. two weeks.

(See BC and Drills 8, 14)

When the number in the Time Expression is yāt 'one,' either the múih
or the yāt can be omitted, or both can be said.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih múih nīhn heui Sanggai
yāt chi. }
2. Kéuih yāt nīhn heui Sanggai
yāt chi. } He goes to the
3. Kéuih múih yāt nīhn dōu heui
Sanggai yāt chi. } New Territories
once every year.

5. Duplication of Measure word to express 'each and every'

'Each and every,' 'every and all' may be expressed by saying the
Measure word twice: yahtyaht, 'each and every day,' [day-day];
gogo lāihbaai, 'each and every week,' [Measure-Measure week]. When the
duplicated Measure is used, the phrase occurs in a set with a following
dōu, the dōu appearing directly before the verb.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu hohk Gwongdungwa. He studies Cantonese every day.
2. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu sihk yāt léuhng chi Jūngchoi. He eats Chinese food once or twice every week.

(See Drills 2, 15)

The duplicated Measure is only used for 'every ____ without exception;' for 'every two ____,' etc., you must use múih.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih nihnnihndōu heui Méihgwok yāt chi maaih yéh. Every year he goes to America on a buying trip.
2. Kéuih múih/léuhng nihndōu heui Méihgwok yāt chi maaih yéh. He goes to America once every two years on a buying trip.

5. Voyage Measures

In English we may say:

- There are two planes taking off in an hour.
There are two flights taking off in an hour.
- There are two ships on June 15.
There are two sailings on June 15.

'Flight' and 'sailing' refer not to the vessel but to the voyage.

Cantonese makes the same distinction between vessel and voyage, but differs from English in that the distinction is compulsory. Referring to the vessel, Cantonese uses the individual measure for the vessel; when referring to a voyage, the voyage measure is used.

- Ex: 1. Gó ga fēigēi chōhdāk géidō yáhn a? How many people does that plane seat? [that individual-M plane]
2. Gó bāan fēigēi géidimjūng hòì a? When does that flight leave? [that voyage-M plane]

Chart of Carriers with individual and voyage Measures:

individual measure	voyage measure	carrier
ga	bāan	fēigēi airplane
ga	léuhn	chē, bāsí, laahmchē, lócnē, dihnchē. car, bus, cablecar, train, tram.
jek	douh	syùhn ship

This division is not always strictly adhered to. hahyāt ga chē, 'the next [individual-M] car' is said interchangeably with hahyāt bāan cnē.

'the next [voyage-M] car,' referring to the next car (usually bus) leaving.

(See BC and Drills 1, 8)

6. dímjūng, 'hour' as Time Spent word.

dímjūng in 'time when' position, i.e., before the verb, translates into English as 'o'clock,' a point in time. dímjūng in 'time spent' position, i.e., following the verb, indicates 'hour(s),' a length of time. It occupies the same sentence position that jūngtáuh, 'hour,' does.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih sàam dímjūng heui He's going there at 3 o'clock.
gódouh.
2. Heui gódouh yiu sàam }
dímjūng. } It takes three hours
3. Heui gódouh yiu sàam go }
jūngtáuh. } to get there.

(See Drill 6)

7. mhVerb as 'refuses to Verb,' 'refused to Verb,' 'unwilling to Verb'
and V mhV? as 'willing to V?'

Compare:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1.a. Ngóh <u>mhjí</u> bo—
kéuih mouh wah ngóh
jí. | I'm sorry, I don't know—
she didn't tell me. |
| b. Ngóh <u>mhjí</u> bo—kéuih
mhwah ngoh jí. | I'm sorry, I don't know—
she wouldn't tell me. |
| 2.a. Kéuih <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>díngáai</u>
móuh túhng néih heui
a? | Why didn't he go with you
yesterday? (plainfact question) |
| b. Kéuih <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>díngáai</u>
mhtúhng néih heui a? | Why didn't he go with you
yesterday? (implication that he
refused to go—that he could
have, but he wouldn't) |
| 3.a. Kéuih <u>gogo</u> <u>láihtaai</u>
dóu mhtúhng ngóh heui
gái ge. | She won't ever go out with me
on Sunday. |
| b. Gám, <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>láihtaai</u> —
kéuih túhng mhtúhng
néih heui a? | Well, yesterday was Sunday—
did she (was she willing to)
go out with you? |
| 4.a. Ngóh <u>néuihpahngyáuh</u> <u>go</u> —
go <u>láihtaai</u> dóu túhng
ngóh heui gái. | My girlfriend always goes out
with me on Sunday. |
| b. Gám, <u>káhmyaht</u> <u>láihtaai</u> —
kéuih yáuh móuh túhng
néih heui a? | Well, yesterday was Sunday—
did she go out with you? |

mhVerb may be used to express 'not willing to Verb,' in which case

the negative remains mh regardless of whether the sentence is one of past reference, non-past reference, or habitual action.

(See BC and Drill 19)

8. yi as 'cause or make (someone do something),' 'be caused or made (to do something)'

Ex: 1. Néih dǐngáai yiu [you why made walk-road go eh?]
háahng louh heui nē? What makes you be walking?

or

What made you walk?

(Speaker indicates he expected addressee not to be walking and assumes something special made him walk.)

(Cf. English: 'What did you want to do that for?' when someone hits you unprovoked.)

2. Yiu néih dǎng ngóh Making you wait for me so long--
gam noih, mhhou yisi. I'm very sorry.

yi which basically means 'require,' 'be required' has an extended meaning 'cause' or 'be caused.'

(See Drill 1,4)

9. SVO yáuh TS (time-spent) Expression.

Ex: Kéuih duhk Yíngmǎhn yáuh His English study amounts to
sei nih. four years.

He studied English four years.

In this type sentence the Subject is composed of an SVO phrase. There is a pause, then the Predicate, composed of yáuh TS Expression, follows.

We regard this type sentence as being derived from a V(jó) time-spent structure:

Ex: 1. Kéuih séung duhk He plans to study English
sei nih Yíngmǎhn. for four years.

2. Kéuih duhkjó sei nih He studied English for four
Yíngmǎhn. years.

In the SVO yáuh TS Expression, the time-spent expression has been separated from its verb. Its verb (duhk in the example above) becomes part of the Subject, and the TS expression (sei nih above) becomes Object in the Predicate. yáuh in this type sentence is an equating verb,

affirming that Subject 'amounts to' Object. (You will learn in later lessons that there are other sentence types in which yáuh is used as an equating verb.)

In this type sentence the verb of the SVO subject does not require (but can have) the verb suffix -jǒ, even when the action concerns one which began in the past. Talking of action which began in the past one may say:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih duhk Yìngmàhn
yauh sei nihh. | His English study--it amounted
to four years. |
| 2. Kéuih duhkjǒ Yìngmàhn
yauh sei nihh ge la. | He's studied English--it's been
four years now. |
| | <u>or</u> |
| | He studied English--it was four years. |

(See Drill 15)

10. Noun Modification: **Sp-M-N compound modified by VP**

A verbal modifier in Cantonese directly precedes a Sp+M+N phrase:

V Sp+M N

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: Kéuih daap gó bāan fēigēi
sei dím hoi. | The plane he is taking leaves
at 4 o'clock. (<u>or</u> took/left) |
| Kéuih máaih gó dī syù dōu hóu
gwai ga. | The books he bought were
all very expensive. |

(See BC and Drill 16)

(The above contrasts with the situation of verbal modification in Mandarin, in which a verbal modifier is followed by the subordinating particle de () before a Sp M N phrase.

V de Sp+M N

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: 1. Tā dzǒu de néi ban fēijǐ
sz dyǎn jǔng chǐfēi. | The plane he is taking
leaves at 4 o'clock. |
| 2. Tā mǎi de nài sye shū
dōu hěn gwēi. | The books he bought were
all very expensive.) |

11. Noun modification: Verbal modifier preceding a numbered phrase.

When a verbal modifier precedes a numbered phrase, there are two possibilities: 1) the V modifier is followed by the subordinating particle ge; or 2) it is followed by Sp+the general plural M dī.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| Ex: Kéuih máaih {
ge
go dī } | sàam bún syù dōu hóu | The three books he
bought were all
very expensive. |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--|

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 1. a. <u>laahmchē</u>.
 b. yāt bāan laahmchē.
 + c. <u>Hahyāt bāan laahmchē</u>.
 (the next)
 d. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp géi hoi a?
 e. Hahyāt bāan laahmchē daahp saam hoi.</p> <p>Comment: Tape has <u>lèuhn</u> where text has <u>bāan</u>. <u>bāan</u> can always be substituted for <u>lèuhn</u> as a journey measure.</p> <p>+ 2. a. <u>bāsi</u>.
 b. yáuh bāsi.
 c. yáuh bāan bāsi.
 d. yáuh géidō bāan bāsi a?
 e. Yāt go jūngtāuh yáuh géidō bāan bāsi a?
 f. Yāt go jūngtāuh yauh sei bāan bāsi.</p> <p>3. a. <u>chē</u>
 b. bāan chē
 c. yáuh bāan chē
 d. múih léuhnggo jih yáuh bāan chē.
 e. múih saamgo jih yáuh bāan chē.
 f. múih seigo jih yáuh bāan chē.</p> <p>+ 4. a. <u>hàahng louh</u>.
 b. hàahng louh heui.
 c. yiu hàahng louh heui.
 d. dīngáai yiu hàahng louh?
 e. Néih dīngáai yiu hàahng louh heui né?</p> | <p>1. a. <u>cable car</u>
 b. one [trip] cable car
 c. The next cable car
 d. When does the next car leave?
 e. The next car leaves at quarter after.</p> <p>2. a. <u>bus</u>
 b. there are buses
 c. there's a [trip] bus
 d. how many buses are there?
 e. How many buses there are in one hour?
 f. There are 4 buses an hour.</p> <p>3. a. bus [car]
 b. a [trip] bus
 c. there's a [trip] bus
 d. There's a bus every 10 minutes.
 e. There's a bus every 15 minutes.
 f. There's a bus every 20 minutes.</p> <p>4. a. walk [walk-road]
 b. go on foot
 c. have to go on foot
 d. Why do you have to walk?
 or
 What causes you to be walking?
 e. How come you are walking?</p> |
|---|---|

Comment: The d and e sentences could be: 'Why do you (or did you) want to walk?' or 'Why is it you are (or were) walking?' In the latter case ziu has a new meaning:

+ ziu =
'cause, make (someone do something)': "What causes you to be walking?" The implication being that the speaker expects the addressee not to be walking.

- | | |
|---|--|
| + 5. a. <u>fóchē</u> | 5. a. <u>train</u> |
| + b. <u>chóh</u> fóchē. | b. <u>take</u> the train, <u>go by</u> train |
| c. chóh fóchē heui. | c. go by train |
| + d. chóh fóchē heui <u>Sàngaai</u> . | d. go by train to the <u>New Territories</u> |
| e. Chóh fóchē heui Sàngaai yiu géi noih a? | e. How long does it take to get to the New Territories by train? |
| 6. a. géi houh bāsi | 6. a. what number bus |
| b. daahp géi houh bāsi | b. catch what number bus |
| c. yiu daahp géi houh bāsi | c. have to get what number bus |
| + d. Heui <u>fēigēichèuhng</u> yiu daahp géi houh bāsi a? | d. What number bus do you catch to get to the <u>airport</u> ? |
| + e. Heui <u>Sāandéng</u> yiu daahp géi houh bāsi a? | e. What number bus do you catch to get to the <u>Peak</u> ? |
| f. Heui Sàngaai yiu daahp géi houh bāsi a? | f. What number bus do you catch to get to the New Territories? |
| + 7. a. <u>léuihhāng</u> | 7. a. <u>trip, excursion</u> |
| b. heui léuihhāng | b. go on a trip, excursion |
| c. heui Tòihwāan léuihhāng | c. go to Taiwan on a trip |
| d. gauh nín heui Tòihwāan léuihhāng | d. took a trip to Taiwan last year |
| e. Gauh nín heui Tòihwāan léuihhāng, heuijó léuhng go láihbaai. | e. took a trip last year to Taiwan for two weeks. |

2. Transformation Drill: Transform from múih time expression to equivalent expression using duplicated Measure.

- | | |
|---|---|
| + 1. Kéuih múih yaht heui yāt chi. | 1. Kéuih <u>yahtyaht</u> dōu heui yāt chi. (<u>every day</u>) |
| + 2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui yāt chi. | 2. Kéuih <u>gogo láihbaai</u> dōu heui yat chi. (<u>every week</u>) |
| + 3. Kéuih múih go yuht heui yāt chi. | 3. Kéuih <u>gogo yuht</u> dōu keui yāt chi. (<u>every month</u>) |
| + 4. Kéuih múih nihn heui yāt chi. | 4. Kéuih <u>nihnnih</u> dōu heui yāt chi. (<u>every year</u>) |

Comment: Note that in the above sentences the duplicated Measure expressions (nihnnih, etc) are followed by dōu before the Verb: nihnnih dōu fāanheui, etc. In the múih sentences dōu can be included, to indicate that the frequency stated is thought to be high.

3. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh fóchē làih ga? /bāsi/
S: M̄hah̄. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge.

T: Did you come by train? /bus/

S: No, I came by bus.

2. T: Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh bāsi làih ga? /bāsi/
S: Haih. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge.

T: Did you come by bus? /bus/

S: Yes, I came by bus.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Néih haih m̄hah̄ daap syüh̄n làih ga? /fēigēi/ | 1. M̄hah̄. Ngóh daap fēigēi làih ge. |
| 2. Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh fēigēi làih ga? /fēigēi/ | 2. Haih. Ngóh chòh fēigēi làih ge. |
| 3. Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh fóchē làih ga? /bāsi/ | 3. M̄hah̄. Ngóh chòh bāsi làih ge. |
| + 4. Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh bāsi làih ga? /dīksi/ (taxi) | 4. M̄hah̄. Ngóh chòh dīksi làih ge. |
| 5. Néih haih m̄hah̄ chòh dīksi làih ga? /hàahng louh/ | 5. M̄hah̄. Ngóh hàahng louh làih ge. |
| 6. Néih haih m̄hah̄ hàahng louh làih ga? /chòh fóchē/ | 6. M̄hah̄. Ngóh chòh fóchē làih ge. |
| 7. Néih haih m̄hah̄ daap fóchē làih ga? /fóchē/ | 7. Haih. Ngóh daap fóchē làih ge. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 8. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap f́ochē
l̀aih ga? /b́así/ | 8. M̀h̄h̄aih. Ngóh daap b́así l̀aih
ge. |
| 9. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap b́así
l̀aih ga? /laahmchē/ | 9. M̀h̄h̄aih. Ngóh daap laahmchē
l̀aih ge. |
| 10. Néih haih m̀h̄h̄aih daap laahmchē
l̀aih ga? /laahmchē/ | 10. Haih. Ngóh daap laahm-
chē l̀aih ge. |

4. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Néih dím heui ga? /b́así/ T: How did you get there?
S: Ngóh daap b́así heui ge. S: I went by bus.
2. T: Néih dím heui a? /h̀aahng louh/ T: How are you going to get there?
S: Ngóh h̀aahng louh heui. S: I'm going to walk.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih dím heui a? /laahmchē/ | 1. Ngóh daap laahmchē heui. |
| 2. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /f́ochē/ | 2. Ngóh daap f́ochē l̀aih ge. |
| 3. Kéuih dím heui ga? /f́eigēi/ | 3. Kéuih daap f́eigēi heui ge. |
| 4. Néih dím heui a? /syùhn/ | 4. Ngóh daap syùhn heui. |
| 5. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /h̀aahng louh/ | 5. Ngóh h̀aahng louh l̀aih ge. |
| 6. Néih dím l̀aih ga? /b́así/ | 6. Ngóh daap b́así l̀aih ge. |
| 7. Néih dím heui a? /d́iksi/ | 7. Ngóh daap d́iksi heui. |
| 8. Néih dím lohk heui ga?
/laahmchē/ | 8. Ngóh daap laahmchē lohk
heui ge. |
| 9. Néih dím heui a? /jà chē/ | 9. Ngóh jà chē heui. |

5. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hahyāt b́aan chē daahp géi
hòì a?
When will the next bus
leave? | 1. Hahyāt b́aan chē daahp géi
hòì a? |
| 2. /b́aan f́eigēi/géisih/ | 2. Hahyāt b́aan f́eigēi géisih
hòì a? |
| 3. /b́aan laahmchē/daahp géi/ | 3. Hahyāt b́aan laahmchē daahp
géi hòì a? |

4. /bāan f'ochē/géisih/

4. Hahyāt bāan f'ochē géisih hòi a?

5. /bāan syùhn/daahpgéi/

5. Hahyāt bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a?

6. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from ziu to mhsái.Ex: T: Hāahng louh heui
Jüngwāahn Gāaisih
ziu sām go jih.T: It takes [requires] 15 minutes
to walk to Central Market.S: Hāahng louh heui
Jüngwāahn Gāaisih
mhsái sām go jih.S: It takes less than [doesn't
require] 15 minutes to walk
to Central Market.+ 1. Daap bāsí heui ziu yāt dím-
jüng. (one hour)1. Daap bāsí heui mhsái yāt
dímjüng.2. Chóh syùhn heui ziu seíng
yaht.2. Chóh syùhn heui mhsái seíng
yaht.3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún ziu
chātbaat dímjüng.3. Chóh fēigèi heui Yahtbún
mhsái chātbaat dímjüng.4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui ziu
nghluhk go jih.4. Daap laahmchē séuhng heui
mhsái nghluhk go jih.5. Chóh díksí heui tóuhsyügwún
ziu léuhngsām go jih.5. Chóh díksí heui tóuhsyügwún
mhsái léuhngsām go jih.6. Hāahng louh heui ziu léuhng
díng géi jüng.6. Hāahng louh heui mhsái
léuhng díng géi jüng.

7. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó dí ngāuhyuhk
mhhóusihk. Ngóh
mhsihk.T: That beef doesn't taste good.
I'm not going to eat it.S: Yánwaih gó dí ngāuh-
yuhk mhhóusihk,
sóyih ngóh mhsihk.S: I'm not going to eat that beef,
because it doesn't taste
good.1. Gó dí jyüyuhk mhhóusihk.
Ngóh móuh sihk.1. Yánwaih gó dí jyüyuhk mhhóu-
sihk, sóyih ngóh móuh sihk.2. Kāhmyaht láihbaai. Ngóhdeih
mhsái fāangüng.2. Yánwaih kāhmyaht láihbaai,
sóyih mhsái fāangüng.3. Gó deui hàaih mhhóutái.
Ngóh mhjeuk.3. Yánwaih gó deui hàaih mhhóu-
tái, sóyih ngóh mhjeuk.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Ní gihn yúhlāu daaihđí.
ngóh mhséung máaih. | 4. Yánwaih ní gihn yúhlāu
daaihđí, sóyih ngóh mhséung
máaih. |
| 5. Gámuyaht mhsái fàangùng.
Ngóh heui chàhlāuh yám chàh. | 5. Yánwaih gámuyaht mhsái fàan-
gùng, sóyih ngóh heui
chàhlāuh yám chàh. |

8. Transformation Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Múih yaht yáuh géi
(dō) baan fēigēi
a? /3/ | T: How many flights are there
each day? |
| S: Múih yaht yáuh sām
baan. | S: There are three flights every
day. |
| 1. Múih yaht dukh géi(dō) go
jūngtāuh syù a? /4/ | 1. Múih yaht dukh séi go
jūngtāuh. |
| 2. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) lèuhn
fóchē a? /9/ | 2. Múih yaht yáuh gáu lèuhn. |
| 3. Múih go láihbaai hohk géi
dímjūng Gwóngdùngwá a? /2/ | 3. Múih go láihbaai hohk léuhng
dímjūng. |
| 4. Múih yaht hohk géi(dō) go
jūngtāuh Yíngmahn a? /1/ | 4. Múih yaht hohk yāt go
jūngtāuh. |
| 5. Múih go jūngtāuh yáuh géi(dō)
baan syùhn a? /9/ | 5. Múih go jūngtāuh yáuh gáu
baan. |
| 6. Múih yaht yáuh géi(dō) baan
fēigēi a? /3/ | 6. Múih yaht yáuh sām baan. |

9. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Chóh bāsí yiu géi
noih a? /Jūngwàahn/ | T: How long does it take to go by
bus? /Central District/ |
| S: Chóh bāsí heui Jūng-
wàahn yiu géi noih
a? | S: How long will it take to go to
Central District by bus? |
| 1. Hàahng louh yiu géi noih a?
/Hèunggóng Daaihohk
tòuhsyùgwun/ | 1. Hàahng louh heui Hèunggóng
Daaihohk tòuhsyùgwun
yiu géi noih a? |
| 2. Daap fēigēi yiu géi noih a?
/Yahtbun/ | 2. Daap fēigēi heui Yahtbun
yiu géi noih a? |
| 3. Chóh dīksí yiu géi noih a?
/Daaih Douh Jūng/ | 3. Chóh dīksí heui Daaih Douh
Jūng yiu géi noih a? |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. Daap bāsī yiu géi noih a?
/Wíhng Ūn Gūngsī/ | 4. Daap bāsī heui Wíhng Ūn Gūng-
sī̄ yiu géi noih a? |
| 5. Daap syùhn yiu géi noih a?
/Tòihwāan/ | 5. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu
géi noih a? |
| 6. Chóh laahmchē yiu géi noih a?
/séuhng Sāandéng/ | 6. Chóh laahmchē séuhng Sāan-
déng yiu géi noih a? |
| 7. Daap fóchē yiu géi noih a?
/Sàngaai/ | 7. Daap fóchē heui Sàngaai yiu
géi noih a? |
| 8. Chóh fóchē yiu géi noih a?
/Gwóngjáu/ | 8. Chóh fóchē heui Gwóngjáu
yiu géi noih a? |

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih hàahng-
louh heui Tīnsing Máhtàuh
yiu géi noih a? | 1. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih
hàahnglouh heui Tīnsing
Máhtàuh yiu géi noih a? |
| 2. /Jùngwàahn Gàaisih/Màhnwàh
Jáudim/ | 2. Yàuh Jùngwàahn Gàaisih
hàahng louh heui Màhnwàh
Jáudim yiu géi noih a? |
| 3. /Màhnwàh Jáudim/Méihgwok
Jáudim/ | 3. Yàuh Màhnwàh Jáudim hàahng
louh heui Méihgwok Jáudim
yiu géi noih a? |
| 4. /Méihgwok Jáudim/Wíhng Ūn
Gūngsī/ | 4. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim hàahng
louh heui Wíhng Ūn Gūngsī
yiu géi noih a? |
| 5. /daap dīksī/ | 5. Yàuh Méihgwok Jáudim daap
dīksī heui Wíhng Ūn Gūngsī
yiu géi noih a? |
| 6. /WíhngŪn Gūngsī/(Hèung)góng
Daaih(hohk)/ | 6. Yàuh WíhngŪn Gūngsī daap
dīksī heui (Hèung)góng
Daaih(hohk) yiu géi noih
a? |
| 7. /Hèunggóng Daaihhohk/séuhng
Sāandéng/ | 7. Yàuh Hèunggóng Daaihhohk
daap dīksī séuhng Sāandéng
yiu géi noih a? |
| 8. /Sāandéng/lohk Jùngwàahn/ | 8. Yàuh Sāandéng daap dīksī
lohk Jùngwàahn yiu géi
noih a? |

Comment: Góng Daaih is an abbreviation for Hong Kong University.

11. Expansion Drill: Add gái in the appropriate place.

- Ex: 1. T: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh. T: It takes three hours to go by plane.
 S: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go gēi jūngtāuh. S: It takes more than three hours (but less than 4) to go by plane.
2. T: Chóh syùhn yiu ngh yaht. T: It takes five days to go by boat.
 S: Chóh syùhn yiu ngh yaht gēi. S: It takes a little over five days (but less than 6) to go by boat.
1. Jauh nī gihn sih yiu yāt nihñ. This job will take a year to do. 1. Jauh nī gihn sih yiu (yāt) nihñ gēi.
2. Chóh syùhn yiu yāt go yuht. 2. Chóh syùhn yiu go gēi yuht.
3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go jih. 3. Daap fóchē yiu séi go gēi jih.
4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu yāt go jūngtāuh. 4. Heui laahmchē jaahm yiu (yāt) go gēi jūngtāuh.
5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahp fānjūng. 5. Fàan ūkkéi yiu sahp gēi fānjūng.
6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nihñ. 6. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá yiu léuhng nihñ gēi.
7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu saam yaht. 7. Daap syùhn heui Tòihwāan yiu saam yaht gēi.
8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím jūng. 8. Heui fēigēichèuhng yiu léuhng dím gēi jūng.

Repeat, thus:

T: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh.

S: Daap fēigēi yiu saam go jūngtāuh dóu lā.

12. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Néih heidou góján, kéuih-deih sihkjó faahn meih a? /nod/ T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
- S: Ngóh heidou góján, kéuihdeih yíngíng sihkjó faahn laak. S: When I got there, they had already eaten their meal.

2. T: Néih heidou gó-ján, kéuihdeih sihkjó faahn meih a? /shake/

T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?

S: Ngóh heidou gó-ján, kéuihdeih juhng meih sihk faahn.

S: When I got there, they still hadn't eaten yet.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih heidou góján, néih sihkjó jóuchaan meih a? /shake/ | 1. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh juhng meih sihk jóuchaan. |
| 2. Kéuih heidou góján, néih táijó yísang meih a? /nod/ | 2. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh yíhging táijó yísang laak. |
| 3. Néih làihdou góján, kéuih fàanjóheui meih a? /shake/ | 3. Ngóh làihdou góján, kéuih juhng meih fàanheui. |
| 4. Néih heidou góján, kéuih jáujó meih a? /nod/ | 4. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih yíhging jáujó laak. |
| 5. Kéuih làihdou góján, néih yámjó chàh meih a? /shake/ | 5. Kéuih làihdou góján, ngóh juhng meih yam chàh. |
| 6. Néih heidou góján, ga fóchē hòijó meih a? /nod/ | 6. Ngóh heidou góján, ga fóchē yíhging hòijó laak. |
| 7. Néih heidou góján, jek syùhn hòijó meih a? /shake/ | 7. Ngóh heidou góján, jek syùhn juhng meih hoi. |
| 8. Néih heidou góján, kéuih búnjó ùk meih a? /shake/ | 8. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih juhng meih bún ùk. |
| 9. Néih heidou góján, kéuih fàanjó ùkkéi meih a? /nod/ | 9. Ngóh heidou góján, kéuih yíhging fàanjó ùkkéi laak. |
| 10. Kéuih heidou góján, néih duhkjó syù meih a? /shake/ | 10. Kéuih heidou góján, ngóh juhng meih duhk. |

13. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih múih yaht dōu lohk Jùngwàahn.

T: He goes to the Central District everyday.

S: Kéuih yahtyaht dōu lohk Jùngwàahn.

S: He goes to the Central District everyday.

2. T: Kéuih múih go làihbaai dōu hái ùkkéi dá páai.

T: She plays mahjong at home every week.

S: Kéuih gogo láih- S: She plays mahjong at home
baai dōu hái every week.
ūkkéi dá páai.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai dōu heui dá bō. | 1. Kéuih gogo láihbaai dōu heui dá bō. |
| 2. Kéuih múih go yuht dōu fàan-heui Oumún. | 2. Kéuih gogo yuht dōu fàan-heui Oumún. |
| 3. Kéuih múih nih̄n dōu fàanheui Méihgwok. | 3. Kéuih nih̄nnih̄n dōu fàan-heui Méihgwok. |
| 4. Kéuih múih yaht dōu sihk Sāichāan. | 4. Kéuih yahtyaht dōu sihk Sāichāan. |
| 5. Kéuih múih go láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn. | 5. Kéuih gogo láihbaaiyaht dōu chéng sihk faahn. |
| 6. Kéuih múih go yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chin. | 6. Kéuih gogo yuht yāt houh dōu heui ló chin. |
| 7. Kéuih múih nih̄n sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjāu. | 7. Kéuih nih̄nnih̄n sei yuht dōu fàan Gwóngjāu. |

14. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih múih nih̄n heui T: He goes to Taipei twice each
Tòihbāk léuhng chi. year. /week/
/láihbaai/

S: Kéuih múih go láih- S: He goes to Taipei twice a
baai heui Tòihbāk week.
léuhng chi.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih múih yaht gwo hói sei chi. /láihbaai/ | 1. Kéuih múih go láihbaai gwo hói sei chi. |
| 2. Kéuih múih go láihbaai làih ngòh ūkkéi yāt chi. /yuht/ | 2. Kéuih múih go yuht làih ngòh ūkkéi yāt chi. |
| 3. Kéuih múih go yuht fàan Gwóng-jāu léuhng chi. /nih̄n/ | 3. Kéuih múih nih̄n fàan Gwóng-jāu léuhng chi. |
| 4. Kéuih múih nih̄n fàanheui hohk-haauh sei chi. /yaht/ | 4. Kéuih múih yaht fàanheui hohkhaauh sei chi. |
| 5. Kéuih múih yaht loh̄k Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi. /láihbaai/ | 5. Kéuih múih go láihbaai loh̄k Jùngwàahn sàamsei chi. |
| 6. Kéuih múih go láihbaai heui Sàngaai géi chi. /yuht/ | 6. Kéuih múih go yuht heui Sàngaai géi chi. |

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih làihjǒ
Hèunggóng yáuh
gái noih a?

T: How long have you been in Hong Kong?

S: Néih làihjǒ
Hèunggóng géi
noih a?

S: How long have you been in Hong Kong?

2. T: Kéuih gaaujǒ
Gwokýúh yáuh
sàam nihh laak.

T: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

S: Kéuih gaaujǒ sàam
nihh Gwokýúh
laak.

S: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok yáuh
gái noih a?

1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok géi
noih a?

2. Ngóh bǜnjǒ ūk yáuh bun nihh
laak.
I moved half a year ago.

2. Ngóh bǜnjǒ ūk bun nihh laak.

3. Kéuih gwojǒ hói yáuh géi go
jǜngtáuh laak.

3. Kéuih gwojǒ hói géi go
jǜngtáuh laak.

4. Ngóh nàahmpáhngyáuh fàanjǒheui
Tòihbāk yáuh yāt go láihbaai
laak.

4. Ngóh nàahmpáhngyáuh fàanjǒ
heui Tòihbāk yāt go láih-
baai laak.

5. Kéuih bātjǒ yihp yáuh léuhng
nihh laak.

5. Kéuih bātjǒ yihp léuhng
nihh laak.

6. Néih gitjǒ fàn yáuh géi noih a?

6. Néih gitjǒ fàn géi noih a?

7. Kéuih sihkjǒ faahn yáuh yih-
sahp fānjǜng laak.
He finished his meal twenty
minutes ago.

7. Kéuih sihkjǒ faahn yih-
sahp fānjǜng laak.

8. Ga fóchē hòijǒ yáuh géi noih a?

8. Ga fóchē hòijǒ géi noih a?

16. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Jèung Sàang daap
fēigēi.
Gó bāan fēigēi géi
dímjǜng hói a?

T: Mr. Cheung is going to catch
that flight.
When does that flight take
off?

S: Jèung Sàang daap gó
bāan fēigēi géi
dímjǜng hói a?

S: When does the flight Mr.
Cheung is taking take off? or
When does the flight take
off that Mr. Cheung is
taking?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Léih Táai chòh bāsi.
Gó bāan bāsi heui bīndouh a? | 1. Léih Táai chòh gó bāan bāsi
heui bīndouh a? |
| 2. Ngóhdeih chòh fóchē.
Gó bāan fóchē láihbaaisei dou. | 2. Ngóhdeih chòh gó bāan fóchē
láihbaaisei dou. |
| 3. Wòhng Sàang daap syùhn.
Gó bāan syùhn daahp géi hòi a? | 3. Wòhng Sàang daap gó bāan
syùhn daahp géi hòi a? |
| 4. Kéuihdeih daap laahmchē.
Gó bāan laahmchē yāt go
jih hauh hòi. | 4. Kéuihdeih daap gó bāan laahm-
chē yāt go jih hauh hòi. |
| 5. Kéuih máaih sēutsāam.
Gó gihn sēutsāam m̀hngāamjeuk. | 5. Kéuih máaih gó gihn sēutsāam
m̀hngāamjeuk. |
| 6. Hòh Sīujé duhk gó bún syù.
Gó bún syù maaih sah̄p m̀an. | 6. Hòh Sīujé duhk gó bún syù
maaih sah̄p m̀an.
The book Miss Ho is reading
sells for \$10. |

Comment: Tape has léuhn in sentences 1, 2, and 3, where text has bāan. In sentence 4, tape has douh where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for douh as a journey measure.

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih yāt go jùngt̀auh (jì)-
hauh f̀aanl̀aih.
[He, after an hour, return.]
He'll be back in an hour. | 1. Kéuih yāt go jùngt̀auh (jì)-
hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 2. /go géi jùngt̀auh/ | 2. Kéuih go géi jùngt̀auh (jì)-
hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 3. /léuhng go jùngt̀auh/ | 3. Kéuih léuhng go jùngt̀auh
(jì)hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 4. /léuhng go géi jùngt̀auh/ | 4. Kéuih léuhng go géi jùngt̀auh
(jì)hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 5. /s̀aamsei go jùngt̀auh/ | 5. Kéuih s̀aamsei go jùngt̀auh
(jì)hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 6. /go géi láihbaai/ | 6. Kéuih go géi láihbaai (jì)-
hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 7. /yāt nih̄n/ | 7. Kéuih yāt nih̄n (jì)hauh
f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 8. /nih̄n géi/ | 8. Kéuih nih̄n géi (jì)hauh
f̀aanl̀aih. |
| 9. /léuhng nih̄n géi/ | 9. Kéuih léuhng nih̄n géi (jì)-
hauh f̀aanl̀aih. |

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 10. /yāt nihŋ dóu/ | 10. Kéuih yāt nihŋ dóu (jǐ)hauh fàanlāih. |
| 11. /yāt go yuht dóu/ | 11. Kéuih yāt go yuht dóu (jǐ)-hauh fàanlāih. |

18. Double Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok--
waahkjé sām go yuht (jǐ)-
hauh fàanlāih.
He's gone to America--and
will probably be back in
three months. | 1. Kéuih heuijǒ Méihgwok--
waahkjé sām go yuht
(jǐ)hauh fàanlāih. |
| 2. /yām chàh/bun go jūngtāuh/ | 2. Kéuih heuijǒ yām chàh,
waahkjé bun go jūngtāuh
(jǐ)hauh fàanlāih. |
| 3. /Yínggwok/léuhnggo géi yuht/ | 3. Kéuih heuijǒ Yínggwok,
waahkjé léuhnggo géi yuht
(jǐ)hauh fàanlāih. |
| 4. /dá bō/yāt go géi jūngtāuh/ | 4. Kéuih heuijǒ dá bō, waahkjé
yāt go géi jūngtāuh (jǐ)-
hauh fàanlāih. |
| 5. /Gwóngjǎu/géi yaht/ | 5. Kéuih heuijǒ Gwóngjǎu,
waahkjé géi yaht (jǐ)hauh
fàanlāih. |
| 6. /yàuhséui/sāmsei go jūngtāuh/ | 6. Kéuih heuijǒ yàuhséui,
waahkjé sāmsei go jūng-
tāuh (jǐ)hauh fàanlāih. |
| 7. /Jūngwàahn/géi go jih/ | 7. Kéuih heuijǒ Jūngwàahn,
waahkjé géi go jih (jǐ)-
hauh fàanlāih. |

Comment: The structure Time Expression (jǐ) hauh 'after X time' as in sām yaht hauh fàanlāih 'return after 3 days' represents a Time When expression which precedes the Verb it is connected to.

19. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from negatives to dínggái questions.

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht móuh tùhng taai-táai heui yàuh-séui. T: He didn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.

S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dínggái móuh tùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui a? S: Why didn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

2. T: Kéuih kàhmyaht m̀htùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui. T: He wouldn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.

S: Kéuih kàhmyaht dínggái m̀htùhng taaitáai heui yàuhséui a? S: Why wouldn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih m̀htái dihnsih. | 1. Kéuih dínggái m̀htái dihnsih a? |
| 2. Kéuih m̀hje chin béi kéuih sailóu. | 2. Kéuih dínggái m̀hje chin béi kéuih sailóu a? |
| 3. Kéuih gājē m̀htùhng nàahnpàhng-yáuh dá bō. | 3. Kéuih gājē dínggái m̀htùhng nàahnpàhng-yáuh dá bō a? |
| 4. Kéuih m̀hdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng. | 4. Kéuih dínggái m̀hdaai go jái heui tái yīsāng a? |
| 5. Kéuih m̀hgaau kéuih sé Jùngmàhn. | 5. Kéuih dínggái m̀hgaau kéuih sé Jùngmàhn a? |
| 6. Kéuih móuh dá dihnwá béi ngòh. | 6. Kéuih dínggái móuh dá dihnwá béi ngòh a? |
| 7. Kéuih móuh wah néih jí. | 7. Kéuih dínggái móuh wah néih jí a? |
| 8. Kéuih móuh máaih gāsí. | 8. Kéuih dínggái móuh máaih gāsí a? |
| 9. Kéuih m̀hchéng gūngyàhn. | 9. Kéuih dínggái m̀hchéng gūngyàhn a? |
| 10. Kéuih móuh wuhn sām. | 10. Kéuih dínggái móuh wuhn sām a? |

Comment: The m̀h sentences depend on context to clarify whether the meaning is 'is not going to V' or 'wouldn't (i.e., refused to) V.'

20. Expansion Drill

- Ex: A: Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui léuhng chí ga. A: Formerly he went twice every year.
- B: Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui léuhng chí ga, bāt̄gwo gāmnín kéuih yāt chí dōu meih heuigwo. B: Formerly he went twice every year, but this year he hasn't gone even once.
1. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chí ga. 1. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih yaht dōu làih sàam chí ga, bāt̄gwo gāmyaht kéuih yāt chí dōu meih làihgwo.
 2. Ngóh yíhchíhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chí ga. 2. Ngóh yíhchíhn múih go yuht dōu heui sei chí ga, bāt̄gwo ní go yuht ngóh yāt chí dōu meih heuigwo.
 3. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chí ga. 3. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih go láihbaai dōu làih chāt chí ga, bāt̄gwo ní go láihbaai kéuih yāt chí dōu meih làihgwo.
 4. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui ngh chí ga. 4. Kéuih yíhchíhn múih níhn dōu heui ngh chí ga, bāt̄gwo gāmnín kéuih yāt chí dōu meih heuigwo.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) louh = road
- 2) gwo = pass by
- 3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane
- 4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'
- 5) Sātíhn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong
- 6) fàandouheui = arrive back
- 7) hóu wán ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places
- 8) Nàh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...

- 9) fùnggíng = scenery
 10) louh = road
 a) sĭk louh = know the road; know your way around
 11) Māt m̄hsĭk a? = What do you mean, not know?
 12) piu = ticket

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. How many hours a day do you study Cantonese?
2. How many planes to the U.S. are there a day?
3. How long does it take to walk to the Star Ferry?
4. It takes about 15 minutes to cross the harbor by ferry (ship).
5. It takes more than two hours by car.
6. How long have you studied English?
7. How long has Mr. Chang been in Japan?
8. When will Mr. Lau be back?
9. How long does it take by ship from Hong Kong to Japan?
10. How come you didn't go with your wife and children on vacation in Taiwan? (go to Taiwan on excursion)
11. It's so slow to go by ship-- Why are you going by ship? (speaker expected them to take a plane)
12. It's very nice to go by ship, why do you want to fly?

B. And he replies:

1. Every day I study five or six hours.
2. There are four or five a day.
3. It takes about 20 minutes to walk. If you take a cab it's just five minutes.
4. Not so! It doesn't require 15 minutes to get across-- it takes only 10 minutes.
5. It's faster by train--it takes just an hour and a half.
6. More than two years.
7. Over a week.
8. He'll be back in an hour. Please call back later.
9. It takes a little over five days by ship.
10. I've been very busy recently and so I couldn't go.
11. We're going by ship because I'm afraid of taking planes.
12. We have to reach Washington on the 15th, so we don't have time to go by ship.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 13. What time does the bus leave? | 13. At quarter after. |
| 14. What time does the next train to the New Territories leave? | 14. At 10:35. |
| 15. Would you prefer to take the bus to the Peak, or the cable car? | 15. Either one--But I think maybe the cable car. |
| 16. What time does Miss Chang's plane leave? | 16. I don't know, you'll have to ask her. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 20

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. bāan | m: flight, trip; voyage Measure |
| 2. bāsí | n: bus |
| 3. choh <u>vehicle</u> | CoV: travel by <u>vehicle</u> , go by <u>vehicle</u> |
| 4. choh fóchē | CoV+O: go by train, take the train |
| 5. daap <u>vehicle</u> | CoV/v: travel by <u>vehicle</u> ; take <u>vehicle</u> ; catch <u>vehicle</u> |
| 6. -dāk | Vsuf: verb suf. 'can,' 'able to,' indicating physical ability |
| 7. dīksí | n: taxi |
| 8. dīngáai? | QW: why? |
| 9. dīmjūng | m: hour (length of time) |
| 10. fēigēi | n: airplane |
| 11. fēigēi chēuhng | n: airport |
| 12. fóchē | n: train |
| 13. gàyahn | n: family members |
| 14. gogo láihbaai | Ph: every week |
| 15. gogo yuht | Ph: every month |
| 16. nihnnih | Ph: every year |
| 17. gónàhohit | Ph: can't make it in time; [hurry-not-make it] |
| 18. hàahng louh | CoV+O: go on foot |
| 19. hahyēt <u>M</u> | Ph: the next <u>M</u> |
| 20. hah yāt bāan chē | Ph: the next trip of the vehicle |
| 21. hòi | v: start off, set out, (for vehicles) |
| 22. laahmchē | n: cable car, Peak Tram |
| 23. léuihhāhng | VO: excursion |

24. múih Sp: every, each
25. pa v: frightened of, be afraid of
26. sàamsei nu: three or four - an approximate number
27. Sàandéng Pw: the Peak
28. sahpgéi nu: a few more than 10
29. Sàngaaí Pw: the New Territories
30. sóyih Cj: therefore
31. syùhn n: ship, ferry
32. tùhng person yā'tchāih Y Ph: Y together with person
33. yahtyaht Ph: every day
34. yànwaih Cj: because
35. yànwaih..., sóyih... PCj: because..., therefore...; since..., so...
36. yihché Cj: furthermore
37. yiu CoV: cause, make (someone do something)
38. yiu length of time v: takes length of time
39. yùhnlòih MA/n : basically; basis, origin
40. Yùhnlòih haih gám ge. Ph: Oh, so that's why. So that's the reason!
-

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(It's February in Hong Kong, and a native of Hong Kong is talking about the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

Bundeihyahn

dung
Gàmyaht hóu dung bo!

cold
Gosh it's cold today!

Tòihwāanyahn

dunggwo kàhmyaht
dunggwo kàhmyaht hóu dò
Haih a. Gàmyaht dunggwo kàhmyaht
hóudò.

colder than yesterday
much colder than yesterday
Sure is. Today is a lot colder
than yesterday.

Bundeihyahn

ji-

ji dung
sihsih
sihsih dōu
Yihyuht sihsih dōu haih ji dung
ge lā.

superlative degree; -est,
most
coldest
always
always, every time
February is always the coldest
(month).

Tòihwāanyahn

yihttīn
láahngtīn
yihttīn hóu, yikwaahk
láahngtīn hóu a?

gokdāk
Gám, néih gokdāk yihttīn hóu,
yikwaahk láahngtīn hóu a?

hot weather; summer
cold weather; winter
is summer good, or winter
good? (i.e., which is
better?)
feel, consider
Do you think summer is better,
or winter is better?

Bundeihyahn

béigaau

béigaau hóudī
Ngóh wah yihttīn béigaau
hóudī laak.

comparatively, in
comparison
in comparison better
I think summer is a bit better.

Yánwaih ngóh ji pa dung ge.

tùhng X yátyeuhng ge
tínhei

Tòihwāan ge tínhei haih àhnhaih
tùhng nídouh yátyeuhng ga?

Tòihwāanyáhn

juhng Adj-dí
juhng dungdí

Tòihwāan ge láahngtín juhng
dungdí tím.

Búndeihyáhn

dím a? or dímyéung?

Gám, yihttín díng a?

Tòihwāanyáhn

tùhng nídouh chàmhō

sāp

móuh gam sāp

móuh nídouh gam sāp

Tùhng nídouh chàmhō, daahnhaih

móuh nídouh gam sāp.

Búndeihyáhn

béi

1 béi 2 hóu

Hèunggóng tínhei béi

Tòihwāan hóu

Gám, ngóh wah Hèunggóng tínhei

béi Tòihwāan hóu--

Yánwaih ngóh àhpa sāp, ji pa
dung.

Because what I hate most is
cold weather. [...I am a
fear-cold-the-most-one]
the same as X
weather

Is the weather in Taiwan the
same as here?

even more Adj, even Adj-er
even colder

Taiwan's winter is even colder.

how is it?

What's the summer like?

about like this [with this
approximately the same]

damp

not so damp

not as damp as here

About the same as here, but not
so damp as here.

in comparison

1, in comparison with 2,
is better. (or) 1 is
better than 2.

Hong Kong's weather is
better than Taiwan's

In that case, I say Hong Kong's
weather is better than
Taiwan's--

Because I don't mind the damp,
but I can't stand the cold.

Tòihwāanyāhn

ngóh jauh wah ...

I then say ..., I in response
say ...Ngóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tinhei
béi Hèunggóng hóu laak.Well I say Taiwan's weather is
better than Hong Kong's.Yánwaih ngóh mhpa dung ji pa
sāp!Because I'm not bothered by cold
but I can't stand damp
(weather)!B. Recapitulation:(It's February in Hong Kong and a
native of Hong Kong is talking about
the weather with a native of Taiwan:)Búndehyāhn

Gāmyaht hóu dung bo.

Gosh it's cold today.

BòihwāanyāhnHaih a. Gāmyaht dunggwo káhmyaht
hóudò.Sure is. Today is a lot colder
than yesterday.BúndehnyāhnYihyuht síhsih dōu haih ji dung
ge lā.February is always the coldest
month.TòihwāanyāhnGám, néih gokdāk yihttín hóu,
yikwaahk láahngtín hóu a?Do you think summer is better,
or winter is better?BúndehyāhnNgóh wah yihttín béigaau hóudí
laak.

I think summer is a bit nicer.

Yánwaih ngóh ji pa dung ge.

Because what I hate most is
cold weather.Tòihwāan ge tinhei haih mhhaih
túhng nídouh yātyeuhng ga?Is the weather in Taiwan the
same as here?TòihwāanyāhnTòihwāan ge láahngtín juhng
dungdí tim.

Taiwan's winter is even colder.

Búndeihyáhn

Gám, yíhttín díng a?

What's the summer like?

TòihwāayāhnTúhng nídhóuh chàmhō, daahnhaih
móuh nídhóuh gam sāp.About the same as here, but not
so damp as here.BúndeihyáhnGám, ngóh wah Hèunggóng tìnhei
béi Tòihwāan hóu--Yánwaih ngóh
m̀hpa sāp, jí pa dung.In that case, I say Hong Kong's
weather is better than
Taiwan's--Because I don't mind
the damp, but I can't stand
the cold.TòihwāanyāhnNgóh jauh wah Tòihwāan tìnhei
béi Hèunggóng hóu laak.
Yánwaih ngóh m̀hpa dung jí pa
sāp!Well I say Taiwan's weather is
better than Hong Kong's.
Because I'm not bothered by cold
but I can't stand the damp!

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes.

-seui, '-years old' (for people). The Chinese count a child as being one year old at birth. At every Chinese New Year (lunar new year) thereafter, one more year is added, rather than adding a year on the anniversary of the date of birth. Since the system of counting age differs in English and Chinese, '-years old' is only an approximate rendering of the term -seui. A Chinese who is 17-seui may be 16, or he may be 15, by Western reckoning.

(See Drill 5)

c) A móuh B gam Adj. = A is not as Adj. as B.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih móuh ngóh gam gòu. He's not as tall as I.
 2. Daap syùhn móuh daap fēigāi gam faai. Taking a ship isn't as fast as taking a plane.

(See BC and Drills 7, 11)

d) Dissimilarity by X amount is expressed:

1) A Adj-gwo B Nu-M (or indefinite amount) = A is more Adj than B by X amount.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh yāt chyun. He is taller than I by one inch. He is an inch taller than I.
 2. Kéuih gòugwo ngóh síusíu. He is a little bit taller than I.

(See BC and Drill 6)

2) A béi B Adj Nu-M/indef = A, in comparison to B, is Adj than B by X amount.

- Ex: Kéuih béi ngóh gòu yāt chyun. He is taller than I by one inch.

2) When one substantive is stated, and compared to another which is not stated, the substantive occupies subject position, and the comparison occupies predicate position.

- a) Substantive Adj. Substantive is Adj-er. (See Lesson 8, Note 2.e.2, p.164)
 Ex: 1. Ní gihn leng. This one is prettier.
 2. Toihwān yiht. Taiwan is hotter (than the other place under discussion).
- b) Substantive Adj-dī. Substantive is a little Adj-er.
 Ex: Ní gihn lengdī. This one is a little prettier.
- c) Substantive béigaau Adj(-dī). Substantive is comparatively (i.e. in comparison to the other substantive under discussion) Adj-er.
 or:
 Substantive is fairly Adj. (in comparison to other members of same category.)

- Ex: Toihwān tinhei béigaau yiht dī. Taiwan's weather is relatively hot (in comparison to other places)
 or
 ...hotter than the other places under discussion.

(See BC)

b. Measurable adjectives can combine with number-measure expressions in the following ways:

1. Nu-M Adj

The number-measure expression can be the center of the predicate, with the adjective following as an adjunct to indicate in what respect the number-measure phrase applies.

S	P	
Ex: NĪ jèung tóí sei chek chéuhng.		This table is four feet in length.
Gó jèung	sei chek gòu.	That one is four feet in height.
Gó jèung	géi chek fut a?	That one is how many feet in width?

(See Drill 5)

2. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the subject, and the number-measure expression the predicate. In this case there is a pause between subject and predicate, and the Subject-Predicate sentence often is Comment in a larger Topic-Comment sentence.

Topic	Comment	
Ex:	Subject	Predicate
NĪ jèung tóí chéuhng	48 chyun,	This table--it's length is 48 inches,
	fut	24 chyun,
	gòu	16 chyun,
		width 24 inches,
		height 16 inches.

3. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the center of the predicate in a sentence of implied or explicit comparison, with the number-measure expression following to indicate the amount of the difference in the comparison.

S	P	
Ex: NĪ jèung	fut yāt chek.	This one is wider by one foot, i.e., one foot wider than another one (here unspecified).
NĪ jèung bái gó jèung	fut yāt chek.	This one, in comparison to that one, is wide by one foot, i.e., This one is one foot wider than that one.

(See Drill 6)

c. Measurable adjective sentence in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb.

The measurable adjective sentence in the positive degree (as opposed to the comparative degree in examples immediately above) can be expressed in SVO form with yáuh as equative verb and the measured adjective phrase (or the Nu-M phrase) as Object.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. Nĭ dī bou yáuh géi
(chek) chéuhng a? | How (many feet) long is this cloth? |
| 2. Nĭ dī bou yáuh sei
chek chéuhng. | This cloth is 4 feet long.
This cloth has 4 feet in length. |
| 3. Nĭ jèung tói chéuhng
yáuh sei chek. | This table, the length is four feet. |

(See Drill 5)

4. daaih, 'big,' and sai, 'small' used in reference to years of age.

sai is used to mean 'young(er)' in comparing the ages of two people:

Ex: Kéuih saigwo ngóh (yāt sei). He is (a year) younger than I.

daaih is used to mean 'years of age,' in the question formula.

géi daaih a? 'How many years of age (is he)?,' 'How old (is he)?'

It is also used to mean 'old(er)' in comparing the ages of two people.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuiy géi daaih a? | How old is he? |
| 2. Kéuih béi ngóh daaih. | He is older than I. |

(See Drill 5)

5. Frequency words in Cantonese.

In Cantonese frequency words are adverbs which precede the verb concerned:

- | | | |
|---------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| sĭhsĭh dōu | = | always |
| hóudō sĭh dōu | = | very often, lots of times |
| yáuhshĭh | = | sometimes |
| hóu síu | = | very rarely, seldom, i.e., not often |

- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Ex: Kéuihdeih sĭhsĭh dōu | sĭhk Jùngchoi. | They always eat Chinese food. |
| " hóudō sĭh dōu " | " " | They eat Chinese food very often. |
| " yáuhshĭh " | " " | They sometimes eat Chinese food. |
| " hóu síu " | " " | They seldom eat Chinese food. |

(See BC and Drill 17)

III. DRILLS

1. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dung mhdung a?

T: Is it cold?

S: Mhhaih géi dung.

S: It's not very cold.

- | | |
|--|--|
| + 1. <u>Lèuhng</u> mhlèuhng a?
Is it <u>cool</u> ? | 1. Mhhaih géi lèuhng.
It's not very cool. |
| 2. Hóu mhhóu a? | 2. Mhhaih géi hóu. |
| + 3. <u>Yiht</u> mhyiht a?
Is it <u>hot</u> ? | 3. Mhhaih géi yiht. |
| + 4. <u>Chúhng</u> mhchúhng a?
Is it <u>heavy</u> ? | 4. Mhhaih géi chúhng.
It's not very heavy. |
| + 5. <u>Lēk</u> mhlēk a?
Is he <u>smart</u> ? | 5. Mhhaih géi lēk.
Not very smart. |
| + 6. <u>Nàahn</u> mhnàahn a?
Is it <u>difficult</u> ? | 6. Mhhaih géi nàahn.
Not very difficult. |
| + 7. <u>Yih</u> mhyih a?
Is it <u>easy</u> ? | 7. Mhhaih géi yih.
It's not very easy. |
| + 8. <u>Gòu</u> mhgòu a?
Is he <u>tall</u> ? | 8. Mhhaih géi gòu.
Not very tall. |
| + 9. <u>Yáuh</u> móuh <u>cheuimeih</u> a?
Is it interesting?
(<u>yáuh cheuimeih</u> =
<u>interesting</u>) | 9. Mhhaih géi yáuh cheuimeih.
Not very interesting. |

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Haih sàh ge.

It is new.

S: Haih mhhaih sàh ga?

Is it new?

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Haih gauh ge. | 1. Haih mhhaih gauh ga? |
| 2. Haih baahk sīk ge. | 2. Haih mhhaih baahk sīk ga? |
| 3. Haih hāak sīk ge. | 3. Haih mhhaih hāak sīk ga? |
| 4. Haih yātyeuhng ge. | 4. Haih mhhaih yātyeuhng ga? |
| 5. Haih sàh ge. | 5. Haih mhhaih sàh ga? |
| 6. Haih yiht ge. | 6. Haih mhhaih yiht ga? |
| 7. Haih dung ge. | 7. Haih mhhaih dung ga? |
| 8. Haih daaih ge. | 8. Haih mhhaih daaih ga? |
| 9. Haih sai ge. | 9. Haih mhhaih sai ga? |

3. Response Drill

Ex: T: DĪ bējāu dung m̀dung T: Is the beer cold?
 a? /nod/

S: Hóu dung. S: Very cold.

T: DĪ gafē yiht m̀hyiht T: Is the coffee hot?
 a? /shake/

S: M̀hahh géi yiht. S: Not very hot.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Kàhmyaht lèuhng m̀hlèuhng a?
/shake/ | 1. M̀hahh géi lèuhng. |
| 2. Gàm̄yaht yiht m̀hyiht a? /nod/ | 2. Hóu yiht. |
| 3. Gó jèung tóí ch̀uhng m̀ch̀uhng
a? /nod/ | 3. Hóu ch̀uhng. |
| 4. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a?
/shake/ | 4. M̀hahh géi lēk. |
| 5. Hohk Gwóngd̀ungwá nàahn m̀hnàahn
a? /nod/ | 5. Hóu nàahn. |
| 6. Gó go bíu jéun m̀hjéun a?
/shake/ | 6. M̀hahh géi jéun. |
| 7. NĪ g̀aan ūk daaih m̀hdaaih a?
/nod/ | 7. Hóu daaih. |
| 8. Gó tou hei yáuh móuh cheui-
meih a? /shake/ | 8. M̀hahh géi yáuh cheuimeih. |

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Gàm̄yaht dungdĪ. T: It's colder today.
 /kàhmyaht/

S: Gàm̄yaht dunggwo S: It's colder today than
 kàhmyaht. yesterday.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. NĪ gĪhn sēutsāam daaihđĪ.
/gó gĪhn/ | 1. NĪ gĪhn sēutsāam daaihgwō
gó gĪhn. |
| 2. Ngóh g̀aan séjĪhlàuh saidĪ.
/néih g̀aan/ | 2. Ngóh g̀aan séjĪhlàuh saigwō
néih g̀aan. |
| 3. Kéuih g̀aan ūk lengđĪ.
/ngóh g̀aan/ | 3. Kéuih g̀aan ūk lenggwō ngóh
g̀aan. |
| 4. Néih sĪnsàang go dáfógēi
gwaidĪ. /kéuih go/ | 4. Néih sĪnsàang go dáfógēi
gwaigwō kéuih go. |
| 5. Wòhng Sàang go bíu jéundĪ.
/ngóh go/ | 5. Wòhng Sàang go bíu jéungwō
ngóh go. |
| 6. Kàhmyaht yihtđĪ. /gàm̄yaht/ | 6. Kàhmyaht yihtgwō gàm̄yaht. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. Ní ga fēigēi faaidī. /gó ga/ | 7. Ní ga fēigēi faaigwo gó ga. |
| 8. Hohk Gwóngdungwá yáuh cheui-meihdī. /hohk Yíngmàhn/ | 8. Hohk Gwóngdungwá yáuh cheui-meihgwo hohk Yíngmàhn. |
| 9. Hohk Gwóngdungwá nàahndī. /Yíngmàhn/ | 9. Hohk Gwóngdungwá nàahngwo hohk Yíngmàhn. |
| 10. Kéuih gòudī. /kéuih bàhbā/ | 10. Kéuih gòugwo kéuih bàhbā. |

5. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Néih géi gòu a?
+ /ngh <u>chek</u> gáu/
<u>chek</u> =
<u>foot, feet (long)</u> | T: How tall are you? /five foot nine/ |
| S: Ngóh ngh <u>chek</u> gáu gòu. | S: I'm five foot nine. (<u>or</u> five-nine) |
| 1. Ní jek gāi géi chúhng a?
/sàam gàn/ | 1. Ní jek gāi sàam gàn chúhng. |
| 2. Gó tìuh yú géi chúhng a?
/(yāt) gàn géi/ | 2. Gó tìuh yú (yāt) gàn géi chúhng. |
| 3. Ní dī bou géi chéuhng a?
/sàam máh bun/ | 3. Ní dī bou sàam máh bun chéuhng.
This cloth is three and a half yards long. |
| + 4. Néih go jái géi daaih a?
(<u>géi daaih</u> = (<u>in reference to age</u>) <u>how old?</u>)
<u>How old</u> is your son?
/17 <u>seui</u> / | 4. Ngóh go jái sahphāt seui.
My son is 17 years old. |
| + (<u>seui</u> = <u>years (of age)</u>) | |
| 5. Kéuih go néui géi daaih a?
/yahsei seui/ | 5. Kéuih go néui yahsei seui. |
| 6. Néih pàhngyáuh géi daaih a?
/sàamsahp seui/ | 6. Ngóh pàhngyáuh sàamsahp seui. |
| 7. Néih taaitái géi daaih a?
/yahyāt seui/ | 7. Ngóh taaitái yahyāt seui. |
| 8. Ní jèung tói géi chéuhng a?
/luhk chek/ | 8. Ní jèung tói luhk chek chéuhng.
This table is six feet long. |
| + 9. Ní dī faaijī géi chéuhng a?
/sahp <u>chyun</u> / | 9. Ní dī faaijī sahph chyun chéuhng. |

(chyun = inch)

These chopsticks are 10
inches long.How long are these chopsticks?
/10 inches/a. Repeat, expanding with yáuh, thus:T: Néih yáuh géi gòu a?
/ngh chek gáu/How tall are you?
/five foot nine/S: Ngóh yáuh ngh chek
gáu gòu.I am five foot nine inches
tall.

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ní jek gāi chúngh
yāt gān. /gó jek/T: This chicken is one catty
heavier.S: Ní jek gāi chúnghgwo
gó jek yāt gān.S: This chicken is one catty
heavier than that one.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Hèunggóng tinhei hóu sèsiu.
/wáhsíhngdeuhn/ | 1. Hèunggóng tinhei hóugwo
Wáhsíhngdeuhn sèsiu. |
| 2. Ngóh go jái gòu yāt chyun.
/néih go/
My son is one inch taller.
/yours/ | 2. Ngóh go jái gòugwo néih go
yāt chyun. |
| 3. Ní jūng yīnjái gwai yāt hòuh-
jī. /go jūng/ | 3. Ní jūng yīnjái gwaigwo gó
jūng yāt hòuhjī. |
| 4. Yahtbun faaijī dyún sèsiu.
/Jūnggwok ge/ | 4. Yahtbún faaijī dyungwo
Jūnggwok sèsiu. |
| 5. Gó jèung tóit chéuhng sàam chek.
/ní jèung/ | 5. Gó jèung tóit chéuhnggwo ní
jèung sàam chek. |
| 6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēk hóudò.
/ngóh ge/ | 6. Kéuih ge jáinéui lēkgwo
ngóh ge hóudò. |
| 7. Ní jek dip daaih sèsiu.
/gó jek/ | 7. Ní jek dip daaihgwó gó
jek sèsiu. |
| 8. Ní jèung tóit dyún léuhngsàam
chyun. /gó jèung/ | 8. Ní jèung tóit dyungwo gó
jèung léuhngsàam chyun. |
| 9. Gó jèung yī chúngh géi bohng.
/ní jèung/ | 9. Gó jèung yī chúnghgwo ní
jèung géi bohng. |
| 10. Hèunggóng yiht sèsiu. | 10. Hèunggóng yihtgwo Tòihwāan |
| 11. Hèimohng tīngyaht léuhng
hóudò. /gāmyaht/ | 11. Hèimohng tīngyaht léuhnggwo
gāmyaht hóudò. |
| 12. Ní go jūng daaih sèsiu.
/gó go/ | 12. Ní go jūng daaihgwó gó go
sèsiu. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaih móuh-géidò. /ngóh gàan/
 14. Kéuih daaih yāt seui.
 He is one year older.
 /ngóh/
 + 15. Hòh Táai <u>sai</u> yāt seui.
 /Hòh Sàang/
 Mrs. Ho is one year <u>younger</u>.</p> | <p>13. Hòh Táai gàan ngūk daaihgwò ngóh gàan móuhgéidò.
 14. Kéuih daaihgwò ngóh yāt seui.
 He is one year older than I.
 15. Hòh Táai saigwò Hòh Sàang yāt seui.
 Mrs. Ho is one year younger than Mr. Ho.</p> |
|--|---|

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: NĪ dī yĭnjái móuh gam hóusihk.
 /gó dī/

T: These cigarettes are not as good.

S: NĪ dī yĭnjái móuh go dī gam hóusihk.

S: These cigarettes are not as good as those.

1. Bāsí móuh gam faai. /dĭksĭ/

1. Bāsí móuh dĭksĭ gam faai.

2. NĪ deui hàaih móuh gam hóutái.
 /gó deui/

2. NĪ deui hàaih móuh gó deui gam hóutái.

3. Yihttĭn móuh gam sāp.
 /láahngtĭn/

3. Yihtĭn móuh láahngtĭn gam sāp.

4. NĪ ga chē móuh gam leng.
 /néih gē/

4. NĪ ga chē móuh néih ga gam leng.

5. Kéuih go jái móuh gam gòu.
 /ngóh go/

5. Kéuih go jái móuh ngóh go gam gòu.

6. NĪ jek dĭp móuh gam daaih.
 /gó jek/

6. NĪ jek dĭp móuh gó jek gam daaih.

7. Gàmyaht móuh gam yiht.
 /kàhmyaht/

7. Gàmyaht móuh kàhmyaht gam yiht.

8. Daap syùhn móuh gam gwai.
 /fēigēi/

8. Daap syùhn móuh fēigēi gam gwai.

8. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih gòugwò ngóh yāt chyun.

T: He is one inch taller than I.

S: Kéuih gòu yāt chyun.

S: He is one inch taller.

1. Néih chúhnggwò kéuih ngh bohng.
 You weigh 5 pounds more than he does.

1. Néih chúhng ngh bohng.
 You weigh five pounds more.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 2. Gàm̄yaht dunggwo kàhmyaht hóudò. | 2. Gàm̄yaht dung hóudò. |
| 3. Ní jèung ch̀euhnggwo gó jèung léuhng chek. | 3. Ní jèung ch̀euhng léuhng chek. |
| 4. Ní gihn gwaigwo gó gihn sàam man. | 4. Ní gihn gwai sàam mán. |
| 5. Ngóh t̄uh p̀ehnggwo néih t̄uh luhk mán. | 5. Ngóh t̄uh p̀ehng luhk mán. |
| 6. Kéuih bá dyúngwo néih bá bun chyun. | 6. Kéuih bá dyún bun chyun. |
| 7. Yahtbún láahngt̄in dunggwo H̀eunggóng hóudò. | 7. Yahtbún láahngt̄in dung hóudò. |
| 8. Kéuih go jái lēkgwo ngóh go hóudò. | 8. Kéuih go jái lēk hóudò. |

9. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ní go bíu t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng.
/gwai/

T: This watch is the same as that one.

S: Ní go bíu t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng gam gwai.

S: This watch is as expensive as that one. or
This one and that one are both equally expensive.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Gàm̄yaht t̀uhng kàhmyaht yátyeuhng. /yiht/ | 1. Gàm̄yaht t̀uhng kàhmyaht yátyeuhng gam yiht. |
| 2. Sàamyuht t̀uhng Seiyuht yátyeuhng. /sáp/ | 2. Sàamyuht t̀uhng Seiyuht yátyeuhng gam sáp. |
| 3. Ngóh bàhbā t̀uhng m̀ahmā yátyeuhng. /daaih/ | 3. Ngóh bàhbā t̀uhng m̀ahmā yátyeuhng gam daaih. |
| 4. Gwóngd̀ung choi t̀uhng Seuhng hói choi yátyeuhng. /hóu sikh/ | 4. Gwóngd̀ung choi t̀uhng Seuhng hói choi yátyeuhng gam hóu sikh. |
| 5. Kéuih t̀uhng ngóh yátyeuhng. /gòu/ | 5. Kéuih t̀uhng ngóh yátyeuhng gam gòu. |
| 6. Duhk syù t̀uhng jough sih yátyeuhng. /yáuh cheuimeih/ | 6. Duhk syù t̀uhng jough sih yátyeuhng gam yáuh cheuimeih. |
| 7. Cháau m̄ihn t̀uhng t̀ong m̄ihn yátyeuhng. /p̀ehng/ | 7. Cháau m̄ihn t̀uhng t̀ong m̄ihn yátyeuhng gam p̀ehng. |
| 8. Ní go j̄ung t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng. /j̄eun/ | 8. Ní go j̄ung t̀uhng gó go yátyeuhng gam j̄eun. |

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Jùngchoi t̀hng Sāi- T: Chinese food and Western food
 chāan yātyeuhng gam are equally expensive.
 gwai.

S: Jùngchoi gwai m̀h- S: Is Chinese food more expensive
 gwaigwo Saichāan a? than Western food?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cháang t̀hng p̀hnggwó yā-
yeuhng gam p̀hng. | 1. Cháang p̀hng m̀hp̀hnggwó
p̀hnggwó a? |
| 2. Ní deui t̀hng gó deui yā-
yeuhng gam daaih. | 2. Ní deui daaih m̀hdaaih-
gó deui a? |
| 3. Ngóh jyuh ge deihfōng t̀hng
Tòihwāan yātyeuhng gam yiht. | 3. Néih jyuh ge deihfōng yiht
m̀hyihtgwo Tòihwāan a? |
| 4. Dī bējáu t̀hng heiséui yātyeuhng
gam dung. | 4. Dī bējáu dung m̀hdunggwó
heiséui a? |
| 5. Yahtbún tinhei t̀hng Tòihwāan
ge yātyeuhng gam hóu. | 5. Yahtbún tinhei hóu m̀hhóugwo
Tòihwāan ge a? |
| 6. Ngóh gāan ūk t̀hng Hòh Táai
ge yātyeuhng gam sai. | 6. Ngóh gāan ūk sai m̀hsaigwo
Hòh Táai ge a? |
| 7. Gwóngd̀ngwá t̀hng Gwokýuh
yātyeuhng gam <u>nāahnhoik</u> .
(difficult to learn) | 7. Gwóngd̀ngwá nāahn m̀hnāahn-
hohkgwo Gwokýuh a?
Is Cantonese more dif-
ficult to learn than
Mandarin? |
| 8. Tòihwāan tinhei t̀hng Yahtbún ge
yātyeuhng gam sāp. | 8. Tòihwāan tinhei sāp m̀hsāp-
gwo Yahtbún ge a? |

a. Repeat, students responding with haih m̀hhaih question, thus:

T: Jùngchoi t̀hng
Saichāan yā-
yeuhng gam gwai.

Chinese food and Western
food are both equally
expensive.

S: Jùngchoi t̀hng
Saichāan haih
m̀hhaih yātyeuhng
gam gwai a?

Are Chinese food and Western
food equally expensive?

11. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from Negative to choice-type question.

Ex: T: Ní dī móuh gó dī gam T: This isn't as big as that.
 daaih.

S: Ní dī yáuh móuh gó dī S: Is this as big as that?
 gam daaih a?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tòihwāan móuh nīdouh gam yiht. | 1. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nīdouh gam yiht a? |
| 2. Nī deui móuh gó deui gam fut. | 2. Nī deui yáuh móuh gó deui gam fut a? |
| 3. Nī gihn móuh gó gihn gam jaak. | 3. Nī gihn yáuh móuh gó gihn gam jaak a? |
| 4. Hèunggóng tinhei móuh Yínggwok gam dung. | 4. Hèunggóng tinhei yáuh móuh Yínggwok gam dung a? |
| 5. Yātyuht móuh yihyuht gam dung. | 5. Yātyuht yáuh móuh Yihyuht gam dung a? |
| 6. Hèunggóng ge yihttīn móuh Yínggwok gam lèuhng. | 6. Hèunggóng ge yihttīn yáuh móuh Yínggwok gam lèuhng a? |

12. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Méihgwok tinhei hóu dung. /Yínggwok/ | T: In America the weather is very cold. /England/ |
| S1: Yínggwok tinhei juhng dungdī tīm. | S1: In England the weather is even colder. |
| S2: Haih a, Yínggwok tinhei dunggwo Méihgwok. | S2: Yes, the weather in England is colder than America. |
| 1. Hèunggóng yihttīn hóu yiht. /Wàhsihngdeuhn/ | 1. A: Wàhsihngdeuhn yihttīn juhng yihtdī tīm.
B: Haih a, Wàhsihngdeuhn yihttīn yihtgwo Hèunggóng. |
| 2. Yahtbún hàaih hóu pèhng. /Daaihluhk/ | 2. A: Daaihluhk hàaih juhng pèhngdī tīm.
B: Haih a, Daaihluhk hàaih pèhnggwo Yahtbún hàaih. |
| 3. Gwokýuh hóu nàahnhoik. /Seuhnghóiwá/ | 3. A: Seuhnghóiwá juhng nàahnhoikdī tīm.
B: Haih a, Seuhnghóiwá nàahnhoikgwo Gwokýuh. |
| 4. Tòihwāan hóu sai. /Hèunggóng/ | 4. A: Hèunggóng juhng saidī tīm.
B: Haih a, Hèunggóng saigwo Tòihwāan. |
| 5. Gàmyaht tinhei hóu sāp. /kàhmyaht/ | 5. A: Kàhmyaht juhng sāpdī tīm. |

6. Hèunggong Chātyuht hóu yiht.
/Baatyuht/
- B: Haih a, kàhmyaht sǎpgwo gǎmyaht.
6. A: Baatyuht juhng yihtdī tīm.
- B: Haih a, Baatyuht yihtgwo Chātyuht.

13. Expansion Drill

- Ex: T: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek gāi. /ji leng/
T: I want two chickens. /the prettiest/
- S: Ngóh séung oi léuhng jek ji leng ge gāi.
S: I want the two of the best chickens.
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh séung oi tou gāsi.
/ji leng/ | 1. Ngóh séung oi tou ji leng ge gāsi. |
| 2. Ngóh séung oi jèung yí.
/ji leng/ | 2. Ngóh séung oi jèung ji leng ge yí. |
| 3. Ngóh séung oi sǎam jek búi.
/ji hóu/ | 3. Ngóh séung oi sǎam jek ji hóu ge búi. |
| 4. Ngóh séung oi go dáfógēi.
+ /jeui sai/
(<u>most</u> , <u>-est</u>) | 4. Ngóh séung oi go jeui sai go dáfógēi.
I want one of your smallest lighters. |
| 5. Ngóh séung oi géi go wún.
/jeui leng/ | 5. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge wún. |
| 6. Ngóh séung oi deui faaijǐ.
/jeui chéuhng/ | 6. Ngóh séung oi deui jeui chéuhng ge faaijǐ. |
| 7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek díp.
/jeui daaih/ | 7. Ngóh séung oi luhk jek jeui daaih ge díp. |
| 8. Ngóh séung oi jèung tói.
/jeui pèhng/ | 8. Ngóh séung oi jèung jeui pèhng ge tói. |
- Comment: jeui, 'most', '-est,' is interchangeable with ji.

14. Response Drill

- Ex: T: Jí daaih géidō chín a? /\$3.00/
T: How much is (or are) the biggest? (i.e., the biggest one(s))
- S: Jí daaih sǎam mǎn.
S: The biggest is (or are) three dollars.
1. Jí sai géidō chín a? /\$5.50/
1. Jí sai ñgh go bun.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 2. Ji gwai géidō chín a? /\$10/ | 2. Ji gwai sahp mán. |
| 3. Ji gòu géidō chín a? /\$21/ | 3. Ji gòu yahyāt mán. |
| 4. Ji daaih géidō chín a? /\$36/ | 4. Ji daaih sa'ahlukh mán. |
| 5. Ji leng géidō chín a? /\$25/ | 5. Ji leng yahng mán. |
| 6. Ji hóu géidō chín a? /\$33/ | 6. Ji hóu sa'ahsám mán. |
| 7. Ji pèhng géidō chín a? /\$2/ | 7. Ji pèhng léuhng mán. |
| 8. Ji chéuhng géidō chín a? /\$220/ | 8. Ji chéuhng yih baak yihshap mán. |

Comment: In a different context, #7 above can mean 'What's the cheapest (you'll sell it for)?', with the answer being 'The cheapest (I'll sell it for) is \$2.00.'

Repeat, with ge, thus:

T: Jeui daaih ge géidō chín a? /\$3.00/

How much is the biggest one (or ones)? /\$3.00/

S: Jeui daaih ge sàam mán.

The biggest one (or ones) is (or are) \$3.00.

The meaning is no different from that without -ge.

15. Transformation Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Ngóh séung oi géi go lengdī ge. | T: I want a few nice ones. <u>or</u> of the nicer ones. |
| S: Béi géi go lengdī ge ngóh lā. | S: Give me a few nice ones. <u>or</u> of the nicer ones. |
| 2. T: Ngóh séung oi géi gihn jeui leng ge. | T: I want a few of the nicest ones. |
| S: Béi géi gihn jeui leng ge ngóh lā. | S: Give me a few of the nicest ones. |
| 1. Ngóh séung oi jèung hóudī ge. | 1. Béi jèung hóudī ge ngóh lā. |
| 2. Ngóh séung oi léuhng gàn lengdī ge. | 2. Béi léuhng gàn lengdī ge ngóh lā. |
| 3. Ngóh séung oi lukh jek daaih-dī ge. | 3. Béi lukh jek daaih-dī ge ngóh lā. |
| 4. Ngóh séung oi géi go jeui leng ge. | 4. Béi géi go jeui leng ge ngóh lā. |
| 5. Ngóh séung oi ga jeui pèhng ge. | 5. Béi ga jeui pèhng ge ngóh lā. |
| 6. Ngóh séung oi sàam gihn jeui sai ge. | 6. Béi sàam gihn jeui sai ge ngóh lā. |

7. Ngóh séung oi bùi dungdī ge. 7. Béi bùi dungdī ge ngóh lā.
 8. Ngóh séung oi wún jeui yiht ge. 8. Béi wún jeui yiht ge ngóh lā.

Comment: Note that the comparative -dī is used in the example sentence above, and in the problem sentences that follow. In the idiomatic English equivalents the comparative is not required. This use of the comparative parallels that in the following sentence, which you have encountered before:

Ngóh go bíu faaidī. My watch is fast.
 [my watch faster
 (than it should be.)]

16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kàhmyaht m̀hdung.

T: It was not cold yesterday.

S: Kàhmyaht dung
 m̀hdung a?

S: Was it cold yesterday?

- | | |
|--|--|
| + 1. Ní tou gāsi m̀hhóutái.
This set of furniture is
<u>ugly</u> .
(hóutái =
<u>nice-looking, pretty</u>)
(not said in reference to
people) | 1. Ní tou gāsi hóu m̀hhóutái a?
Is this set of furniture
nice-looking? |
| 2. Gàmyaht m̀hdung. | 2. Gàmyaht dung m̀hdung a? |
| 3. Ngóh jèung tóí m̀hhaih hóu
gwai jē. | 3. Néih jèung tóí gwai m̀hgwai
a? |
| 4. Gó gāan ūk m̀hhaih hóu daaih jē. | 4. Gó gāan ūk daaih m̀hdaaih a? |
| 5. Kéuih ge sànséui m̀hhaih géi
gòu. | 5. Kéuih ge sànséui gòu m̀hgòu
a? |
| 6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu m̀hpèhng ga. | 6. Hèunggóng ūkjōu pèhng m̀h-
pèhng a? |
| 7. Ngóh go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhn-
gùng m̀hhaih hóu gwai. | 7. Néih go gùngyàhn (ge) yàhn-
gùng gwai m̀hgwai a? |
| 8. Kéuih go jái m̀hhaih géi lēk. | 8. Kéuih go jái lēk m̀hlēk a? |

17. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yahtyaht dōu
chēut gāai sihk
faahn ge.
/sihsih dōu/

T: I eat out everyday. /always/

S: Ngóh sihsih dōu
chēut gāai sihk
faahn ge.

S: I always eat out.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh sihsih dōu chēut gāai
sihk faahn ge.
+ /hóudòsìh dōu/
(very often) | 1. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut
gāai sihk faahn ge.
I eat out a lot. [I eat
out every often.] |
| 2. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu chēut gāai
sihk faahn ge. /yáuhshìh/
+ (sometimes) | 2. Ngóh yáuhshìh chēut gāai
sihk faahn ge.
Sometimes I eat out. |
| 3. Ngóh yáuhshìh chēut gāai sihk
faahn ge. /hóusíu/
+ (rarely, seldom) | 3. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk
faahn ge.
I don't eat out much. [I
seldom eat out.] |
| 4. Ngóh hóusíu chēut gāai sihk
faahn ge. /yahtyaht dōu/ | 4. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu chēut gāai
sihk faahn ge. |
| 5. Ngóh yahtyaht dōu tái dihnsih
ge. /hóusíu/ | 5. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge. |
| 6. Ngóh hóusíu tái dihnsih ge.
/yáuhshìh/ | 6. Ngóh yáuhshìh tái dihnsih ge. |
| 7. Ngóh yáuhshìh tái dihnsih ge.
/hóudò sih dōu/ | 7. Ngóh hóudò sih dōu tái
dihnsih ge. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) hói t̄an = seaside
- 2) Chín Séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]
- 3) Chín séui Wāan = Repulse Bay
- 4) Chín séui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on
the South shore of Hong Kong island.
- 5) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the south-
eastern tip of Hong Kong island.
- 6) taai = too
- 7) fòngbìhn = convenient

- 8) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.
- 9) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'
- 10) sèhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years
- 11) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'
- 12) yáuh chín = rich, wealthy
- 13) Wáh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. My it's hot today! 2. Hong Kong is hotter than the U.S. 3. I think Washington is a bit hotter. 4. How old is your father? 5. My elder brother is 6 feet tall, but I'm just 5 foot 10. 6. Her son isn't as smart at Mrs. Lee's. 7. Is that new table you bought very heavy? 8. We often go out to have tea on Sundays. 9. Which do you think is easier--Mandarin or Cantonese? 10. How much does the biggest one cost? 11. Please give me a dozen of your nicest oranges. 12. This shirt is \$1.00 cheaper. | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Yes, it's hotter then yesterday. 2. In August Hong Kong and Washington are both equally hot. 3. I like hot weather, I don't like cold weather. 4. He's 55 years old. He's three years older than my mother. 5. How tall is your father? 6. Is her daughter smart? 7. Not as heavy as our old one. 8. My husband has to work on Sundays, so we rarely go out on Sunday. 9. I think Mandarin is easier than Cantonese. 10. The biggest is \$20.00 11. I'm sorry, we're all sold out. 12. OK, give me the cheaper one. |
|---|---|

- | | |
|---|--|
| 13. Is Cantonese hard to learn? | 13. It's comparatively hard, but it's very interesting. |
| 14. These trousers are an inch longer than these. | 14. Give me the shorter ones. |
| 15. These trousers aren't as wide as those. | 15. These are even narrower. |
| 16. Are these cigarettes the long kind? | 16. No, those are the short kind. Do you want the long kind? |

 Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 21

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. béi | bf: in comparison |
| 2. béigaau | adv: in comparison, comparatively |
| 3. chàmhō | Ph: more or less, approximately |
| 4. chek | m: foot (measurement) |
| 5. chúhng | adj: heavy |
| 6. chyun | m: inch |
| 7. daaih | adj: in ref. to age: years of age 'old' in How old are you, I am older than he. |
| 8. <u>X</u> dím? | QW: How about <u>X</u> ?, What's <u>X</u> like? |
| 9. dung | adj: cold |
| 10. géi daaih? | Ph: how old (as in 'How old are you?') |
| 11. géi chúhng? | Ph: how heavy? |
| 12. gokdāk | v: feel, consider, realize |
| 13. gòu | adj: tall |
| 14.-gwo, in <u>Adj-gwo</u> | bf: [exceed, surpass] used to form the comparative: more <u>Adj</u> than, <u>Adj</u> -er than |
| 15. hóudòsìh | advPh: very often |
| 16. hóusiú | advPh: rarely, seldom |
| 17. hóutái | adj: nice-looking, pretty |
| 18. jeui | bf: most..., exceedingly... |
| 19. ji | bf: (superlative) most..., exceedingly... |
| 20. juhng | adv: even |
| 21. juhng... <u>Adj</u> -dí | Ph: even more <u>Adj</u> . |
| 22. láahngtīn | TW: winter |
| 23. lēk | adj: smart, brilliant |
| 24. lèuhng | adj: cool |

25. nàahn	adj: difficult
26. nàahnhoik	adj: difficult to learn
27. sai	adj: younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'
28. sǎp	adj: wet
29. seui	m: years of age
30. síhsih	adv: always, at all times
31. tǐnhei	n: weather
32. Tòihwānyáhn	n: Taiwanese person
33. tǔhng.Í.yǎtyeuhng	Ph: the same as.Í.
34. yáuh cheuimeih	adj: interesting
35. yáuhshih	adv: sometimes
36. yǐh	adj: easy
37. yíht	adj: hot
38. yíhttǐn	TW: summer

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Miss Jones, a young foreigner employed as secretary in Hong Kong, is talking to her friend, Miss Lee, a young Cantonese employed in the same office:)

Jüנגgwokyähñ

góngdāk géi hóu	Speak quite well
Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá yihgā	Say! Your Cantonese is pretty
góngdāk géi hóu bo.	good now.

Ngoihwokyähñ

gwojéung	'You praise me too much.'
mähmádéi	[over-speak], overdo it
	Middling, indifferent, so-
	so, just scrapes by
Gwojéung laak; mähmádái jē.	You overdo it--it just barely
	scrapes by.

leuhnjeuhn	clumsy, awkward, stupid
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	I speak very stupidly.

Jüנגgwokyähñ

kínggái	have a chat
tùhng néih kínggái	chat with you
ngāamngāam (āamāam)	just, only a moment ago
héisáu	begin [lift-hand]
ngāamngāam héisáu	just begun
jih	written word, written
	figure, Chinese character
sé jih	to write [words]
héisáu hohk sé jih	begin learning to write
Ngóh daihyātchi tùhng néih kíng-	The first time I talked with
gái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu	you, you had just begun to
hohk sé jih, haih mnhaih nē?	learn Chinese characters,
	isn't that right?

Ngoihwokyähñ

sailóu	younger brother
Haih. Ngóh tùhng ngóh sailóu	That's right. My younger
léuhng go yātcháh hohk.	brother and I are studying

together.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Hohkdāk dīm a?

How are you doing?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

yáih

terrible, awful

Sédāk hóu yáih.

My writing is awful.

ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho

my younger brother writes

pretty well

ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam

I don't write as well as

leng

he

Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hcho, daahnhaih

My younger brother writes pretty

ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih gam leng.

well, but I don't write as

well as he.

Jùnggwokyàhn(seeing some Chinese characters written
on a piece of scratch paper on the desk:)

Ní dī jih haih m̀hhaih néih

These characters, are they ones

sé ga?

that you wrote?

Ngoihgwokyàhn

Móuh cho.

That's right.

Jùnggwokyàhn

Sédāk m̀hcho ā.

They're written quite well.

Hohkdāk géi faai bo.

You learn fast!

Ngoihgwokyàhn

S̀insàang hóu jē.

It's just that the teacher is
good.

A! Ngóh t̀engginwah néih jyú

Oh--I hear that you cook Chinese
food very well.

J̀ungchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.

learn from you [follow you
learn]

gàn néih hohk

Ngóh hóu séung gàn néih hohkháh.

I'd like very much to learn
from you.Jùnggwokyàhn

Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh m̀hdāk ge.

You praise me too much, I'm
no good.

Ngoihgwokyáhn

taai	too, excessively
hím	humble
Néih taai hím laak.	You're too modest.

B. Recapitulation:Jünggwokyáhn

Néih ge Gwóngdúngwá yíngā	Say! Your Cantonese is pretty
góngdāk géi hóu bo.	good now.

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Gwojéung laak; mǎhmádeí jē.	You overdo it--it barely scrapes
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.	by. I speak very stupidly.

Jünggwokyáhn

Ngóh daihyātchi túhng néih kǐng-	The first time I talked with you,
gái, néih ngāamngāam héisáu	you had just begun to learn
hohk sé jih, haih mǎhhaíh nē?	Chinese characters, isn't
	that right?

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Haih. Ngóh túhng ngóh sailóu	That's right. My younger brother
léuhng go yātchǎih hohk.	and I are studying together.

Jünggwokyáhn

Hohkdāk díng a?	How are you doing?
-----------------	--------------------

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Sédāk hóu yáih.	My writing is awful.
Ngóh sailóu sédāk mǎhcho, daahn-	My younger brother writes pretty
haih ngóh sédāk móuh kéuih	well, but I don't write as
gam leng.	well as he.

Jünggwokyáhn

Ní dí jih haih mǎhhaíh néih sé ga?	These characters, are they
	ones that you wrote?

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Móuh cho.	That's right.
-----------	---------------

Jünggwokyáhn

Sédāk mǎhcho ā.	They're written quite well.
Hohkdāk géi faai bo.	You learn fast!

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Sínsàang hóu jē.

It's just that the teacher is good.

A! Ngóh tèngginwah néih jyú
Jùngchoi jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.

Oh--I hear that the Chinese food you cook is delicious.

Ngóh hóu séung gàn néih hohkháh.

I'd like very much to study with you.

Jùnggwokyáhn

Néih gwojéung jē, ngóh àhdāk ge.

You praise me too much, I'm no good.

Ngoihgwokyáhn

Néih taai him laak!

You're too modest!

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

Siblings.

Brothers and sisters in Cantonese are specified according to their age in relation to oneself.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| Ex: 1. agō | elder brother |
| 2. gājē | elder sister |
| 3. sailóu | younger brother |
| 4. saimúi | younger sister, (also: <u>múi</u> , <u>amúi</u>) |

There is no word for 'brother' referring to one person, or 'sister' referring to one person, though there is a collective noun for 'brothers': hìngdaih, 'elder and younger brothers,' and one for 'sisters': jímuih, 'elder and younger sisters'.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. Néih yáuh móuh hìngdaih a? | Do you have any brothers?
[elder and younger brothers] |
| 2. Néih yáuh móuh jímuih a? | Do you have any sisters?
[elder and younger sisters] |
| 3. Néih ūkkéi yáuh géidō
hìngdaih jímuih a? | How many brothers and sisters
are there in your family?
[at your house] |

3) dím?, 'how?' can substitute in the adjective position in this pattern.

Ex: V-dāk díng a? How is it/was it V-ed?, How does subject V?

1. Kéuih hàahngdāk díng a? How does he walk? What is the manner in which he walks?
2. Dī béng jingdāk díng a? How did the cookies turn out? How did the cookie-making go?

(See Drill 3)

4) Subject patterns in V-dāk hóu Adj sentences

a) Loose relationship of Subject and Predicate.

In keeping with the loose relationship of subject and predicate in Chinese sentences, (see Note 6, Lesson 3), the Subject of a V-dāk hóu Adj sentence can be the performer of verb, or the thing performed upon, without any change in the verb form.

Example:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	She made it in such a way that it fits very well.
2. Gihn sām	jouhdāk hóu ngāamjeuk.	The dress is made in such a way that it fits very well.

In English the two types of subject (performer and performed upon) require the active and passive voice of the verb respectively, but in Chinese note that the same verb form is used whether the subject is the performer of the action (Kéuih above), or the object performed upon (Gihn sām above).

b) Subject types for Verb-dāk hóu Adjective sentences

In addition to performer and performed-upon discussed above, a third subject type is the SVC subject. Examples of the three types are:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	} jyúdāk hóu hóusihk.	She made it in such a way that it is very tasty.
2. Dī chòi		The food has been cooked so it is very tasty.
3. Kéuih jyú Jùngchòi		He cooks Chinese food in such a way that it is very tasty.

(See Drill 8)

5) Contracted form with SVO subject

Some SVO, Vdāk hóu Adjective types permit omission of the V-dāk portion, leaving the SVO subject to precede the predicate Adjective portion directly.

Compare:

1. Kéuih jā chē jādāk hóu faai. He drives fast.
2. Kéuih jā chē hóu faai. He drives fast.

(See Drill 11)

b. hóu Adj. + Verb = Verb in such and such a way

- 1) hóu Adj + V expresses how, in what manner, a V is or was done. Note that the Verb does not use dāk. Only a few adjectives use this pattern. One of them, for example, is kàhnlihk, 'industrious.'

Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù. He studies very industriously.
or, He is very industrious
 'in his studies.'

(See Drill 15)

- 2) The hóu Adj V pattern can be rephrased with the V transposed to the center of an SVO subject, and the hóu Adj by itself forming the predicate.

Compare:

Subject	Predicate	
1. Kéuih	hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.	He is very industrious in his studies.
2. Kéuih duhk syù	hóu kàhnlihk.	(The way) he studies is very industrious.

2. Verbal comparison forms: $A \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Vs} \\ \text{Ved} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{not as} \\ \text{equally} \end{array} \right\} \text{Adj in relation to } B$

a. V more Adj than

- 1) A V-dāk Adj-gwo B. A Vs/Ved more Adj than B
 does/did.

(See BC and Drill 12)

- 2) A V-dāk béi B Adj. A Vs/Ved more Adj than B
 (See Drill 12.a) does/did.

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh bàh**bā** ge Yíng-màhn hóu jéun.
/màhmā/
T: My father's English is very good. [accurate in pronunciation] /mother/

S: Ngóh màhmā ge Yíng-màhn hóu jéun.
S: My mother's English is very good.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh saimú í ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.
/gājē/ | 1. Ngóh gājē ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.
My elder sister's English is very good. |
| 2. Ngóh gājē ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /agō/ | 2. Ngóh agō ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.
My elder brother's English is very good. |
| 3. Ngóh agō ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /sailóu/ | 3. Ngóh sailóu ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.
My <u>younger</u> brother's English is very good. |
| 4. Ngóh sailóu ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun. /go múi/ | 4. Ngóh go múi ge Yíngmàhn hóu jéun.
My <u>younger</u> sister's English is very good. |
| 5. Ngóh go múi ge Yíngmán hóu jéun. /gùngyàhn/ | 5. Ngóh gùngyàhn ge Yíngmán hóu jéun. |

Comment: múi and saimúi both mean 'younger sister' and are interchangeable. However, as noun head in a possessive NP, saimúi can follow the possessive pronoun directly, and múi requires either the Measure go (or dí), or the subordinating ge between possessive pronoun and noun head.

Ex: Ngóh (go) saimúi (preferred without go)
ngóh go múi (go or ge required)

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē sэдāk hóu chingchó.
T: My elder sister writes very clearly.
S: Ngóh gājē sэдāk m̀h-haih géi chingchó.
S: My elder sister doesn't write clearly, or writes unclearly.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk hóu lēk.
My younger brother is clever in his studies. | 1. Ngóh sailóu hohkdāk m̀hhaih géi lēk. |
|---|---|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk hóu leng. | 2. Ngóh sailóu sédāk m̀hhaih géi leng. |
| + 3. Ngóh agō góngdāk hóu <u>lauhleih</u> .
My elder brother speaks <u>fluently</u> . | 3. Ngóh agō góngdāk m̀hhaih géi lauhleih. |
| 4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk hóu faai. | 4. Ngóh agō hàahngdāk m̀hhaih géi faai. |
| 5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jingdāk géi hóusihk. | 5. Ngóh saimúi ge béng jingdāk m̀hhaih géi hóusihk. |
| 6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk géi hóu. | 6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̀hhaih géi hóu. |
| + 7. Kéuih ga chē <u>hòidāk</u> hóu faai.
His car is <u>running</u> very fast. | 7. Kéuih ga chē hòidāk m̀hhaih géi faai.
His car doesn't drive very fast. |
| +++ 8. <u>Chisó lauhdāk</u> hóu <u>gányiu</u> .
The <u>toilet</u> is <u>leaking</u> quite <u>seriously</u> .
chisó = <u>toilet</u>

lauh- = to <u>leak</u>

gányiu = <u>serious, important</u> | 8. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih géi gányiu.
The toilet isn't leaking very badly. |

3. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Agō sédāk dím a?
/hóu yáih bo/ | T: How's elder brother's writing? |
| S: Agō sédāk hóu yáih bo. | S: Elder brother's writing is awful. |
| + 1. <u>Séuihàuh</u> lauhdāk dím a?
/hóu gányiu bo/
How's the leak in the <u>water-pipes</u> ? | 1. Séuihàuh lauhdāk hóu gányiu bo. |
| 2. Ngóh saimúi hohkdāk dím a?
/m̀hcho ā/ | 2. Néih saimúi hohkdāk m̀hcho ā. |
| 3. Chisó lauhdāk dím a?
/m̀hhaih hóu gányiu jē/ | 3. Chisó lauhdāk m̀hhaih hóu gányiu. |
| 4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk dím a?
/hóu lauhleih bo/ | 4. Kéuih sailóu góngdāk hóu lauhleih bo. |
| 5. Agō jouhdāk dím a? /m̀hmadéi jē/ | 5. Agō jouhdāk m̀hmadéi jē. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. Gājē jādāk dīm a?
/hóu leuhnjeuhn ga/ | 6. Gājē 佢 咁 快 後 佢 游 得 好 快 嘅。 |
| 7. Kéuih yàuhdāk dīm a?
/hóu lēk ga/
How does he swim? <u>or</u>
How's his swimming? | 7. Kéuih yàuhdāk hóu lēk ga.
He swims very well. <u>or</u>
He's clever at swimming. |
| 8. Kéuih góngdāk dīm a?
+ /hóu <u>saisèng</u> ga/
How does he speak?
/very <u>softly</u> /
<u>saisèng</u> =
<u>small-sound; in a small voice</u> | 8. Kéuih góngdāk hóu saisèng ga.
He speaks very softly. <u>or</u>
He speaks in a low (i.e.,
not loud) voice. |
| 9. Kéuih sédāk dīm a?
/béigaau chingchó/ | 9. Kéuih sédāk béigaau ching-
chó. |

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih góngdāk hóu T: He speaks fluently.
lauhleih. /Yingmahn/

S: Kéuih góng Yingmahn S: He speaks English fluently.
góngdāk hóu lauh-
leih.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih hàahngdāk hóu maahn.
/louh/ | 1. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk
hóu maahn. |
| 2. Kéuih táidāk hóu faai. /syù/ | 2. Kéuih tái syù táidāk hóu
faai. |
| 3. Kéuih yuhngdāk hóudò. /chín/ | 3. Kéuih yuhng chín yuhngdāk
hóudò. |
| 4. Kéuih góngdāk hóu chingchò.
/Gwokýuh/ | 4. Kéuih góng Gwokýuh góngdāk
hóu chingchó. |
| 5. Kéuih dádāk mhcho. /páai/ | 5. Kéuih dá páai dádāk mhcho. |
| 6. Kéuih hohkdāk hóu lēk.
/yàuhséui/ | 6. Kéuih hohk yàuhséui hohkdāk
hóu lēk. |
| 7. Kéuih jeukdāk hóu leng.
/sāam/ | 7. Kéuih jeuk sāam jeukdāk
hóu leng. |

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jingdāk hōu
hōusihk. /béng/

S: Kéuih ge béng jing-
dāk hōu hōusihk.

T: She bakes well. [She bakes
tasty.] /cakes/

S: Her cakes are very tasty.
[Her cakes baked very tasty.]

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih sédāk hōu chingchó.
/jih/
She writes clearly. | 1. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hōu ching-
chó.
Her handwriting is quite
clear. |
| 2. Kéuih góngdāk hōu làuhleih.
/Gwóngdùngwá/ | 2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk
hōu làuhleih. |
| 3. Kéuih dádāk m̀hcho. /bō/ | 3. Kéuih ge bō dádāk m̀hcho. |
| 4. Kéuih góngdāk hōu jéun.
/Yingmahn/ | 4. Kéuih ge Yingmahn góngdāk
hōu jéun. |
| 5. Kéuih maaihdk hōu pèhng.
/yéh/ | 5. Kéuih ge yéh maaihdk hōu
pèhng. |
| 6. Kéuih jouhdāk hōu ngāamjeuk.
/saam/ | 6. Kéuih ge saam jouhdāk hōu
ngāamjeuk. |
| 7. Kéuih jyúdāk hōu hōu. /yéh/ | 7. Kéuih ge yéh jyúdāk hōu hōu. |
| 8. Kéuih góngdāk béigaau hōu.
/Yingmán/ | 8. Kéuih ge Yingmán góngdāk
béigaau hōu. |

6. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh gājē ge béng
jingdāk hōu hōu.
/m̀ui/

S: Ngóh gājē ge béng
jingdāk hōu hōu,
ngóh go m̀ui dōu
jingdāk hōu hōu.

T: My elder sister makes good
cakes. [My elder sister's
cakes are made very well.]

S: My elder sister makes good
cakes, and so does my younger
sister.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̀hcho.
/sailóu/
My elder brother plays ball
well. | 1. Ngóh agō ge bō dádāk m̀hcho,
ngóh go sailóu dōu dá-
dāk m̀hcho. |
| 2. Ngóh gājē júngyi dá páai.
/saimui/ | 2. Ngóh gājē júngyi dá páai,
ngóh saimui dōu júngyi dá. |
| 3. Ngóh m̀ahmā séung heui Yahtbún.
/néui/ | 3. Ngóh m̀ahmā séung heui Yaht-
bún, ngóh go néui dōu
séung heui. |
| 4. Ngóh bàhbā júngyi tái dihnsih.
/jái/ | 4. Ngóh bàhbā júngyi tái dihn-
sih, ngóh go jái dōu |

5. Ngòh gājē séung hohk yàuhséui. /múi/ 5. Ngòh gājē séung hohk yàuh-séui, ngòh go múi dòu séung hohk.
- jùngyi tái.

7. Transformation Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih ge bēng jǐngdāk hóu hóusihk. /negative/
S: Kéuih ge bēng jǐngdāk m̀h̄hah̄h gēi hóusihk.
2. T: Kéuih ge bēng jǐngdāk hóu hóusihk. /question/
S: Kéuih ge bēng jǐngdāk hóu m̀h̄housihk a?
1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góng-dāk hóu hóu. /negative/
2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai. /question/
3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng. /negative/
4. Kéuih dī gafē jǐngdāk hóu hóuyám. /question/
5. Ní ga bāfí hòidāk hóu faai. /negative/
6. Go chisó lauhdāk hóu gányiu. /question/
- T: Her cookies are very well made. or Her cookies are very good.
S: Her cookies aren't very well made. or Her cookies aren't very tasty.
T: Her cookies are very good.
S: Are her cookies good?
1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góng-dāk m̀h̄hah̄h gēi hóu.
2. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk faai m̀h̄hfaai a?
3. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̀h̄hah̄h gēi leng.
4. Kéuih dī gafē jǐngdāk hóu m̀h̄hóuyám a?
5. Ní ga bāfí hòidāk m̀h̄hah̄h gēi faai.
6. Go chisó lauhdāk gán m̀hgán-yiu a?

8. Transformation Drill: Transform the cue sentences into question sentences.

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sédāk
m̀hch̀ingchó.

T: Her words are not very clearly
written.

S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk
ch̀ing m̀hch̀ingchó
a?

S: Are her words clearly written?

+ 1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk hóu
saisèng.
(góng yéh =
say-things, i.e., to talk)

1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk
sai m̀hsaisèng a?

2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk hóu
lèk.

2. Kéuih yàuhséui yàuhdāk lèk
m̀hlèk a?

3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góng-
dāk hóu leuhnjeuhn.

3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá góng-
dāk leuhn m̀hleuhnjeuhn a?

4. Kéuih j̀ing ch̀aan j̀ingdāk
m̀hhóusihk.

4. Kéuih j̀ing ch̀aan j̀ingdāk
hóu m̀hhóusihk a?

5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk
hóu maahn.

5. Kéuih hàahng louh hàahngdāk
maahn m̀hmaahn a?

9. Alteration Drill: Change from an NP subject to an SVO subject.

Ex: T: Kéuih ge jih sédāk
hóu hóu.

T: His handwriting is very nice.

S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk
hóu hóu.

S: He writes a nice hand.

1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk
géi hóu.

1. Kéuih góng Gwóngdùngwá
góngdāk géi hóu.

2. Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu faai.

2. Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu
faai.

3. Kéuih ge b̀éng j̀ingdāk hóu
hóusihk.

3. Kéuih j̀ing b̀éng j̀ingdāk
hóu hóusihk.

4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk m̀hcho.

4. Kéuih sé jih sédāk m̀hcho.

5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̀hlàuh-
leih.

5. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk m̀h-
làuhleih.

6. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̀hch̀ing-
chó.

6. Kéuih góng wá góngdāk
m̀hch̀ingchó.

10. Alteration Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih jing chāan T: She cooks meals well.
 jingdāk hōu hōu.

+ S: Kéuih hōu wúih S: She's a terrific cook.
 jing chāan. [very able cook meal]
 (wúih =
 can, is able to,
 capable of...
 hōu wúih =
 does a good job
 of ...)

2. T: Kéuih ge chāan T: His meals are well prepared.
 jingdāk hōu hōu.

S: Kéuih hōu wúih S: He's a terrific cook.
 jing chāan.

1. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk
 hōu hōu.

1. Kéuih hōu wúih máaih yéh.
 She really knows how to
 buy things.
 (for example, she gets a
 good price, or she selects
 the good and leaves the
 bad, etc.)

2. Kéuih yàuh séui yàuh dāk hōu
 hōu.

2. Kéuih hōu wúih yàuh séui.

3. Kéuih ge jih sé dāk hōu hōu.

3. Kéuih hōu wúih sé jih.

4. Kéuih ge sām jouh dāk hōu hōu.

4. Kéuih hōu wúih jouh sām.

5. Kéuih ge bēng jing dāk hōu hōu.

5. Kéuih hōu wúih jing bēng.

6. Kéuih dá bō dādāk hōu hōu.

6. Kéuih hōu wúih dá bō.

7. Kéuih ge páai dādāk hōu hōu.

7. Kéuih hōu wúih dá páai.

8. Kéuih paak chē paak dāk hōu
 hōu.

8. Kéuih hōu wúih paak chē.

a. Repeat 1 - 4 as negative.

b. Repeat 5 - 8 as question.

11. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jà chē jādāk
hóu faai.

T: He drives very fast.
[He (regarding) driving a
car, drives very fast.]

S: Kéuih jà chē hóu
faai.

S: He drives very fast.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Gājē duhk syù duhkdāk hóu lēk. | 1. Gājē duhk syù hóu lēk. |
| 2. Gājē góng yéh góngdāk hóu
lauhleih. | 2. Gājē góng yéh hóu lauhleih. |
| 3. Gājē sihk faahn sihk dāk hóu
faai. | 3. Gājē sihk faahn hóu faai. |
| 4. Gājē gaau syù gaaudāk hóu
chingchó. | 4. Gājē gaau syù hóu chingchó. |
| 5. Gājē hàahng louh hàahng dāk
hóu maahn. | 5. Gājē hàahng louh hóu maahn. |
| 6. Gājē jyú yéh jyúdāk hóu hóu-
sihk. | 6. Gājē jyú yéh hóu hóu sihk. |
| 7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi jyúdāk
hóu hóu sihk. | 7. Kéuih jyú Jùngchoi hóu hóu-
sihk. |

Comment: The form without Vdāk is suitable in some cases, but not all. We give it to you here for recognition, but advise you not to make up a sentence on this pattern unless you have heard someone say it.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sédāk
hóu chingchó.

T: He writes very clearly. or
His handwriting is very clear.

S: Kéuih sé jih sédāk
chingchó gwo ngóh.

S: His handwriting is clearer
than mine. or
He writes clearer than I.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Agō góng wá góngdāk hóu
lauhleih. | 1. Agō góng wá góngdāk lauh-
leih gwo ngóh. |
| 2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk hóu
lēk. | 2. Ngóh gājē dá páai dádāk
lēk gwo ngóh. |
| 3. Mähmā máaih yéh máaih dāk hóu
pèhng. | 3. Mähmā máaih yéh máaih dāk
pèhng gwo ngóh. |
| 4. Gājē jà chē jādāk hóu maahn. | 4. Gājē jà chē jādāk maahn gwo
ngóh. |
| 5. Ngóh sailóu yàuh séui yàuh dāk
hóu faai. | 5. Ngóh sailóu yàuh séui yàuh-
dāk faai gwo ngóh. |

6. Ngòh go múi héisàn héidāk hóu jòu. 6. Ngòh go múi héisàn héidāk jòu gwo ngòh.
7. Ngòh sīnsàng yám bējáu yám-dāk hóudò.
He drinks a lot of beer. or
He is capable of drinking a lot of beer. He can drink a lot of beer.
7. Ngòh sīnsàng yám bējáu yám-dāk dò gwo ngòh.
- a. Repeat with teacher cueing as before, students responding with the following type of comparison:
- T: Kéuih séjih sédāk hóu chingchó. He writes very clearly.
- S: Kéuih séjih béi ngòh chingchó. He writes more clearly than I.
- Comment: With the béi verbal comparison, the following variations are also possible:
1. Kéuih sé jih sédāk béi ngòh chingchó. He writes more clear than I.
2. Kéuih sédāk béi ngòh chingchó. He writes more clearly than I.

13. Expansion Drill

- Ex: T: Kéuih góng yéh góng-dāk mhlauhleih. T: He doesn't speak fluently.
- S: Kéuih góng yéh góng-dāk móuh ngòh gam lauhleih. S: He doesn't speak as fluently as I.
1. Kéuih saimúí dá páai dádāk mhlék. 1. Kéuih saimúí dá páai dá dāk móuh ngòh gam lék.
2. Ngòh sailóu sé jih sédāk mhleng. 2. Ngòh sailóu sé jih sédāk móuh ngòh gam leng.
3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhkdāk mchíngchó. 3. Kéuih gājē duhk syù duhkdāk móuh ngòh gam chingchó.
4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk mhhóu.
His choice of words isn't good. 4. Kéuih agō góng yéh góngdāk móuh ngòh gam hóu.

Comment: An alternate form of the above pattern is:
A móuh B V-dāk gam Adj. A doesn't/didn't V as Adj as B.

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ge béng jing-dāk hóu hóusihk.

T: Her cookies are very good.

S: Ngóh ge béng jing-dāk tühng kéuih ge yátyeuhng gam hóusihk.

S: My cookies are as good as hers. or
My cookies are as well made as hers.

1. Kéuih ga chē hàahngdāk hóu faai.

1. Ngóh ga chē hàahngdāk tühng kéuih ga yátyeuhng gam faai.

2. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk hóu hóu.

2. Ngóh ge Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam hóu.

3. Kéuih go bíu hàahngdāk hóu jéun.
My watch runs accurately; keeps good time.

3. Ngóh go bíu hàahngdāk tühng kéuih g yátyeuhng gam jéun.

+ hàahng =
runs (of watches)

4. Kéuih ge jih sédāk hóu leng.

4. Ngóh ge jih sédāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam leng.

5. Kéuih ge Yíngmáhn góngdāk hóu láuhleih.

5. Ngóh ge Yíngmáhn góngdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam láuhleih.

6. Kéuih ge Gwokýuh hohkdāk hóu lèk.

6. Ngóh ge Gwokýuh hohkdāk tühng kéuih yátyeuhng gam lèk.

15. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu hóu.
/question/

T: He plays mahjong very well.
/question/

S: Kéuih dá páai dádāk hóu mhhóu a?

S: Does he play mahjong well?

2. T: Kéuih ge páai dádāk hóu hóu.
/negative/

T: His mahjong game is quite good. /negative/

S: Kéuih ge páai dá-dāk mhhaih géi hóu.

S: His mahjong game isn't very good.

3. T: Kéuih dá páai dádāk mhhaih

T: He doesn't play mahjong at high speed. /affirmative/

gêi faai.
/affirmative/

S: Kéuih dá páai
dádāk hōu faai.

S: He plays mahjong at high speed.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih m̄hahî gêi wúih góng
Gwokýúh. /affirmative/ | 1. Kéuih hōu wúih góng Gwokýúh. |
| 2. Kéuih ge jih sēdāk hōu leng.
/negative/ | 2. Kéuih ge jih sēdāk m̄hahî
gêi leng. |
| 3. Kéuih yāuh séui yāuhdāk hōu
faai. /question/ | 3. Kéuih yāuh séui yāuhdāk faai
m̄hfaai a? |
| 4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk
hōu pèhng. /question/ | 4. Kéuih máaih yéh máaih dāk
pèhng m̄hpèhng a? |
| 5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk m̄hahî
gêi chingchó. /affirmative/ | 5. Kéuih ge wá góngdāk hōu
chingchó. |
| 6. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk hōu
daaihsèng. /negative/ | 6. Kéuih góng yéh góngdāk
m̄hahî gêi daaihsèng. |

16. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Néih tùhng bīngō
kīnggái a?

A: Who are you chatting with?

B: Tùhng ngóh go múi.

B: With my younger sister.

A: Néihdeih kīng mē-
yéh a?

A: What are you chatting about?

B: Ngóhdeih kīngháh
heui bīndouh hohk
Yīngmāhn jē.

B: We're talking about where we
went to study English; that's
all. (or Where we are going
for studying English)

1. A.?

1. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái
a?

B.sailóu.

B. Tùhng ngóh sailóu.

A.?

A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?

B.kīngháh heui bīndouh
yāuh séui.....

B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh heui
bīndouh yāuh séui jē.

2. A.?

2. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái
a?

B.saimúi.

B. Tùhng ngóh saimúi.

A.?

A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a?

B.heui bīndouh léuih-
hāhng.....

B. Ngóhdeih kīngháh heui
bīndouh léuih hāhng jē.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 3. A.? | 3. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a? |
| B.gājē. | B. Tùhng ngòh gājē. |
| A.? | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a? |
| B.heui bīndouh tái hei.... | B. Ngòhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh tái hei jē. |
| 4. A.? | 4. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a? |
| B.agō. | B. Tùhng ngòh agō. |
| A.? | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a? |
| B.gàmyaht ge tīnhei.... | B. Ngòhdeih kīngháh gàm-yaht ge tīnhei jē. |
| 5. A.? | 5. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a? |
| B.màhmā. | B. Tùhng ngòh màhmā. |
| A.? | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a? |
| B.heui bīndouh dá páai.... | B. Ngòhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh dá páai jē. |
| 6. A.? | 6. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggái a? |
| B.bàhbā. | B. Tùhng ngòh bàhbā. |
| A.? | A. Néihdeih kīng mēyéh a? |
| B.heui bīndouh làuhhohk... | B. Ngòhdeih kīngháh heui bīndouh làuhhohk jē. |

17. Response Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Néih géisih héi-sáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /sahp seui góján, jauh/ T: When did you start learning to cook? /as early as when I was 10/
- S: Ngòh sahپ seui góján jauh héisáu hohk jyú faahn ge laak. S: When I was 10, I started to learn to cook.
2. T: Néih géisih héi-sáu hohk jyú faahn ga? /git-jófan, sínji/ T: When did you start learning to cook? /not until I got married/
- S: Ngòh gitjófan sínji héisáu hohk jyú faahn ga ja. S: When I got married, I finally started learning to cook.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Néih géisih héisáu hohk yàuh-séui ga? /duhk daaihohk góján, sínji/
 2. Néih gājē géisih héisáu hohk ja chē ga? /daaihohk bātjō yihp, jauh/
 3. Kéuih saimúi géisih héisáu jough sih ga? /sahp chāt seui góján, jauh/
 4. Kéuih agō géisih héisáu maaih syū ga? /léuhng go yuht
 + <u>jichihn</u>, sínji/
 (...<u>jichihn</u> = <u>ago</u>)
 5. Néih go jái géisih héisáu hohk hàahng louh ga? /sahp go yuht, jauh/
 6. Hèunggóng géisih héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihohk ga?
 + /gēi nìhn <u>chihn</u>, sínji.../
 (-<u>chihn</u> = <u>ago</u>)</p> | <p>1. Ngóh duhk daaihohk góján, sínji héisáu hohk yàuh-séui ga ja.
 2. Ngóh gājē daaihohk bātjō yihp jauh héisáu hohk já chē ge laak.
 3. Kéuih saimúi sah chāt seui góján, jauh héisáu jough sih ge laak.
 4. Kéuih agō léuhng go yuht jichihn sínji héisáu maaih syū ga ja.
 5. Ngóh go jái sah go yuht jauh héisáu hohk hàahng louh ge laak.
 6. Hèunggóng gēi nìhn chihn sínji héisáu yáuh Jùngmàhn Daaihohk ga ja.
 It was only several years ago that H.K. began to have Chinese University.</p> |
|--|--|

18. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Ex: T: Ngóh saimúi hohk sé
 + jih. /kàhnlihk/
 S: Ngóh saimúi hóu kàhnlihk hohk sé jih.</p> | <p>T: My younger sister is learning to write. /industrious/
 S: My younger sister works hard at learning to write.
 [My younger sister industriously learns to write.]</p> |
| <p>+ 1. Ngóh sailóu duhk syū. /láahn/
 My younger brother is studying. /lazy, idle/
 2. Ngóh gājē sé jih. /láahn/
 3. Ngóh go múi hohk Yíngmàhn. /kàhnlihk/
 4. Ngóh bàhbā jough sih. /kàhnlihk/
 + 5. Ngóh agō já chē. /siusām/
 [<u>careful</u>]</p> | <p>1. Ngóh sailóu hóu láahn duhk syū.
 My younger brother is lazy in his studying.
 2. Ngóh gājē hóu láahn sé jih.
 3. Ngóh go múi hóu kàhnlihk hohk Yíngmàhn.
 4. Ngóh bàhbā hóu kàhnlihk jough sih.
 5. Ngóh agō hóu siusām já chē.
 My elder brother is driving carefully.</p> |

6. Ngóh saimúì yàuhséui. /síusām/ 6. Ngóh saimúì hóu síusām
yàuhséui.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) síuhóhk = elementary school
- 2) síhk ngaanjau = síhk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. My younger brother speaks Cantonese better than I.
2. These characters are not written very clearly.
3. Does your elder sister speak Cantonese fluently?
4. I hear you cook Chinese food very well.
5. Her handwriting is terrible.
6. Is your watch running on time?
7. The water is dripping [leaking] pretty badly.
8. She speaks in a very small voice.
9. He drives a car too fast.
10. Two years ago he began to study writing Chinese characters.
11. Who are you chatting with? What are you talking about?
12. My elder brother is very industrious in his studies.
13. When did you begin studying Cantonese?

B. And he replies:

1. You're too modest--you speak very well.
2. Who was it that wrote them?
3. She speaks more fluently than I do.
4. You praise me too much--I'm no good!
5. She's just begun to learn to write Chinese characters.
6. Running right on time--it's now 4:15.
7. Can you fix it?
8. Ask her to speak a little louder.
9. He doesn't drive as fast as my younger brother.
10. He writes pretty well now [not bad].
11. With my friend. We're talking about studying Cantonese, that's all.
12. Is your younger brother also industrious in his studies?
13. It was just three months ago that I began.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 14. Does your younger sister swim well? | 14. Not bad, but she swims not as well as my elder sister. |
| 15. The way I swim is terrible! | 15. Not so! You swim pretty well. |
| 16. He plays mahjong very fast. | 16. Yes--. I don't play as fast as he. |
| 17. My father drives a car carefully. | 17. Does your mother drive carefully? |
| 18. That child is quite smart but he is lazy in his studies. | 18. His elder brother is also in his studies. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 22

- | | | |
|----------------------|---------|---|
| 1. 㗎 | adv: | just, only a moment ago |
| 2. chisó | n: | toilet |
| 3. chíhn | bf: | ago |
| 4. -dāk... | Vsuf: | grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells how verb is done, or what result of verb is. |
| 5. gàn | CV: | from as in: learn from someone |
| 6. gányiu | adj: | important, serious |
| 7. góng yéh | VO: | say things, i.e. to talk |
| 8. Gwojéung la. | Ph: | 'You praise me too much.' [response to compliment] |
| 9. hàahng | v: | run (of watches) |
| 10. héisáu | AuxV/V: | begin |
| 11. hím | adj: | modest |
| 12. hòì (chē) | V(O): | drive (a car) |
| 13. hóu wúh <u>V</u> | Ph: | does a good job of <u>V</u> -ing, is good at <u>V</u> -ing |
| 14. ...jíchíhn | Ph: | ...ago (when used after numbered time expression, as in '3 years ago') |
| 15. jih | n: | written word, written figure, Chinese character |
| 16. kàhnlihk | adj: | industrious |
| 17. kǐnggái | v: | have a chat, talk casually |
| 18. láahn | adj: | lazy, idle |
| 19. lauh | v: | leak |
| 20. làuhleih | adj: | fluent in speech, fluently |
| 21. leuhnjeuhn | adj: | clumsy, awkward, stupid |

22. mǎhmádeí	Ph: middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by
23. múi	n: younger sister
24. ngāamngāam	adv: just, only a moment ago
25. sailóu	TA/N: younger brother
26. saisèng	adj: quiet-voiced, soft (opposite of loud) in regard to speech [small-sound]
27. sé jih	VO: to write [write words]
28. séuihàuh	n: water faucet, water pipes
29. síusām	adj: careful
30. taai	adv: too, excessively
31. yáih	adj: terrible, awful

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(A tourist in a hotel in Hong Kong has rung for the roomboy:)

sìhjái

roomboy

Sìhjái

fànfu

instructions

Sìnsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

Yes sir--you called? [what instructions does the gentleman have?]

Yáuhhaak

yáuhhaak

tourist

sái

wash

Ngóh yáuh dī sāam yiu sái ge.

I have some clothes to be washed.

Sìhjái

Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.

Fine--give them to me and they'll be done.

Yáuhhaak

hauhyaht

the day after tomorrow

jiujóu

morning

Ngóh hauhyaht jiujóu yiu jáu laak.

I'm leaving the day after tomorrow in the morning.

sáidākchit

able to get (it) washed in time

Sái mhsáidākchit nē?

Will you be able to get them washed in time?

Sìhjái

Dāk gé.

Yes indeed.

hahjau

afternoon

níngfàan

carry back

níngfàanlaih

bring back

hahjau níngfàanlaih

bring (it) back in the afternoon

Tíngyaht hahjáu yātdihng níngfàanlaih béi néih.

We'll bring it back to you tomorrow afternoon without fail.

Yàuhhaak

Gám, m̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh níng-
chēutheui lā.

(The tourist points out a spot on one of the garments:)

yan
Níidoh yáuh go yan--
gònjehng
sáidāk gònjehng
m̀hjí...?
M̀hjí sái m̀hsáidāk gònjehng nē?

In that case, please take them
[away for me].

spot
There's a spot here--
clean
able to be washed clean
I wonder...?
I wonder whether you can get it
clean?

Sihjái

hóu chíh
Mmm...Hóu chíh m̀hdāk bo.

Siháh lā!

it seems, probably, it looks
like ...
Mmm...It looks like it can't be
done--
But we'll give it a try.

Yàuhhaak

A--juhng yáuh!
tong
tong chēuhng fu
M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh tongjó
nítíuh chēuhng fu lā.

Oh--there's something else!
iron, press
press trousers
Please get these trousers
pressed for me.

Sihjái

Hóu aak.
dāan
séfàan
Dáng ngòh séfàan jèung dāan bēi
néih lā.
Juhng yáuh m̀yéh fànfu a?

Yes sir.
list
write and return
I'll write you a list.
Anything else, sir? [In addition
what instructions do you
have?]

Yàuhhaak

fan or fangaau
Ngòh yíngā fan la.
séng

sleep
I'm going to sleep now.
wake up

giuséng	wake (someone) up, be waked up [call-wake]
tingyaht jiujóu	tomorrow morning
tíngjiu	tomorrow morning
tíngjàu giuséng ngóh	wake me up in the morning
Mhòì néih tíngjiu chāt díim bun	Please wake me up tomorrow
giuséng ngóh lā.	morning at 7:30
jóu	early
Ngóh yiu jóudí chēut gāai.	I want to go out a little early. (i.e., earlier than customarily)

B. Recapitulation:Sihjái

Sínsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

Yes sir--you called? [what
instructions' does the
gentleman have?]Yáuhhaak

Ngóh yáuh dí sām yiu sái ge.

I have some clothes to be
washed.Sihjái

Hóu--béi ngóh jauh dāk laak.

Fine--give them to me and
they'll be taken care of.YáuhhaakNgóh hauhyaht jiujóu yiu jáu
laak.I'm leaving day after tomorrow
in the morning.

Sái mhsáidākchit nē?

Will you be able to get them
washed in time?Sihjái

Dāk gé.

Yes indeed.

Tingyaht hahjau yātdihng
ningfàanlāih béi néih.We'll bring it back to you
tomorrow afternoon without
fail.

Yàuhhaak

Gám, òhngòì néih tùhng ngòh
 níngchēutheui lā.
 Nídhòuh yáuh go yan--òhngí sái
 mhsáidāk gònjehng nē?

Sihjái

Mmm...Hóu chíh mhdāk bo.

Siháh 1

Yàuhhaak

A--juhng yáuh!
 Òhngòì néih tùhng ngòh tongjò
 nítiuh chēuhng fu lā.

Sihjái

Hóu aak.
 Dāng ngòh séfāan jèung dāan
 bēi néih lā.
 Juhng yáuh mēyéh fānfu a?

Yàuhhaak

Ngòh yíngā fan la.
 Òhngòì néih tìngjiu chāt díng bun
 giúséng ngòh lā.
 Ngòh yiu jóudí chēut gāai.

In that case, please take them
 [away for me].
 There's a spot here--I wonder
 whether you can get it clean?

Mmm... It looks like it can't
 be done.

But we'll give it a try.

Oh--there's something else!
 Please get these trousers
 pressed for me.

Yes, sir.
 I'll write you a list.

Anything else, sir? [In
 addition what instructions do
 you have?]

I'm going to bed now.
 Please wake me up tomorrow
 morning at 7:30
 I want to go out a little
 early.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes.

1. fànfu, (N/V) 'instructions, orders (given by a superior to a subordinate);' 'to order, instruct (someone to do something)'

The term fànfu is most frequently encountered said by a subordinate to a superior, particularly in the fixed phrase: 'Yáuh mēyéh fànfu?', 'what instructions (or orders) do you have?' From a superior to a subordinate it is not used in direct address, being considered too peremptory. In direct address, instructions are phrased in courtesy forms.

- Ex: 1. M̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh cheunghòì Would you please change a hundred
jeung baak mán jí. dollar bill for me.
 2. Kéuih fànfu ngóh t̀hng kéuih He instructed me to change a
cheunghòì jeung baak mán jí. hundred dollar bill for him.

2. hahjau, 'afternoon.' Another word for afternoon is hahng. (ng)aanjau is also used by some people to mean 'afternoon,' but other people mean 'around noontime' when they say ngaanjau. (sikh ngaanjau, sikh ngaan is 'eat noontime meal,' 'eat lunch'). Twelve o'clock noon is expressed as ngaanjau sahpyih dím, and twelve midnight as bun yeh sahpyih dím.

B. Structure Notes.

1. $V\text{-}d\bar{a}k\text{-}\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{Adj.} \\ V.\text{suf} \end{array}\right\}$ = 'can V so that $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{Adj.} \\ V.\text{suf} \end{array}\right\}$ occurs,' 'can $\left\{\begin{array}{l} V\text{-Adj} \\ V\text{-Vsuf} \end{array}\right\}$ '

The above represents how the dāk, 'can' construction is used with two-part verb constructions of performance+achievement.

You remember from Lesson 20 encountering the dāk 'can' pattern with the single verb: V-dāk, 'can V.' For example:

1. Kéuih nīpáai m̀hheuidāk. He can't get away these few days.
 2. Ga ch̀è h̀ahngdāk ga-- Néih The car can run-- you simply haven't
meih hòì sosih ja! turned on the ignition!

(See Drill 15)

With a two-part verb dāk comes between the two parts, the first part being the performance, the second part the outcome which can or cannot be achieved.

Examples:

1. Performance verb + achievement suffix, with dāk becomes V-dak-Vsuf

Ex: jíng hóu = [work on + successful outcome] , i.e., fix, fix so that it is OK

jíng dāk hóu = can be repaired

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk-hóu	Fong sām laak- néih ga chē hóyih <u>jíng dāk hóu.</u>	Don't worry-- your car can be fixed.
n	m̄hV-dāk-hóu or V-m̄hóu	Ga chē taai gauh-- <u>m̄h jíng dāk hóu.</u> or ... <u>jíng m̄h hóu.</u>	The car is too old-- it can't be fixed.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk-hóu	Ga chē gam gauh-- juhng <u>jíng m̄h jíng dāk hóu</u> a?	The car is so old-- can it still be repaired?

(See Drill 17)

2. Performance verb + achievement Adj, with dāk becomes V-dāk-Adj.

sái gònjehng = wash (so that it becomes) clean

sáidāk gònjehng = can be washed clean, can be cleaned

	Forms	Examples	English Equivalents
p	V-dāk Adj.	Ngóh nám ní dī yéh <u>sáidāk gònjehng.</u>	I think this stuff can be cleaned. [washed clean]
n	m̄hV-dāk Adj. or V-m̄hAdj.	Ngóh nám ní dī yéh <u>m̄h sáidāk gònjehng.</u> or ... <u>sáim̄h gònjehng</u>	I don't think this stuff can be cleaned.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk Adj	Néih nám ní dī yéh <u>sáim̄h sáidāk gònjehng</u> a?	Do you think this stuff can be cleaned?

Note that there are two alternate forms of the negative of the V-dāk-achievement pattern. m̄h either precedes the whole V-dāk-achievement phrase, or it supplants dāk in the phrase:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{m̄h} + \text{Verb-dāk-Adj} \\ \text{Suffix} \end{array} \right\} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{m̄hV-dāk-Adj/Suf} \\ \text{V-m̄h -Adj/Suf} \end{array}$$

2. Use of V-dāk (can V) construction in VO phrases.

In a Verb-Object phrase V-dāk is rendered as V-dāk O, 'can VO,' 'able to VO.'

Ex: paak chē = park a car
paakdāk chē = can park a car

a	Hauhbihn paakdāk chē.	You can park a car in the back. (i.e., there's space for parking there)
n	Chihnbihn m̄hpaakdāk chē.	You can't park a car in front. (i.e., there's no space)
q	Chihnbihn paak m̄hpaakdāk chē a?	Can you park a car in front? (i.e., is there space?)

(See Drill 16)

3. -jō, as verb suffix in imperative sentence: V-jō, 'get V done'

a. In an imperative sentence -jō conveys the meaning 'get the action accomplished.'

Ex: M̄ngòì néih t̄hng ngòh Please wash the clothes for me. (or)
saijō dī sām. Please have the clothes washed for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

b. Inasmuch as Cantonese doesn't differentiate active and passive voice, a Verb-jō imperative sentence may mean 'do it yourself,' or it may mean 'have someone else do it.' cf. example sentence above.

c. A Verb-jō imperative sentence requires an object. For this type of sentence a pronoun object is permitted.

Ex: N̄idouh yáuh yāt jèung baak Here's a hundred dollar bill--
mān jí; m̄ngoi néih t̄hng please change it for me.
ngòh cheungjō kéuh lā.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

4. ngaan (var:aan), 'late (in the daytime)' and yeh, 'late (in the evening)' and jóu, 'early'
- a. When bound to -dī, the implication is 'earlier (or later) than usual or expected'
- Ex: Ngóhdeih gàmáahn jóudī We'd like dinner a little early
sikh faahn lā. tonight. (Said by housewife to her cook)
- b. jóu, ngaan and yeh may occupy the position of Time When words before the Verb or they may follow the verb, in which case -dāk is suffixed to the verb, making the phrase into the form of the V-dāk hóu Adjective phrase of manner. (The pré-verb position is favored for sentences of non-past reference.)
- Ex: 1. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn hóu We ate very late last night.
yeh sikh faahn.
2. Ngóhdeih kàhmmáahn We ate very late last night.
sikhdāk hóu yeh.
3. Ngóhdeih gàmáahn hóu We're going to eat very early
jóu sikh faahn. this evening.
- c. ngaan and yeh do not mean 'late' in the sense 'unpunctual,' 'not on time.' The word for 'unpunctual' is chih.

(See Drill 9.4)

5. Reference charts for morning, noon and night.

a. Sections of the day.

morning:	jíujóu, <u>or</u> jíutàuhjóu
noon:	(ng)aanjau
afternoon:	hahjau
night:	yehmáahn, <u>or</u> máahntàuhhaak

b. Sections of the day for yesterday, today, and tomorrow.

	Yesterday	Today	Tomorrow
	kàhmyaht chàhmyaht	gàmyaht	tìngyaht
morning:	kàhmyaht jíu	gàmjíu	tìngjíu
noon:	kàhmyaht (ng)aanjau	gàmyaht (ng)aanjau	tìngyaht (ng)aanjau
afternoon:	kàhmyaht hahjau	gàmyaht hahjau	tìngyaht hahjau
night:	kàhmmáahn	gàmáahn	tìngmáahn

6. jiujiu, 'every morning' and maahnmaahn, 'every evening'

The boundwords jiu, 'morning' and maahn, 'evening' pattern like duplicated Measures to mean 'each and every ____.' Thus, jiujiu is 'every morning,' and maahnmaahn, 'every evening.'

Ex: Ngoh jiujiu tai joubou, I read the morning paper every
maahnmaahn tai maahnbou. morning and the evening paper
every evening.

(See Drill 13)

7. yauh 'have,' in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yauh SVO

In the pivotal construction the object of the first verb is the subject of the second one. We have encountered this pattern before (in Lesson 10) with a PW as subject of the whole sentence: PW yauh SVO. Example: Godouh yauh go yahn da dihnwa, Over there is a man talking on the phone.

In this lesson we have an example of a pivotal construction with a personal noun/pronoun as subject of the sentence.

Ex: 1. Ngoh yauh di sam yiu sai ge. I have clothes needing washing.
2. Ngoh yauh go pahngyauh sik I have a friend who can speak
gong Gwongdungwa. Cantonese.

(See BC)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first two sentences after the teacher, then substitute as directed:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>sái sām</u> .
She washes clothes everyday. | 1. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>sái sām</u> . |
| 2. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>jiujóu sái sām</u> .
She washes clothes in the morning everyday. | 2. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>jiujóu sái sām</u> . |
| + 3. / <u>ngaanjau</u> / (or aanjau)
(<u>morning</u> ; <u>around noon</u>) | 3. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>ngaanjau sái sām</u> . |
| 4. / <u>hahjau</u> /
(afternoon) | 4. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>hahjau sái sām</u> . |
| + 5. / <u>yehmáahn</u> /
(<u>night</u>) | 5. Kéuih yahtyaht <u>yehmáahn sái sām</u> . |

2. Substitution Drill:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>fàanheui</u> .
He went back yesterday. | 1. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>fàanheui</u> . |
| + 2. / <u>kàhmyaht jiu</u> /
(<u>yesterday morning</u>) | 2. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>jiu fàanheui</u> . |
| + 3. / <u>kàhmyaht ngaanjau</u> /
(<u>yesterday noon</u>) | 3. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>ngaanjau fàanheui</u> . |
| + 4. / <u>kàhmyaht hahjau</u> /
(<u>yesterday afternoon</u>) | 4. Kéuih kàhmyaht <u>hahjau fàanheui</u> . |
| + 5. / <u>kàhmmáahn</u> /
(<u>last night</u>) | 5. Kéuih kàhmmáahn <u>fàanheui</u> . |
| + 6. / <u>chihnyaht</u> /
(<u>the day before yesterday</u>) | 6. Kéuih <u>chihnyaht fàanheui</u> . |

Comment: 1) kàhmyaht uses its contracted form kàhm- with -máahn but not with jiu.

kàhmmáahn yesterday evening

kàhmyaht jiu yesterday morning

2) ngaanjau and hahjau don't have contracted forms.

3. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo
júngtáuh Yíngmán.
I'm going to study English
for an hour today. | 1. Ngóh gàmyaht yiu hohk yātgo
júngtáuh Yíngmán. |
| + 2. /gámjiu/
(<u>this morning</u>) | 2. Ngóh gámjiu yiu hohk yātgo
júngtáuh Yíngmán. |
| + 3. /gàmyaht ngaanjau/
(<u>this morning; today around
noon</u>) | 3. Ngóh gàmyaht ngaanjau yiu
hohk yātgo júngtáuh Yíng-
mán. |
| + 4. /gàmyaht hahjau/
(<u>this afternoon</u>) | 4. Ngóh gàmyaht hahjau yiu hohk
yātgo júngtáuh Yíngmán. |
| + 5. /gámáahn/
(<u>this evening; tonight</u>) | 5. Ngóh gámáahn yiu hohk yāt-
go júngtáuh Yíngmán. |
-

4. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tíngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu a?
Can it be fixed by tomorrow? | 1. Tíngyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu
a? |
| 2. /tíngjiu/
(<u>tomorrow early morning</u>) | 2. Tíngjiu jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu
a? |
| + 3. /tíngyaht ngaanjau/
(<u>tomorrow morning around
noon</u>) | 3. Tíngyaht ngaanjau jíng
m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu a? |
| + 4. /tíngyaht hahjau/
(<u>tomorrow afternoon</u>) | 4. Tíngyaht hahjau jíng m̀hjíng-
dāk̀hóu a? |
| + 5. /tíngmáahn/
(<u>tomorrow night</u>) | 5. Tíngmáahn jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu
a? |
| 6. /hauhyaht/
(<u>day after tomorrow</u>) | 6. Hauhyaht jíng m̀hjíngdāk̀hóu
a? |
-

5. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Jek b̄i. | T: A cup. |
| S: M̀hgòì néih níng dò
jek b̄i làih. | S: Please bring another cup. |
| 1. jí b̄jáu. | 1. M̀hgòì néih níng dò jí b̄jáu
làih. |
| 2. go wúnjái. | 2. M̀hgòì néih níng dò go wún-
jái làih. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. géi jek séui búi. | 3. M̀ngòì néih níng dò géi jek séui búi làih. |
| + 4. géi go <u>sāamgá</u> .
several <u>clothes hangers</u> . | 4. M̀ngòì néih níng dò géi go sāamgá làih. |
| 5. jek gāng. | 5. M̀ngòì néih níng dò jek gāng làih. |
| ++ 6. <u>gauh fāangāan</u> .
a <u>bar of soap</u> . | 6. M̀ngòì néih níng dò gauh fāangāan làih. |
| 7. deui faaijǐ. | 7. M̀ngòì néih níng dò deui faaijǐ làih. |
| 8. sàam jek búi. | 8. M̀ngòì néih níng dò sàam jek búi làih. |
| + 9. tiuh <u>mòuhgān</u> .
(<u>towel</u>) | 9. M̀ngòì néih níng dò tiuh mòuhgān làih. |
| + 10. dǐ <u>chijǐ</u> .
(<u>toilet paper</u>) | 10. M̀ngòì néih níng dò dǐ chíjǐ làih. |

6. Expansion Drill

+ Ex: T: Gihn sēutsāam hóu laahттаат.

S: Gihn sēutsāam hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

T: The shirt is very dirty.

S: The shirt is very dirty, please wash it for me. (or please get it washed for me)

1. dǐ chēunglím

1. Dǐ chēunglím hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

2. go wúnjái

2. Go wúnjái hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

3. tiuh mòuhgān
(towel)

3. Tiuh mòuhgān hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
The towel is very dirty,
please wash it for me.

4. gihn lāangsāam

4. Gihn lāangsāam hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.

5. tiuh kwàhn
(skirt)

5. Tiuh kwàhn hóu laahттаат, m̀ngòì néih t̀hng ngóh sáijó kéuih lā.
The skirt is very dirty,
Please wash it for me.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 6. /hóu chàauh/tong/
(<u>wrinkled</u>)</p> <p>7. gihn sēutsāam</p> <p>8. tiuh fu</p> | <p>6. Tiuh kwáhn hóu chàauh,
m̀hgòì néih tùhng ngòh
tongjǒ kéuih lā.
The skirt is wrinkled,
would you please press it
for me.</p> <p>7. Gihn sēutsāam hóu chàauh,
m̀hgòì néih tùhng ngòh
tongjǒ kéuih lā.</p> <p>8. Tiuh fu hóu chàauh, m̀hgòì
néih tùhng ngòh tongjǒ
kéuih lā.</p> |
|---|---|
-

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /tingjiu/

S: 'Tingjiu' jikhaih
tingyaht jiujóu.S: 'Tingjiu'--that's 'tomorrow
morning'.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. /gámjiu/</p> <p>2. /gámáahn/</p> <p>3. /tingjiu/</p> <p>4. /tingmáahn/</p> <p>5. /kàhmmáahn/</p> <p>+ 6. /chìhnjiu/
(<u>the day before yesterday
morning</u>)</p> <p>+ 7. /chìhnámáahn/
(<u>the night before last</u>)</p> <p>8. /hauhjiu/</p> <p>+ 9. /hauhámáahn/
(<u>two nights from now</u>)</p> | <p>1. 'Gámjiu' jikhaih gámyaht
jiujóu.</p> <p>2. 'Gámáahn' jikhaih gámyaht
yehmáahn.</p> <p>3. 'Tingjiu' jikhaih tingyaht
jiujóu.</p> <p>4. 'Tingmáahn' jikhaih tingyaht
yehmáahn.</p> <p>5. 'Kàhmmáahn' jikhaih kàhmyaht
yehmáahn.</p> <p>6. 'Chìhnjiu' jikhaih chìhnyah
tjiujóu.</p> <p>7. 'Chìhnámáahn' jikhaih chìhn-
yaht yehmáahn.</p> <p>8. 'Hauhjiu' jikhaih hauhyaht
jiujóu.</p> <p>9. 'Hauhámáahn' jikhaih hauhyaht
yehmáahn.</p> |
|--|---|
-

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih gâmyaht hah-
jau géidím dāk-
hàahn a? /sàam dím/

T: When will you be free this
afternoon?

S: Ngóh gâmyaht hahjau
sàam dím dākhaahn.

S: I am free at 3 p.m.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih bàhbā jiujóu géi dím fàan gùng a? /gáu dím/ | 1. Ngóh bàhbā jiujóu gáu dím fàan gùng. |
| 2. Néih sailóu jiujóu géidím fàan hohk a? /baat dím bun/ | 2. Ngóh sailóu jiujóu baat dím bun fàan hohk. |
| 3. Néih gājē hahjau géidím chēut gāai a? /léuhng dím géi/ | 3. Ngóh gājē hahjau léuhng dím géi chēut gāai. |
| 4. Néih agō yehmáahn géidím fàan ūkkéi a? /sahp dím lèhng/ | 4. Ngóh agō yehmáahn sah p dím lèhng fàan ūkkéi. |
| 5. Néih màhmā kàhmyaht jiu géi-dím héi sàan a? /baat dím dóu/ | 5. Ngóh màhmā kàhmyaht jiu baat dím dóu héi sàan. |
| 6. Néih go néui hauhmáahn géi-dím dākhaahn a? /baatgáu dím dóu/ | 6. Ngóh go néui hauhmáahn baat-gáu dím dóu dākhaahn. |

9. Expansion Drill

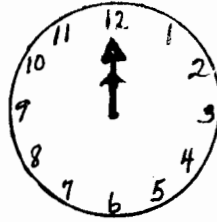
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. jōu
jōudī
jōudī wah
jōudī wah kéuih jí
dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí a? | 1. early
earlier, a bit early
say earlier
tell her earlier
why didn't (you) tell her
earlier? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí a? | Why didn't you tell her
earlier? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí néih m̄hheui a? | Why didn't you tell her
earlier you weren't going? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí néih m̄hheuidāk a? | Why didn't you tell her
earlier you couldn't go? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí néih m̄hheuidāk kéuih douh a? | Why didn't you tell her
earlier you couldn't go
to her house? |
| Néih dīngāai m̄hjōudī wah kéuih jí néih m̄hheuidāk kéuih | Why didn't you tell her
earlier that you wouldn't |

2. T: Kéuih tongjǎo tǐuh T: Has she ironed the skirt yet?
kwǎhn meih a?
/hahjau/

S: Juhng meih. Kéuih S: Not yet, she will iron it in
hahjau ji tong. the afternoon.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih gǎjē heuijǎo Tòihbāk meih
a? /tingjiu/ | 1. Juhng meih. Kéuih tingjiu
ji heui. |
| 2. Néih agō máaihjǎo bouji meih
a? /gamjiu/ | 2. Máaihjǎo la. Kéuih gamjiu
yínging máaihjǎo la. |
| 3. Néih sailóu fàanjǎo hohk meih
a? /hahjau/ | 3. Juhng meih. Kéuih hahjau ji
fāan. |
| 4. Néih saimúi heuijǎo jough sǎn
sāam meih a? /tingyaht
hahjau/ | 4. Juhng meih. Kéuih tingyaht
hahjau ji heui. |
| 5. Néih néuihpáhngyáuh làihjǎo
meih a? /kahmyaht jiu/ | 5. Làihjǎo la. Kéuih kahmyaht
jiu yínging làihjǎo la. |
| 6. Néih dī sailógō máaihjǎo syù
meih a? /kahmyaht jiu/ | 6. Máaihjǎo la. Kéuihdeih kahm-
yaht jiu yínging máaihjǎo
la. |
| 7. Néih màhmā joughjǎo chēunglím
meih a? /tingmāahn/ | 7. Juhng meih. Kéuih tingmāahn
ji jough. |
| 8. Léih Táai fàanjǎo ūkkéi meih
a? /kahmmāahn/ | 8. Fàanjǎo la. Kéuih kahmmāahn
yínging fàanjǎo la. |
| 9. Néih gùngyáhn níngjǎo jèung
tói làih meih a? /kahmmāahn/ | 9. Níngjǎo la. Kéuih kahmmāahn
yínging níngjǎo làih la. |
| 10. Néih heuijǎo ngàhnhòhng meih a?
+ /yātjǎn/
(in a little while) | 10. Juhng meih. Ngóh yātjǎn ji
heui. |
| 11. Néih dǎjǎo dihnwá béi kéuih
meih a? /ngāamngāam/
Did you phone him (as I
knew you were planning
to)? | 11. Dǎjǎo la. Ngóh ngāamngāam
dǎjǎo béi kéuih la.
Yes, I've just now phoned
him. |

11. Response Drill: It is now 12 noon. (ngaanjau sahpyih dīm)



- Ex: 1. T: Ga chē jǐnghóu meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/
T: Is the car repaired yet? /yesterday morning/
S: Jǐnghóu la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐngǐng jǐnghóujó la.
S: Yes, it was finished yesterday morning.
2. T: Gihn sāam dāk meih a? /hahjau/
T: Is the dress ready yet? /afternoon/
S: Juhng meih dāk bo. Hahjau sǐn lā.
S: Still not ready yet. It'll be ready this afternoon.
1. Néih go dihnwá jǐnghóu meih a? /kǎhmmáahn/
1. Jǐnghóu la. Kǎhmmáahn yǐngǐng jǐnghóujó la.
2. Wahjó kéuih jí meih a? /hahjau/
2. Juhng meih wah kéuih jí bo. Hahjau sǐn lā.
3. Nǐngjó chēutheui meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/
3. Nǐngjó la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐngǐng nǐngjó la.
4. Deui hàaih dāk meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/
4. Juhng meih dāk bo. Tingyaht hahjau sǐn lā.
5. Di chēunglím dāk meih a? /kǎhmyaht jiu/
5. Dāk la. Kǎhmyaht jiu yǐngǐng dākjó laak.
6. Gihn lāangsāam sáihóu meih a? /tingmáahn/
6. Juhng meih sáihóu bo. Tingmáahn sǐn lā.
Is the sweater ready yet?
(said to clerk at dry cleaning establishment)
- + 7. Jèung tóí jǐngfàan meih a? /kǎhmmáahn/
7. Jǐngfàan laak. Kǎhmmáahn yǐngǐng jǐngfàan laak.
(fix back to original shape)
Have you repaired the table yet? [fix back (to original condition)]
8. Mǎaihjó wúndihp meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/
8. Juhng meih mǎaih bo. Tingyaht hahjau sǐn lā.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>9. Sihkdāk faahn meih a? /yātjān/
Is dinner ready? <u>or</u>
Are you ready to eat?
[able to eat yet? <u>or</u>
Eating--is it able to be
done yet?]</p> <p>10. Heuidāk meih a? /gāmmāahn/
Are you ready to go yet?
Can you go yet?</p> | <p>9. Juhng meih sihkdkāk bo.
Yātjān sīn lā.</p> <p>10. Juhng meih heuidāk bo.
Gāmmāahn sīn lā.</p> |
|--|---|

12. Substitution Drill

- Ex: 1. T: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn T: Tonight we'll eat at six
luhk dīm jauh o'clock.
sihk faahn laak.
/jóudī/
S: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn S: We'll have dinner earlier
jóudī sihk faahn. (than usual) tonight.
2. T: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn T: Tonight we won't eat until 9
gáu dīm bun ji o'clock. /later/
sihk faahn.
/yehdī/
S: Ngóhdeih gāmmāahn S: We'll have dinner later (than
yehdī sihk faahn. usual) tonight.
- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Ngóh tīngjiu gáu dīm bun ji
sihk jóuchāan. /ngaandī/
2. Ngóh hahjau sām dīm jauh
yám chāh laak. /jóudī/
3. Ngóh gāmmāahn sah p dīm ji
chēut gāai. /yehdī/
4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jiu luhk dīm
jauh héi sán laak. /hóu jóu/
5. Agō kàhmmāahn léuhng dīm
ji fan gaau. /hóu yeh/</p> | <p>1. Ngóh tīngjiu ngaandī sihk
jóuchāan.
2. Ngóh hahjau jóudī yám chāh.
3. Ngóh gāmmāahn yehdī chēut
gāai.
4. Kéuih kàhmyaht jiu hóu jóu
héi sán.
5. Agō kàhmmāahn hóu yeh fan
gaau.</p> |
|--|---|

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh láihbaai hái úkkéi síhk faahn. /hóusiu/
T: I eat at home on Sunday. /very seldom/

S: Ngóh láihbaai hóusiu hái úkkéi síhk faahn. S: I don't eat at home much on Sunday.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai mhhái úkkéi síhk faahn. /yáuhshíh/ | 1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai yáuhshíh mhhái úkkéi síhk faahn. |
| 2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai síhk léuhng sàam chí Jùng-choi. /jisíu/ | 2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai jisíu síhk léuhng sàam chí Jùng choi. |
| 3. Ngóh múih níhn heui fēigēi-chèuhng yātchi. /jidò/ | 3. Ngóh múih níhn jidò heui fēigēichèuhng yātchi. |
| 4. Kéuih heui wán pàhngyáuh chòh. /hóusiu/ | 4. Kéuih hóusiu heui wán pàhngyáuh chòh. |
| 5. Ngóh m̀hgeidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh. /hóudòshíh/ | 5. Ngóh hóudòshíh m̀hgeidāk néih ge dihnwá géidō houh. |
| 6. Kéuih gónm̀hchit síhk jóuchāan. /jiujiu/ (every morning) | 6. Kéuih jiujiu dōu gónm̀hchit síhk jóuchāan. |
| + 7. Kéuih hóu yeh jí fan. /m̀aahn m̀aahn/ (every evening) | 7. Kéuih m̀aahn m̀aahn dōu hóu yeh jí fan. |

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu wuhn jèung sahp mán jí. T: I want to change a ten dollar bill.

S: M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh wuhnjó jèung sahp mán jí lā. S: Would you please change a ten dollar bill for me?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh yiu tong tíuh kwàhn. | 1. M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh tong-jó tíuh kwàhn lā. |
| 2. Ngóh yiu sái dī sām. | 2. M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó dī sām lā. |
| 3. Ngóh yiu jòuh gihn sēutsām. /jòuhhóu/ | 3. M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh jòuh-hóu gihn sēutsām lā. |
| 4. Ngóh yiu sái go chisó. | 4. M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó go chisó lā. |
| 5. Ngóh yiu jòuh dī chēunglím. | 5. M̀hgòì néih tùhng ngóh jòuh-jó dī chēunglím lā. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. Ngóh yiu bún jèung tóí chēut-heui. | 6. M̀ngòì néih túhng ngóh búnjò jèung tóí chēutheui lā. |
| + 7. Ngóh yiu <u>gwa</u> tiuh kwáhn.
/gwahóu/
(hang up) | 7. M̀ngòì néih túhng ngóh gwa-hóu tiuh kwáhn lā.
Please hang the skirt up for me. |

15. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: 1. T: Ga chē gam gauh, hàahng m̀hhàahng-dāk a? /nod/ | T: That car is so old--can it run? |
| S: Hàahngdāk gé. | S: Sure it can! |
| 2. T: Ngóhdeih t̀ngyaht chéng haak, néih lāih m̀hlāihdāk a? /shake/ | T: We're having company for dinner tomorrow. Can you come? |
| S: M̀hlāihdāk bo. | S: I'm sorry I can't. |
| 1. Néih ūkkéi chíhnbíhn paak m̀hpaakdāk chē a? /nod/ | 1. Paakdāk gé. |
| 2. Kàhmáahn gam dung, néih fan m̀hfandāk a? /shake/ | 2. M̀hfandāk bo. |
| 3. Kéuihdeih t̀ngmáahn chéng haak, néih heui m̀hheuidāk a? /nod/ | 3. Heuidāk gé. |
| 4. Góidí t̀ng gam yíht, néih yám m̀hyámdāk a? /nod/ | 4. Yámdāk gé. |
| 5. Gíhn sēutsāam gam sai, néih jeuk m̀hjeukdāk a? /shake/ | 5. M̀hjeukdāk bo. |
| 6. Néih yāt go j̀ungtàuh duhk m̀hduhkđāk yāt baak yíhp a? /shake/ | 6. M̀hduhkđāk bo. |

16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngòh yáuh gam dò
chín, yátdihng
máaihdk hódò
yéh. /móuh géidò/

T: I have so much money, I can
buy a lot. /not much/

S: Ngòh móuh géidò chín, S: I don't have much money, I
mhmáaihdk hódò
yéh. can't buy much.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Gógàan jáudim gam daaih, yátdihng jyuhdk géi baak yáhn. /gam sai/
The hotel is so large it can accommodate several hundred people. | 1. Gógàan jáudim gam sai, mhjyuhdk géi baak yáhn. |
| 2. Ní go fēigēichèuhng gam daaih, yátdihng tíhngdk hódò (ga) fēigēi. /gam sai/ | 2. Ní go fēigēi chēuhng gam sai, mhtíhngdk géidò fēigēi. |
| 3. Néih ga chē gam daaih, yátdihng chòhdk baat go yáhn. /gam sai/ | 3. Néih ga chē gam sai, mhchòhdk baat go yáhn. |
| 4. Ngòh tíngyaht móuh yéh jòuh, yátdihng heuidak wán Hòh Síuje chòh. /mhdákhàahn/ | 4. Ngòh tíngyaht mhdákhàahn, mhheuidak wán Hòh Síuje chòh. |
| 5. Gàmyaht gam yiht, yátdihng heuidak yáuhseui. /gam dung/ | 5. Gàmyaht gam dung, mhheuidak yáuhseui. |
| 6. Kéuih yáuh dukh syù, yátdihng bātdak yihp. /móuh dukh syù/ | 6. Kéuih móuh dukh syù, mhbātdak yihp. |

17. Response Drill: Answer in the negative.

Ex: T: Yauh gam dò yéh,
sìhk mhsìhkdāk-
saai a?

T: There's so much stuff, can you
eat it all?

S: Gam dò yéh, mhsìhkdāk saai bo. S: There's so much stuff, I can't
eat it all.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, jòuh mhjòuhdk saai a? | 1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, mhjòuhdk saai bo. |
| 2. Yáuh gam dò sām, sái mhsáidāk saai a? | 2. Yáuh gam dò sām, mhsáidāk saai bo. |
| 3. Ga chē gam gauh, jing mhjīngdk hóu a? | 3. Ga chē gam gauh, mhjīngdk hóu bo. |
| 4. Gihn sām gam lahttaat, sái mhsáidāk gònjuhng a? | 4. Gihn sām gam lahttaat, mhsáidāk gònjuhng bo. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. Tíuh kwáhn gam chàauh, tong m̀htongdāk fàan a? | 5. Tíuh kwáhn gam chàauh, m̀htongdāk fàan bo. |
| 6. Go yan gam daaih, sái m̀hsáidāk dóu a? | 6. Go yan gam daaih, m̀hsáidāk dóu bo. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) sái sāmboh = laundry department
- 2) fan ngaandī = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than usual)
- 3) ch̀unglèuhng = take a bath, take a shower
- 4) ch̀unglèuhngfóng = bathroom
- 5) māt = here: dīngáai?
6. jihgái = yourself
- 7) Gám dím dāk ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such?
- 8) yeuhngyeuhng = everything
- 9) Luhk jé = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyíng or Chàhn Ngáh-luhk) and the je part means 'elder sister'.
- 10) gón = in a hurry; gón m̀hgónjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?
- 11) Sihkdāk faahn meih? = Can we eat yet?
- 12) m̀hhaih = otherwise, if not,...

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. This shirt is very dirty--would you get it washed for me?
2. This skirt is very wrinkled--would you press it for me?
3. There's a spot here on my tie--do you think it can be washed clean?

B. And he replies:

1. All right. (I'll) bring it back tomorrow--OK?
2. I'm very busy right now--I'll press it this afternoon, would that be all right?
3. Probably it can't be washed clean.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. What time do you want dinner tonight? | 4. Tonight we're going to go to the movies, so we'd like to eat a bit early. |
| 5. It was very late last night before I went to bed. | 5. I went to bed late too. |
| 6. Please excuse my late arrival--I got up late this morning. | 6. That's all right. I've just arrived. |
| 7. I get up every morning at 7:30. | 7. I get up every morning at 6:30. |
| 8. Every evening after dinner I study Cantonese. | 8. You're very industrious! |
| 9. Did he arrive the day before yesterday? | 9. No, he arrived yesterday morning. |
| 10. Have you hung up the clothes? | 10. Not yet--in just a minute! |
| 11. Is there any toilet paper in the john? | 11. There is, I just brought some in. |
| 12. Can you get it fixed by tomorrow? | 12. Can't get it fixed by tomorrow--it'll be day after tomorrow. |
| 13. Do you study in the morning or at night? | 13. I study in the morning and at night too. |
| 14. Does the gentleman have any further instructions? (said by bellboy to hotel guest) | 14. Would you please bring another towel and a bar of soap. |
| 15. We go to bed quite early every night. | 15. We go to bed comparatively late. |

 Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 23

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. chàauh | adj: wrinkled |
| 2. chih | adj: late (for an appointment) |
| 3. chiji | n: toilet paper |
| 4. chihnjui | TW: day before yesterday in the morning |
| 5. chihnmáahn | TW: night before last |
| 6. chihnyaht | TW: day before yesterday |
| 7. dāan | n: list |
| 8. fānfu | n/v: instructions |
| 9. fāngáan | n: soap |
| 10. fan(gaau) | V(O): go to bed, sleep |

11. gàmjiu	TW: this morning
12. gàmáahn	TW: tonight
13. gànyaht hahjau	TW: this afternoon
14. gànyaht ngaanjau	TW: this morning; today around noon
15. gauh	m: bar; M. for soap
16. giuséng	v: wake (someone) up [call-wake]
17. gònjehng	adj: clean
18. gwa	v: hang (something) up
19. *gwahóu	v: hang (something) up
20. hahjau	TW: afternoon
21. hauhmáahn	TW: day after tomorrow night
22. hauhyaht	TW: the day after tomorrow
23. hóu chíh	Ph: it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely...
24. jingfàan	v: fix back to original shape
25. jiujiu	AdvPh: every morning
26. jiujóu	morning
27. jóu	adj: early
28. kàhmáahn	TW: last night
29. kàhmyaht hahjau	TW: yesterday afternoon
30. kàhmyaht jiu	TW: yesterday morning
31. kàhmyaht ngaanjau	TW: yesterday noon
32. laahттаat	adj: dirty
33. máahn	BF: night
34. máahn máahn	adv: every evening
35. móuhgǎn	n: towel(s)
36. (ng)aan	adj: late (in the day)
37. (ng)aanjau	TW: around noon; morning
38. sǎangá	n: coat hanger
39. sái	v: wash
40. sáidǎkchit	VPh: able to get it washed in time
41. séfǎan	v: write and return
42. séng	v: wake up
43. sihjái	n: roomboy (in hotel)
44. tingjiu	TW: tomorrow morning

45. tìngmáahn	TW: tomorrow night
46. tìngyaht hahjau	TW: tomorrow afternoon
47. tìngyaht ngaanjau	TW: tomorrow morning around noon
48. tong	v: iron, press
49. yan	n: spot
50. yātján	advP: in a little while, in just a little while
51. yàuhhaak	n: tourist
52. yeh	adj: late (in the evening)
53. yehmáahn	TW: at night

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám bùi chàh jì dāk.

I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

chùng chàh

make tea, steep tea

wùh

pot, container, Measure

chùng wùh chàh

make a pot of tea

A Sei, m̀ngòì nēih chùng wùh chàh

A Sei, would you please make me

béi ngóh lā.

a pot of tea?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Taaitáai

here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy,' 'Madam.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)

Hái b̀indouh yám a?, Taaitáai?

Where would you like to drink it ma'am?

Bàau Táai

k̀ehláu

veranda, terrace

K̀ehláu l̀euhngd̀í, ch̀euthēui

It's cooler on the veranda--

k̀ehláu lā.

I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei

wùh

like to, going to (strong possibility)

lohkyúh

to rain [fall-rain]

Hóu chíh wùh lohkyúh bo.

It looks like it's going to rain.

Bàau Táai

haaktēng

living room

Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdoh
lā.

Well, here in the living room
then.

A Sei

jái
Jái hái nī jèung tóí, hóu
m̀hóu a?

put, place
I'll put it on this table, is
that all right?

Bàau Táai

Hóu lā.
A! Jànhaih lohkyúh tím bo!

Fine.
Oh-oh, it is raining!

chēung
sàan
sàan chēung
Sàanjó dī chēung lā.

window
close, shut
close windows
Please close the windows.

Àngòì néih tùhng ngóh heui
sàanjó dī chēung sìn lā.
faaidī

Please go close the windows
for me first.
right away, hurry and ...

Àngòì néih faaidī tùhng ngóh
heui sàanjó dī chēung sìn lā.

Please hurry and close the
windows for me.

(The servant and housewife both go
around closing windows, then return
to the living room. A Sei feels the
teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei

dungjó
Dī chàh dungjó laak.
chùng wùh yíht chàh
chùng wùh yíht ge

has become cold
The tea's gotten cold.
make a pot of hot tea
make a hot one [make pot
hot one]

chùnggwo
chùnggwo wùh yíht ge

make another [steep-change]
make another hot one (i.e.,
as replacement)

Dáng ngóh tùhng néih chùnggwo
wùh yíht ge lā.

Let me make you another hot
one.

Bàau Táai

Àngòì.
hóusēng a!

Thanks.
be careful!

dóusé	spill
Hóusēng a, m̀hóu dóusé a!	Be careful! Don't spill it!
<u>A Sei</u>	
Baihlaak! or Baihlok!	exclamation of surprise
Baihlaak! Jànhaih dóusé tīm!	Blast! I <u>did</u> spill it!
<u>Bàau Táai</u>	
faai	piece, Measure
faai bou	a cloth, a piece of material
maat	wipe, polish; wet-mop
Faaidī nǐng faai bou làih maat	Hurry and get a cloth to wipe
lā.	it up.
dit	drop
laahn	break
ditlaahn	break by dropping
hóuchóí	luckily, 'Thank goodness'
Hóuchóí...jē	It's lucky that ...
Hóuchóí móuh ditlaahn jek bī jē.	It's lucky that you didn't
	break the cup.

B. Recapitulation:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàau Táai

Yám bī cháh ji dāk.

I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

A Sei, m̀ngòí néih chùng wùh cháh béi ngóh lā.

A Sei, would you make me a pot of tea please?

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Hái bīndouh yám a?, Taaitáai?

Where would you like to drink it, ma'am?

Bàau Táai

Kèhláu lèuhngdī, chēutheui .
kèhláu lā.

It's cooler on the veranda--
I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei

Hóu chíh wúih lohkyúh bo.

It looks like it's going to
rain.

Bàau Táai

Gám, jauh hái haaktēng nīdouh
lā.

Well, here in the living room
then.

A Sei

Jài hái nī jèung tóih, hóu
m̀hóu a?

I'll put it on this table, is
that all right?

Bàau Táai

Hóu lā.

Fine.

A! Jánhah lohkyúh tím bo!

Oh-oh, it is raining!

M̀ngòih néih faaidí t̀hng ngóh

Please hurry and go close the
windows for me.

heui sàanjó dí chēung sīn lā.

(The servant and housewife both go
around closing windows, then return
to the living room. A Sei feels the
teapot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei

Dí chàh dungjó laak.

The tea's gotten cold.

Dáng ngóh t̀hng néih ch̀nggwo

Let me make you another hot
one.

ẁh yih ge lā.

Bàau Táai

M̀ngòih.

Thanks.

Hóusēng a, m̀hóu dóusé a!

Be careful! Don't spill it!

A Sei

Baihlaak! Jánhah dóusé tím!

Blast! I did spill it!

Bàau Táai

Faaidí níng faai bou làih maat
lā.

Hurry and get a cloth to wipe
it up.

Hóuchóih móuh ditlaahn jek b̀i jē.

At least it's lucky you didn't
break the cup.

II. NOTES

1. wúih, 'likely to,' '(probably) will'

wúih is an auxiliary verb, in a full sentence having a verb as its object. It is used in prediction sentences, indicating strong probability: 'likely to,' 'probably will,' 'could be that___.'

Ex: wúih lohk yúh = likely to rain

1. Gám yaht wúih lohkyúh ga. It's going to rain today.
or: It's likely to rain today.
2. Gám yaht mhwúih lohkyúh ge. It's not going to rain today.
3. Gám yaht wúih mhwúih lohkyúh Is it going to rain today?
a?

(See BC and Drill 6)

The underlying meaning of wúih is 'able to,' 'capable of,' in the sense of 'in one's power to V,' 'possible for one to V.' This connotation emerges when wúih is used to detail past or present capability:

- Ex: 1. A: Ní dī cháang hái Weihòhng . These oranges (I) bought at
máaihjó sei hóuhjí go. Wellcome Company for 40 apiece.
- B: Hái Jungwáahn Gàaisih . Buying at Central Market,
máaih, waahkjé wúih probably would be
péhngdí. cheaper.
2. A: Ní dī cháang yingā sei These oranges are now 40 apiece.
hóuhjí go.
- B: Séuhnggo láihbaai wúih Last week (one was) able to
péhngdí. (get them) cheaper.

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin will recognize the Cantonese wúih as cognate to Mandarin hwei, 'can;' 'know how to.' Note that Mandarin would use hwei in the sentence patterns detailed above, but that the Mandarin meaning of hwei as 'know how to' is represented in Cantonese by sik, 'know how to.')

2. jai, 'put,' 'place,' is a verb which requires a following place phrase object or verb suffix:

Ex: 1. jai + place phrase:

- a. Jai hái nídouh. Put it here.
- b. Jai hái tóidouh. Put it on the table.
- c. Jai hái kehlaú. Put it on the verandah.

2. jai + suffix

- a. Jàidài lā. Put it down.
 b. Jàimaih dī sāam lā. Put the clothes away.

(See BC and Drills 1.7, 1.8, 9)

3. faaidī in pre-verb and post-verb position.

In pre-verb position faaidī means either, 1) 'hurry up and Verb,'
 or 2) 'Verb faster'

Ex: Faaidī sihk a. = 1. Hurry up and eat. (We have to catch
 a train, hurry up and start eating.)

or:

2. Eat faster. (Stop dawdling.)

(See BC)

When faaidī follows the verb, there is only one interpretation,
 'Verb faster.'

Ex: Sihk faaidī! = Eat faster!

4. Sentence suffix la for friendly advice.

la is suffixed to imperative sentences, giving the connotation of
 low-keyed friendly advice. (Remember we use imperative to mean a
 sentence which directs an addressee to act, and is not limited to
 sentences giving commands.) Imperative suffix la in mid-pitch intonation
 is similar to imperative suffix lā with high-pitched intonation.
 Mid-pitched la suggests low-keyed advice, in contrast to high-pitched
lā, which suggests polite urging.

(See Drill 15)

5. Hóuchoi . . . jē. 'At least it's lucky that.....'

The jē of Hóuchoi...jē indicates: 'it's not much (to be thankful
 for), but it's something.'

(See BC and Drill 14)

6. Adjective-jó, 'has gotten Adjective,' 'got Adjective.'

Compare:

1. Dǐ tòng m̀hhouyám ge, dung gé. The soup doesn't taste good--
it's cold.
2. Dǐ tòng dungjó, m̀hhouyám ge. The soup has gotten cold-- it
doesn't taste good.

Adjective-jó views the condition described by the adjective as the end result of a process. The adjective without -jó is descriptive of a static state.

- Ex: dungjó = has gotten cold, got cold
 sǎpjo = got wet
 gauhjó = has gotten old (things, not people)
 cháauhjó = got wrinkled

(See BC and Drill 11)

English too has ways of expressing the condition described by an adjective in terms of a static state, or the end result of a process.

- Compare: 1. It is cold.
It has turned cold.
2. It is damp.
It has gotten damp.

7. -gwo-, 'another (as replacement for the original, in exchange for the original)'

gwo, attached to a verb preceding and a Measure following, has the meaning 'another,' 'other,' in the sense of a replacement (or replacements) for the original Measure.

gwo, 'another, others' in the sense of a replacement, contrasts with dò, 'another,' 'others' in the sense of an additional one (or ones).

- Ex: V gwo M = V a replacement M
V dò M = V an additional M

Compare:

1. Dǐ chàh dungjó-- ch̀ung gwo The tea's gotten cold-- please make
wuh lǎih lǎ. a replacement potful and bring it.
2. Dǐ chàh yamsai laak-- ch̀ung The tea's all drunk up. Please
dò wuh lǎih lǎ. make an additional potful and
bring it.

(See BC and Drill 15)

8. laih, 'for the purpose of,' 'in order to,' 'to'

laih connects two verb phrases: $V(O)_1$ laih $V(O)_2$, with the meaning:

$$'V(O)_1 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in order to} \\ \text{for the purpose of} \\ \text{to} \\ \text{so that one can} \end{array} \right\} V(O)_2'$$

- Ex: 1. Nìng faai bou laih maat. Bring a cloth to wipe (it up).
 2. Néih máaih bēng laih What did you buy cookies for?
 jauh méyeh a?
 3. Ngóh máaih dī bēng laih I bought cookies to eat.
 sìhk.
 4. Kéuih máaih hóudò choi She bought a lot of food to
 laih chéng haak. have a dinner party.

(See Drill 10)

9. Performance-achievement verb compounds

- Ex: 1. ditlaahn drop-break = break
 2. chohlaahn sit-break = break
 (jéung yí) (the chair)
 3. chohlaahn sit-break = tear, rip
 (tiuh fu) (the trousers)
 4. dálaahn hit-break = break
 5. dóusé come to the brim-overflow = spill

- a. The first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound tells what action is performed, the second one tells what the result is:

Ex: dálaahn hit and break
 chohlaahn sit and break
 ditlaahn drop and break

- b. In sentences of past reference, the performance-achievement compound verbs pattern like single verbs.

Forms: affirmative: VV-jó
 negative : móuh VV
 choice ques: yauh móuh VV?

Ex: dálaahn = hit and break

a	Kéuih dálaahnjó jek búi.	She broke the cup.
n	Kéuih móuh dálaahn jek búi.	She didn't break the cup.
q	Yáuh móuh dálaahn jek búi a?	Did she break the cup?

c. The dāk, 'can,' pattern with performance-achievement compounds.

This patterns like, indeed it is the same as, the V-dāk-Adj =

'can V with Adj results' construction studied in Lesson 23.

Ex: dádāklaahn = [hit-can-break], i.e., able to break by hitting;
can be broken by hitting; breakable

a	V-dāk-Adj	Nī jek būi <u>dádāklaahn</u> .	This glass is breakable. [hit-can-break]
n	m̄hV-dāk-Adj or V m̄h-Adj	Nī jek būi <u>m̄hdádāklaahn</u> .	This glass is unbreakable.
q	Vm̄hV-dāk-Adj	Nī jek būi <u>da m̄hdádāklaahn</u> a?	Is this glass breakable?

d. In sentences of customary action, not referring to a specific event.

For customary action the performance-achievement compound tends to be phrased in the affirmative, with frequency expressions such as hóu síu, 'very seldom' suggesting the negative, and with the question formed by haih m̄hhaih preceding the affirmative.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih síhsìh dōu dálaahn She always breaks things.
yéh ga.
2. Kéuih hóu síu dálaahn She very seldom breaks things.
yéh ga.
3. Kéuih haihm̄hhaih síhsìh Does she break things all the
dōu dálaahn yeh ga? time?

e. jíng, 'fix,' 'do,' 'make,' may be the first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound, substituting for a verb of specific means.

Ex: 1. chóhlaahn = [sit-break], i.e., 'tear (cloth by sitting it out),' 'break (a chair by sitting in it),' etc.

jínglaahn = [make-break], i.e., 'break' (without saying how)

2. chóhcháauh = [sit-wrinkled], i.e. 'get (something) wrinkled by sitting in it'

jíngcháauh = [make-wrinkled], i.e., 'get something wrinkled' (without saying how)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| + 1. a. <u>faahntēng</u> | <u>dining room</u> |
| b. hái faahntēng | in the dining room |
| c. hái faahntēng sihk faahn | is eating in the dining room |
| d. m̀hái faahntēng sihk faahn | isn't eating in the dining room |
| e. hái m̀hái faahntēng sihk faahn a? | is (he) eating in the dining room? |
| + 2. a. <u>chyùhfóng</u> | <u>kitchen</u> |
| b. hái chyùhfóng | in the kitchen |
| c. hái chyùhfóng gódouh | there in the kitchen |
| d. hái chyùhfóng gódouh jyú faahn | is in the kitchen there cooking dinner. |
| + 3. a. <u>seuihfóng</u> | <u>bedroom</u> |
| b. go seuihfóng | a bedroom |
| c. géi(dō) go seuihfóng a? | how many bedrooms? |
| d. yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a? | has how many bedrooms? |
| e. Néih ngūkkéi yáuh géi(dō) go seuihfóng a? | How many bedrooms does your house have? |
| + 4. a. <u>syùfóng</u> | [book-room] <u>study</u> |
| b. hái syùfóng | in the study |
| c. hái syùfóng tái boují | in the study reading the newspaper |
| d. Kéuih hái syùfóng tái boují | He is in the study reading the paper. |
| e. Kéuih hái syùfóng táiháh boují a, duhkáh syù a, séháh jih a, gám lá. | In his study he reads the newspaper, studies, writes, that sort of things. |
| + 5. a. <u>lauhdài</u> | <u>leave (something) behind</u> |
| b. lauhdài hái bási | left on the bus |
| c. lauhdài hái bási tím | left it on the bus |
| d. Bá jē lauhdài hái bási tím. | The umbrella (I) left on the bus! |
| e. Aiyah! Bá jē lauhdài hái bási tím! | Aiyah! The umbrella (I) left on the bus! |
| 6. a. lohkyúh | to rain [fall-rain] |

- b. hóu síu lohk yúh
seldom rains
- c. Səhp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh
seldom rains in October
- d. Hái Hèunggóng Səhp yuht hóu síu lohk yúh.
It seldom rains in October in Hong Kong.
- e. Tèngginwah hái Hèunggóng Səhp yuht hóusíu lohkyúh haih mhhaih a?
I hear that in Hong Kong it seldom rains in October-- is that right?
- + 7. a. tokpún
tray
- b. go tokpún
a/the tray
- c. go tokpún hái bīndouh a?
Where is the tray?
- d. go tokpún jái hái bīndouh a?
Where (should I) put the tray? or
Where has the tray been put?
- e. go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh a?
Where has the tray been put?
- f. Go tokpún jàijó hái bīndouh- ngóh tái mhdóu ge.
Where has the tray been put- I don't see it. (or
Where did you put the tray?)
- + 8. a. syútóí
desk
- b. hái syútóí
on the desk
- c. hái syútóí gódouh
on the desk there
- d. jàijó hái syútóí gódouh
has been put there on the desk
- e. Tokpún jàijó hái syútóí gódouh.
The tray (I) put on the desk there. (or--in another context--this could be a command: Put the tray on the desk there.)
9. a. chùng chàh chēutlaih
make tea and bring it out
- b. chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih
make a pot of tea and bring it out
- c. gùngyáhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.
the servant made a pot of tea and brought it out.
- d. giu gùngyáhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.
tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
- e. yahphei giu gùngyáhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.
go in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
- f. ngóh yahphei giu gùngyáhn chùng wùh chàh chēutlaih.
I went in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

g. Dǎng ngóh yahphei giu gùng-yáhn chùng wùh chàh chéut-láih.

I'll go in and tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

2. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a?
Where is the veranda? | 1. Kèhláu hái bīndouh a? |
| 2. /haaktēng/ | 2. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a? |
| 3. /chisó/ | 3. Chisó hái bīndouh a? |
| 4. /faahntēng/ | 4. Faahntēng hái bīndouh a?
Where is the dining room? |
| 5. /seuihfóng/ | 5. Seuihfóng hái bīndouh a?
Where is the bedroom? |
| 6. /haaktēng/ | 6. Haaktēng hái bīndouh a? |
| 7. /syùfóng/ | 7. Syùfóng hái bīndouh a?
Where is the study? |
| 8. /chyùhfóng/ | 8. Chyùhfóng hái bīndouh a?
Where is the kitchen? |
| + 9. / <u>chùnglèuhngfóng</u> /
(bathroom; i.e. room for
bathing) | 9. Chùnglèuhngfóng hái bīndouh
a? |
| + 10. /Néih gāan <u>fóng</u> /
(your <u>room</u>) | 10. Néih gāan fóng hái bīndouh
a? |

3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bún syù hái syùfóng. T: The book is in the study.

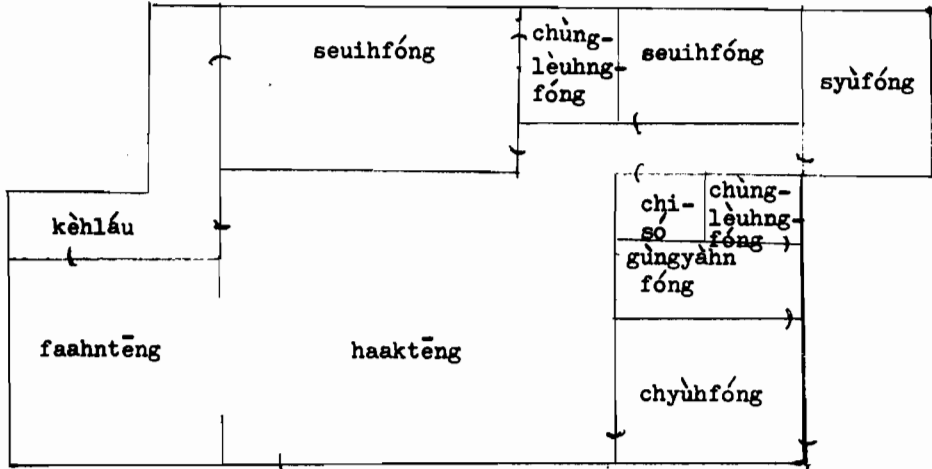
S: Jài bún syù hái
syùfóng lā.

S: Please put the book in the
study.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Jek chàhbūi hái ngóh nīdouh. | 1. Jài jek chàhbūi hái ngóh
nīdouh lā. |
| 2. Wùh chàh hái haaktēng yahp-
bihn. | 2. Jài wuh chàh hái haaktēng
yahpbihn lā. |
| 3. Jèung tóih hái kèhláu chéutbihn. | 3. Jài jèung tóih hái kèhláu
chéutbihn lā. |
| 4. Deui hàaih hái jèung yí hauh-
bihn.
The shoes are behind the
chair. | 4. Jài deui hàaih hái jèung
yí hauhbihn lā.
Please put the shoes
behind the chair. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. Jèung boují hái chisó yahpbihn. | 5. Jài jèung boují hái chisó yahpbihn lā. |
| 6. Go tokpún hái tói douh. | 6. Jài go tokpún hái tói douh lā. |
| + 7. Dǐ sàam hái <u>chòhng</u> gódouh.
(bed) | 7. Jài dǐ sàam hái chòhng gódouh lā.
Put the clothes there on the bed, would you. |

4. Expansion Drill



Ex: T: Nǐng chēutheui kèhláu lā. /dǐ chàh/ T: Take (it) out on the veranda.

S: Nǐng dǐ chàh chēutheui kèhláu lā. S: Take the tea out on the veranda.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐng chēutheui haaktēng lā.
/dǐ búi-díp/ | 1. Nǐng dǐ búi-díp chēutheui haaktēng lā. |
| 2. Nǐng chēutheui kèhláu lā.
/jèung yí/ | 2. Nǐng jèung yí chēutheui kèhláu lā. |
| 3. Nǐng chēutheui chyùhfóng lā.
/go tokpún/ | 3. Nǐng go tokpún chēutheui chyùhfóng lā. |
| 4. Nǐng chēutlaih kèhláu lā.
/jèung boují/ | 4. Nǐng jèung boují chēutlaih kèhláu lā. |
| 5. Nǐng séuhngheui lāuhseuhng lā.
/go sām-gá/ | 5. Nǐng go sām-gá séuhngheui lāuhseuhng lā. |

6. Níng lohkhéui làuhhah lā.
/dī chíjǐ/
7. Níng lohklàih mùnhháu lā.
/dī syù/

6. Níng dī chíjǐ lohkhéui làuh-
hah lā.
7. Níng dī syù lohklàih mùnhháu
lā.

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló gauh
fàangáan heui chyùhfóng
gódouh lā.
2. /dī wúndihp/faahntēng/
3. /wùh chàh/haaktēng/
4. /tou búi-díp/chyùhfóng/
5. /jèung boujǐ/kèhláu/
6. /nǐdī sāamgá/seuihfóng/

1. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
gauh fàangáan heui chyùh-
fóng gódouh lā.
2. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
dī wúndihp heui faahntēng
gódouh lā.
3. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
wùh chàh heui haaktēng
gódouh lā.
4. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
tou búi-díp heui chyùh-
fóng gódouh lā.
5. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
jèung boujǐ heui kèhláu
gódouh lā.
6. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh ló
nǐdī sāamgá heui seuihfóng
gódouh lā.

6. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih wah tǐng-
yaht wúih m̀h-
wúih yiht a?
/nod/

T: Do you think it's likely to be
hot tomorrow?

S: Ngóh wah tǐngyaht
yātdihng wúih
yiht ge.

S: I think it certainly will.

2. T: Néih tǐngjiu wúih
m̀hwúih heui
ngànhòhng a?
/shake/

T: Are you likely to go to the
bank tomorrow morning?

S: Ngóh tǐngjiu m̀h-
wúih heui ngành-
hòhng.

S: It's very unlikely that I'll
go to the bank tomorrow
morning.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Néih wah nīpáai wúih mhwúih dung a? /shake/
Do you think it will be cold these few days? | 1. Ngóh wah nīpáai mhwúih dung.
I don't think it will be cold these few days. |
| 2. Néih hahjau wúih mhwúih heui taam keuih a? /nod/ | 2. Ngóh hahjau yātdihng wúih heui ge. |
| 3. Néih nīgo láihbaai wúih mhwúih chéng sík faahn a? /wah mhdihng/ | 3. Wah mhdihng bo. Ngóh nī go láihbaai waahkjé wúih chéng, waahkjé m̄h chéng. |
| 4. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau wúih mhwúih dá m̄hjáuk a? /wah mhdihng/ | 4. Wah mhdihng bo. Kéuih tīngyaht hahjau waahkjé wúih dá, waahkjé m̄hdá . |
| 5. Néih gāmyaht hahjau wúih mhwúih sái sām a? /shake/ | 5. Ngóh gāmyaht hahjau mhwúih sái sām. |
| 6. Néih gāmmáahn wúih mhwúih tái dihnsih a? /nod/ | 6. Ngóh gāmmáahn yātdihng wúih tái dihnsih ge. |

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: tong kwáhn

T: press a skirt

S: M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh tongjò tīuh kwáhn lā.

S: Please press this skirt for me.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. sái deui maht | 1. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó deui maht lā. |
| 2. hòì go chēung | 2. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh hòì jò go chēung lā. |
| + 3. <u>hòì douh m̄hñ</u>
<u>hòì = open</u>

<u>douh = M. for doors</u>

<u>m̄hñ = door</u> | 3. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh hòìjò douh m̄hñ lā.
<u>Please open</u> the door for me. |
| 4. sái jek b̄i | 4. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh sáijó jek b̄i lā. |
| 5. maat jèung tóì | 5. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh maat-jò jèung tóì lā. |
| 6. chùng wùh chàh | 6. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh chùng-jò wùh chàh lā. |
| 7. gwa tīuh fu | 7. M̄ngòì néih tùhng ngóh gwa jò tīuh fu lā. |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 8. sàan go chēung | 8. M̀h̀gòì n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh sàan-jó go chēung lā. |
| + 9. <u>sàan</u> douh <u>m̀h̀n</u> | 9. M̀h̀gòì n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh sàanjó douh m̀h̀n lā. |

8. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: N̄idouh yáuh j̀eung
yāt baak man jí.
/cheung/ | T: Here is a \$100 bill. |
| S: N̄idouh yáuh j̀eung
yāt baak man jí,
m̀h̀gòì n̄ih t̀h̀ng
ngòh cheungjó
kéuih lā. | S: Here is a \$100 bill, please
change it for me. |
| 1. N̄idouh yáuh t̀h̀h kwáhn. /tong/ | 1. N̄idouh yáuh t̀h̀h kwáhn,
m̀h̀gòì n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh
tongjó kéuih lā. |
| 2. N̄idouh yáuh gih̄n s̄am. /sái/ | 2. N̄idouh yáuh gih̄n s̄am, m̀h̀gòì
n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh s̄aijó
kéuih lā. |
| 3. N̄idouh dóusé séui. /maat/ | 3. N̄idouh dóusé séui, m̀h̀gòì
n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh maatjó
kéuih lā. |
| 4. N̄idouh yáuh dī yú. /jyú/ | 4. N̄idouh yáuh dī yú, m̀h̀gòì
n̄ih t̀h̀ng ngòh jyújó
kéuih lā. |

9. Alteration Drill: Change ning...heui to jài...hái

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Néih ningjó dī chin
heui b̄ndouh a? | T: Where did you take the money? |
| S: Néih jàijó dī chin
hái b̄ndouh a? | S: Where did you put the money? |
| 1. Néih ningjó t̀h̀h m̀uhgān
heui b̄ndouh a? | 1. Néih jàijó t̀h̀h m̀uhgān
hái b̄ndouh a? |
| 2. Néih ningjó gauh f̀angāan heui
b̄ndouh a? | 2. Néih jàijó gauh f̀angāan
hái b̄ndouh a? |
| 3. Néih ningjó dī gāng heui b̄n-
douh a? | 3. Néih jàijó dī gāng hái
b̄ndouh a? |

+ 4. Néih nǐngjǎ jèung jǎu bou
heui bǐndouh a?
(morning paper)

5. Néih nǐngjǎ wùh chàh heui
bǐndouh a?

4. Néih jǎijǎ jèung jǎu bou
háih bǐndouh a?

5. Néih jǎijǎ wùh chàh háih
bǐndouh a?

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Heui chāansāt máaih
dǐ bēng làih sihk.

T: I'm going to the restaurant
to buy some cookies to eat.

S: Dǎng ngóh heui chāan-
sat máaih dǐ bēng
+ lǎih sihk ji dāk.

S: I'll go to the restaurant
to buy some cookies to eat,
that'll do it. (dissatisfied,
but thinking of a solution
to the problem.)

(lǎih = for the purpose
of, in order to, to)

1. Heui syùfóng ló bún syù làih
tái.

1. Dǎng ngóh heui syùfóng ló
bun syù làih tái ji dāk.

2. Heui kèhláu ló jèung yí làih
chóh.

2. Dǎng ngóh heui kèhláu ló
jèung yí làih chóh ji dāk.

3. Heui chyùhfóng ló bùi dung
séui làih yám.

3. Dǎng ngóh heui chyùhfóng ló
bui dung séui làih yám
ji dāk.

4. Heui chisó ló faai bou làih
maat.

4. Dǎng ngóh heui chisó ló
faai bou làih maat ji dāk.

5. Heui seuihfóng ló tíuh kwáhn
lǎih tong.

5. Dǎng ngóh heui seuihfóng ló
tíuh kwáhn làih tong ji
dāk.

6. Heui seuihfóng ló go sàamgá
lǎih gwa.

6. Dǎng ngóh heui seuihfóng
ló go sàamgá làih gwa
ji dāk.

Comment: lǎih as used above joins two VP, to form the con-
struction: VP₁ in order to VP₂. That this is not a
heuilǎih use of lǎih is demonstrated in the following
sentence:

Béi jèung bouji
lǎih táiháh.

Give (me) the paper to read.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>5. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chi jīnglaah̄ttaatjō mēyeh a? /t̄iuh kwāhn/
What did you get dirty this time?</p> <p>6. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chi jīngchāauh̄jō mēyeh a? /t̄iuh fu/
What did you get wrinkled this time?</p> <p>7. Dīngáai gam m̄hsíusām ga, gām-chi jīnglaahn̄jō mēyeh a? /jēung chōhng/</p> | <p>5. Deuih̄m̄h̄jyuh, ngōh jīng-laahttaatjō t̄iuh kwāhn.</p> <p>6. Deuih̄m̄h̄jyuh, ngōh jīngchāauh̄jō t̄iuh fu.</p> <p>7. Deuih̄m̄h̄jyuh, ngōh jīnglaahn̄jō jēung chōhng.</p> |
|---|---|

13. Transformation Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then transform according to the English instructions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Kéuih nīngjō t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong.
He has taken (or he took) the skirt to be ironed. (or to iron)</p> <p>2. /he didn't/</p> <p>3. /has he...yet?/</p> <p>4. /not yet/</p> <p>5. /is he going to?/</p> <p>6. /he has, hasn't he?/</p> | <p>1. Kéuih nīngjō t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong.</p> <p>2. Kéuih móuh nīng t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong.</p> <p>3. Kéuih nīngjō t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong meih a?</p> <p>4. Kéuih meih nīng t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong.</p> <p>5. Kéuih nīng m̄hning t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong a?</p> <p>6. Kéuih nīngjō t̄iuh kwāhn chēutheui tong àh.</p> |
|--|---|

14. Response Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: T: Aiyá! Lohkyúh t̄im bo! /yúhlāu/
S: Hóuchóí ngōh daaijō yúhlāu jē.</p> <p>1. Aiyá! Dungjō t̄im bo! /lāang-sāam/
Oh-oh, it's gotten cold.</p> | <p>T: Oh-oh, it's raining!</p> <p>S: At least it's lucky I brought my raincoat.</p> <p>1. Hóuchóí ngōh daaijō lāang-sāam jē.</p> |
|---|--|

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Aiya! Mhfaandāk ūkkéi síhk
ngaan tím bo! /ngaan jau/ | 2. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó ngaan
(jau) jē. |
| 3. Aiya! Ngáhnhòng sàanjó mùhn
tím bo! /chín/ | 3. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó chín jē. |
| 4. Aiya! Yiu béi yih baak mán tím
bo. /chín/ | 4. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó jē. |
| 5. Aiya! Lohkyúh tím bo! /jē/ | 5. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó jē jē. |
| 6. Aiya! Kéuih móuh chín jáau
tím bo! /sáanjí/ | 6. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó sáanjí
jē. |
| 7. Aiya! Nídouh móuh syù tái tím
bo! /boují/ | 7. Hóuchóí ngóh daaijó boují
jē. |

Comment: jē, 'merely,' 'not much,' here forms a set with hóuchóí 'fortunately,' 'luckily' to suggest: though something else would have been still better, from this minor aspect it's a good thing.

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ní tíuh kwàhn taai
dyún laak.
/wuhn/chèuhngdí/

T: This skirt is too short.
/exchange/longer/

S: Ní tíuh kwàhn taai
dyún laak--
wuhngwo tíuh
chèuhngdí ge lā.

S: This skirt is too short--
please change it for another
longer one.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ní wùh chàh taai dung laak.
/chùng/yiht/
This pot of tea is too cold. | 1. Ní wùh chàh taai dung laak--
chùnggwo wùh yihdí ge lā.
This pot of tea is too cold--
make another hot one. |
| 2. Ní gihn sēutsāam taai lahttaat
laak. /jeuk/gònjehng/ | 2. Ní gihn sēutsāam taai laht-
taat laak--jeukgwo gihn
gònjehngdí ge lā. |
| 3. Ní bún syù taai nàahn laak.
/ló/yihdí/ | 3. Ní bún syù taai nàahn laak--
lógwo bún yihdí ge lā. |
| 4. Ní go tokpún taai sai laak.
/ning daaihdi/ | 4. Ní go tokpún taai sai laak--
ninggwo jèung daaihdi
ge lā. |
| 5. Ní tou gāsi taai yáih laak.
/máaih/leng/ | 5. Ní tou gāsi taai yáih laak--
máaihgwo tou lengdí ge
lā. |

Comment: The sentence suffix lā, raised intonation for polite suggestion may also be rendered la with mid intonation, giving a connotation of friendly advice.

16. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu
dóusé dī chàh a!

T: Be careful, don't spill the
tea.

S: Ngóh hóu síusām ge
la, m̀h̀wúih dóusé
gé.

S: I'm being very careful, I
won't spill it.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dálaahn dī
būi a! | 1. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih dálaahn gé. |
| 2. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu jinglaahn
dī dīp a!
Be careful not to break the
dishes. | 2. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih jinglaahn gé. |
| 3. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu sélaahn jí
bāt a! | 3. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih sélaahn gé. |
| 4. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu jinglaahттаат
gihñ lāangsām a! | 4. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih jinglaahттаат gé. |
| 5. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dóusé dī tòng
a! | 5. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih dóusé gé. |
| 6. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu dálaahn go
bīu a! | 6. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih dálaahn gé. |
| 7. Hóusēng a, m̀h̀hóu chóhcháuh
tíuh kwáhn a!
Be careful, don't get the
skirt wrinkled. | 7. Ngóh hóu síusām ge la,
m̀h̀wúih chóhcháuh gé. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) gwoláih nībihñ = come over here
- 2) fòngbihñ = convenient
- 3) māt + sentence = How come ...?
- 4) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)
- 5) hái douh = here: and have it here
- 6) ngóh gàan fóng = my room
- 7) m̀h̀hahh = if not, otherwise
- 8) sínji = only
- 9) góndākchit = there's enough time or You can make it or
If you hurry you'll make it.

10) deihhá = floor

11) geidāk = remember

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Do you think it'll rain today?
2. Do you suppose it's going to be cold today?
3. My cigarettes have vanished!
4. Please put the teapot on the tray.
5. I left my book on the bus!
6. Take care! Don't spill the beer!
7. It looks like rain.
8. I left the newspaper on the veranda.
9. Where shall I put the clothes? (says the laundress)
10. Could you please tell me what time it is now?
11. There aren't any towels in the bathroom.
12. Your shirt is dirty.
13. How come you're not drinking your tea?
14. This skirt is too long.
15. Aiyá! The weather has gotten cold!
16. Where's Younger Brother?
17. What did you break this time?

B. And he replies:

1. It's not likely to rain.
2. It's likely to be colder today than yesterday.
3. They're there on the table.
4. Where'd you put the tray?
5. Call the bus company and ask if they found it.
6. Wah! (or Aiyá!) I spilled it! Quick, bring a cloth to wipe it up!
7. I'll go close the windows.
8. I'll go get it for you.
9. Put them on the bed.
10. I'm sorry, I didn't wear a watch today.
11. A Sei, would you please take some towels into the bathroom.
12. I'll change into a clean one.
13. Because it's already cold.
14. Well then, wear a shorter one.
15. Fortunately I brought a sweater.
16. He's in the living room reading the paper.
17. Just a water glass, that's all.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 24

1. Baihlaak!	ex: exclamation of annoyance
2. Baihlok!	ex: var. of Baihlaak!
3. chēung	n: window
4. chòhng	n: bed
5. chùng	v: infuse
6. chùng chàh	vo: make tea
7. chùnglèuhngfóng	n: bathroom; i.e. room for bathing
8. chyùhngfóng	n: kitchen
9. daai bīu	vo: wear a watch
10. dīt	v: drop
11. ditlaahn	v: break by dropping [drop-break]
12. dòuh	m: M. for doors
13. dóusé	v: spill
14. faahntēng	n: dining room
15. faai	n/m: piece, M. for dishcloth
16. faaidí	adv: hurry and...; ...right away
17. fóng	n: room
18. gānchi	Tw: this time
19. <u>V</u> gwo <u>M</u>	Ph: <u>V</u> another <u>M</u> , another as replacement for original one
20. haaktēng	n: living room
21. hòih mùhn	vo: open the door(s)
22. hóuchóh	Ph: luckily, 'Thank goodness'
23. Hóuchoi...jē	Ph: Fortunately..., at least
24. Hóusēng!	Ph: 'Be careful'
25. jái	v: put, place
26. ...ji dāk.	Ph: ...that'll do it. only then will the requirements be satisfied.
27. jóu bou	n: morning paper
28. kàhlán	n: veranda, terrace
29. laahn	v/adj: break, broken
30. làih	v: to, in order to, for the purpose of
31. lauhdài	v: leave/left (something) behind
32. lohkyúh	vo: to rain

33. maat	v: wipe, polish; also, to wet-mop
34. mùhn	n: door
35. sàan	v: close, shut
36. sàan mùhn	vo: close the door(s)
37. seuihfóng	n: bedroom
38. syùfóng	n: study
39. syùtói	n: desk
40. Taaitáai	ta: here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy.' term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house.
41. tokpún	n: tray
42. wùh	n/m: pot; container Measure
43. wúih	auxV: likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā

yíhwàih

think, have the impression
(sometimes this proves to
be 'mistakenly had the
impression')

Ngóh júhng yíhwàih néih fanjó
tím.

And I thought you had already
gone to bed.

Māt + sentence

How come?+ sentence

Māt juhng m̀hfan a?

How come you still haven't gone
to bed?

Jái

ngáahnfan

sleepy

sèuiyíhn

although

sèuiyíhn..., daahnhaih...

although ..., still ...

fanjeuhk

get to sleep, fall asleep

fanm̀hjeuhk

can't get to sleep

Sèuiyínn ngáahnfan, daahnhaih

Although I was sleepy, I still

fanm̀hjeuhk.

couldn't get to sleep.

Màhmā

tóuhngoh

hungry

Tóuh m̀htóuhngoh a?

Are you hungry?

Séung m̀hséung síhk dī yéh nē?

Would you like something to
eat?

Jái

ngohngódei

a bit hungry

Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódei.

I do feel a bit hungry.

Màhmā

Néih júngyi síhk mēyéh a?

What would you like to eat?

Jái

mēyéh

anything, everything;
whatever

Mēyéh dōu dāk. syutgwaih Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mātýéh sín.	Anything is OK. refrigerator I'll see what's in the refrigerator first.
(He looks in the refrigerator, and takes out an orange:)	
laahnjó	spoiled, rotten (of perishables)
Yí!--ní go cháang laahnjó laak. <u>Máhmā</u>	Whew!--this orange is rotten.
dám Gám, dámjó kéuih lā. hùhng hùhng pihnggwó sóng tíh	throw out, discard Well then, throw it out. red red apples crisp sweet
Dí hùhng pihnggwó yauh sóng yauh tíh--síhk go lā!	The red apples are crisp and sweet--eat one!
<u>Jái</u>	
Hóu aak. guih Ngóh hóu gui h a--ngóh heui fan la.	OK. tired I'm tired--I'm going to bed.
<u>Máhmā</u>	
Haih lòh. hóu + verb phrase + la hóu heui fan la yùhgwó m̀hhaih <u>or</u> m̀hhaih jingsáhn	That's right. 'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion It's a good idea to go to bed. if not, otherwise energy, health
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó m̀hhaih, t̀ngyaht néih jauh m̀hgau jingsáhn ge la.	You'd better go to bed-- otherwise you won't have enough energy tomorrow.

Jái

Tíngjiu m̀hsái gam jóu giu ngóh.

You don't have to call me so early tomorrow.

Màhmā

Gám, géidím giu néih a?

Well, what time shall I call you?

Jái

géidím

anytime, whenever

Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngóh lā.

Call me when you get up.

[Whenever you get up, call me at that time.]

chih

unpunctual, late (for an appointment)

chih dou

arrive late

Daahnhaih m̀hhou taai ngaan-- ngóh m̀hséung chih dou.

But not too late--I don't want to get to work late.

B. Recapitulation:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhmā

Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih fanjó tim.

I thought you had already gone to bed.

Māt juhng m̀hfan a?

How come you still haven't gone to bed?

Jái

Sèuiyihn ngáanfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.

I was sleepy, but I couldn't get to sleep.

Màhmā

Tóuh m̀htóuhngoh a?

Are you hungry?

Séung m̀hséung sikh dī yéh nē?

Would you like something to eat?

Jái

Ngóh gokdāk ngohngódei.

I do feel a bit hungry.

Màhmā

Néih jùngyi sikh mēyéh a?

What would you like to eat?

Jái

Mēyéh dōu dāk.
Táiháh syutgwaih yáuh mēyéh sin.
Yí!--ní go cháang laahnjó laak.

Anything is OK.
I'll see what's in the
refrigerator first.
Whew--this orange is rotten.

Màhmā

Gám, dámjó kéuih lā.
Dí hùhng pihnggwó yauh sóng
yauh tihm--sìhk go lā.

Well then, throw it out.
The red apples are crisp and
sweet--have one!

Jái

Hóu aak.
Ngóh hóu guih a--ngóh heui
fan la.

OK.
I'm tired--I'm going to bed.

Màhmā

Haih lòh.
Hóu heui fan la--yùhgwó mhhaih,
tingyaht néih jauh mhgau
jìngsàhn ge la.

That's right.
It's a good idea to go to bed--
otherwise you won't have
enough energy tomorrow.

Jái

Tingjiu mhsái gam jóu giu ngóh.

You don't have to call me so
early tomorrow.

Màhmā

Gám, géidím giu néih a?

What time shall I call you?

Jái

Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím
giu ngóh lā.

Call me whenever you get up.

Daahnaih mhhóu taai ngaan--
ngóh mhséung chíh dou.

But not too late--I don't want
to get to work late.

II. NOTES

1. yíhwàih 1) '(mistakenly) thought'
 2) 'to be under the impression that...', i.e., think (without being entirely certain)

Ex: 1) 'mistakenly thought'

A: Mhóu nǐng tǐuh kwáhn
 chéutheui-- ngóh yiu
 jeuk ga.

Don't take that skirt away--
 I want to wear it.

B: Deuimhjyuh-- ngóh yíhwàih
 tǐuh kwáhn yiu sai ge.

Excuse me-- I thought the skirt
 was to be washed. [mistakenly
 thought the skirt was
 wished-to-be-washed thing]

(See BC and Drill 10)

Ex: 2) 'think (without being entirely certain)'
 'to be under the impression that...'

Ngóh yíhwàih kéuih láihbaailuhk
 mhfaan gung.

I think he
 doesn't work on Saturdays.

2. Sèuiyíhn...., daahnhaih... 'Although..., still...;' 'though..., still...;' 'Although..... nevertheless....'

This is another set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a two-clause sentence. The order is irreversible. Use of both sèuiyíhn and daahnhaih in the sentence is preferred.

Ex: Sèuiyíhn ngáanfan, daahn-
 haih fanmhjeuhk. Though I was sleepy, I still
 couldn't get to sleep.

(See BC and Drill 12)

3. Duplication of adjectives

- a. A duplicated adjective with the suffix -déi, is an adjective pattern meaning 'a little bit Adjective,' 'fairly Adjective.'

Ex: 1. chéuhng long
 chéuhngchéungdéi fairly long
 2. hùhng red
 hùhnghúngdéi having some red color (i.e., having red
 in it, but not red all over)
 3. laaht peppery
 laahtláatdéi a bit peppery

- b. With the exception of adjectives in high level and high falling tones, the second syllable in the duplicated adjective pattern is in the high rising tone. The second syllable of an adjective of high level or high falling tone retains its ordinary tone shape in the duplicated pattern.

Ex: hl:	sāpsāpdéi	a bit damp
hf:	syūnsyündéi	a bit sour
hr:	fúfúdéi	a bit bitter
ml:	dungdúngdéi	a bit cold
lf:	hùnhgúngdéi	having some red color
lr:	chúhngchúngdéi	somewhat heavy
ll:	ngohngódéi	a little hungry

(See BC and Drill 2)

4. Sentence suffix lòh = making a bid for sympathy

Frankly this is just a guess, but it seems that the speaker uses sentence suffix lòh to make a bid for the addressee's sympathy.

Ex: 1. A:	Bīngō dālaahn ga?	Who broke it?
B:	Kéuih lòh.	He did. (Don't look at me that way.)
2. A:	Néih séung fan làh?	You're going to bed, are you?
B:	Haih lòh. Ngóh hóu ngáahnfan laak.	That's right-- I'm very sleep. (poor me)

(See BC)

5. Hóu V la. = 'it would be a good idea to V,' 'perhaps you ought to V,'
'hadn't you better V?'

- a. Hóu V is an imperative form: 'you'd better V.' The sentence suffix la connoting friendly advice makes the tone of the imperative helpful rather than threatening.

Ex: Hóu heui fan la--	You'd better go to bed--
yuhgwó mhhaih, tīngyaht	otherwise you won't have
néih jauh mhgau jingsahn	enough energy tomorrow.
ge laak.	

(See BC and Drill 4)

- b. The sentence suffix of the imperative Hóu V can be the raised intonation lā, polite but more urgent than la.

(See Drill 3)

- c. Hóu V 'you ought to V' is the opposite of Mhóu V, 'don't V.'

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: 1. Hóu yám dī gāfē la--
 yùhgwó m̀hahì, jà chē
 gójān jauh wúih
 fanjeuhk ge la.</p> | <p>You ought to drink some coffee,
 otherwise you might fall
 asleep driving.</p> |
| <p>2. Mhóu yám gāfē-- yùhgwó
 m̀hahì, jauh fanm̀hjeuhk
 ge la.</p> | <p>You'd better not drink any
 coffee, otherwise you might
 not be able to get to sleep.</p> |

6. jìngsàhn, 1) (N) 'energy'
2) (Adj) 'feel well'

jìngsàhn is both a noun and an adjective, and patterns differently in the two forms.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Ex: 1. Kéuih yāt dī jìngsàhn
 dōu mouh.</p> | <p>He doesn't have one little bit
 of energy.</p> |
| <p>2. Kéuih m̀hjìngsàhn.</p> | <p>He isn't feeling well.</p> |

7. yùhgwó m̀hahì 'otherwise,' 'if not'

yùhgwó m̀hahì reduces also to simply m̀hahì, with no change in meaning. The two are used interchangeably.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: Hóu heui fan la-- (yùhgwó)
 m̀hahì, tìngyāht neih jauh
 m̀hgau jìngsàhn ge la.</p> | <p>You'd better get on to bed--
 if not, you won't have enough
 energy tomorrow.</p> |
|---|--|

(See BC and Drill 4)

8. Question-words used as Non-questions.

- a. Question-words in Cantonese also serve as non-question substantives whose meanings derive from their basic question-word meanings:

A QW Subject + dōu Predicate sentence can be in Topic:Comment form.

Ex:	Topic	Comment		
		Subject	Predicate	
	Kéuih	bīngō	dōu jūngyi.	[(In regard to) him, whoever, always likes.] i.e., He likes everybody.

2. QW, jauh QW = whoever, whenever, however much, etc.

In this pattern the QW is in both clauses of a double-clause sentence.

Ex:	1. Néih jūngyi <u>mēyéh</u> , jauh máaih <u>mēyéh</u> la.	[You like what, then buy what.] i.e., Buy whatever you like.
	2. Néih géidím héisàn, jauh géidím giu ngòh lā.	[You what time get up, then what call me.] i.e., Call me whenever you get up.

(See BC and Drills 6, 7, 8, 9)

The jauh in the second clause follows the QW of that clause if the QW is the subject of the second clause.

Ex: QW, QW jauh...

Ngòh jídou bīngō, bīngō	[I point to who, who then speaks.]
jauh góng.	i.e., Whoever I point to should respond.

(See Classroom Phrases, Lesson 3)

3. Negative Verb + non-question QW = not anything, anyone, anywhere, etc.

This pattern has the non-question QW as part of the predicate, following a negative verb.

Ex: 1. Ngòh móuh heui bīndouh.	I didn't go anywhere. <u>or</u> : I didn't go anywhere in particular--no place special.
2. A: Jauh mēyéh a?	Wha'cha doing?
B: Móuh mēyeh.	Nothing special. [Not (doing) anything.]
3. A: Máaih bīn gihn a?	Which one are you going to buy? (said to friend you are shopping with)
B: Mmáaih bīn gihn.	I'm not going to buy any.

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Dī tòng taai yiht
laak.

T: The soup is too hot.

+ S: Dī tòng yiht
gwotàuh laak.
Adj + gwotàuh =
excessively Adj

S: The soup is much too hot.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Dī cháang taai gwai laak. | 1. Dī cháang gwai gwotàuh laak. |
| 2. Dī bou taai yáih laak. | 2. Dī bou yáih gwotàuh laak. |
| 3. Dī tói taai gòu laak. | 3. Dī tói gòu gwotàuh laak. |
| + 4. Dī pihnggwó taai <u>syùn</u> laak.
The apples are too <u>sour</u> . | 4. Dī pihnggwó syùn gwotàuh
laak. |
| + 5. Dī ngàuhyuhk taai <u>sàang</u> laak.
The beef is too <u>raw</u> .
<u>sàang</u> = <u>underdone (of cooked
things); green (of fruits)</u> | 5. Dī ngàuhyuhk sàang gwotàuh
laak. |
| + 6. Dī yú taai <u>hàahm</u> laak.
The fish is too <u>salty</u> . | 6. Dī yú hàahm gwotàuh laak. |
| + 7. Dī hā taai <u>suhk</u> laak.
The prawns are overcooked.
[done, cooked]
<u>suhk</u> = <u>done (of cooked things);
ripe (of fruits)</u> | 7. Dī hā suhk gwotàuh laak. |
| + 8. Dī gafē taai <u>fú</u> laak.
The coffee is too strong
[bitter]. | 8. Dī gafē fú gwotàuh laak. |
| 9. Gihn sēutsāam taai hùhng laak. | 9. Gihn sēutsāam hùhng gwotàuh
laak. |
| + 10. Tíuh kwáhn taai <u>làahm</u> laak.
The skirt is too <u>blue</u> . | 10. Tíuh kwáhn làahm gwotàuh
laak. |
| + 11. Dī chēunglím taai <u>luhk</u> laak.
The curtains are too <u>green</u> . | 11. Dī chēunglím luhk gwotàuh
laak. |
| + 12. Dī jí taai <u>wòhng</u> laak.
The papers are too <u>yellow</u> . | 12. Dī jí wòhng gwotàuh laak. |
| + 13. Dī choi taai <u>laaht</u> laak.
The food is too <u>peppery</u> . | 13. Dī choi laaht gwotàuh laak. |
| + 14. Dī pihnggwó taai <u>suhk</u> laak.
[ripe]
The apples are over-ripe. | 14. Dī pihnggwó suhk gwotàuh
laak. |

Comment: gwotàuh has a variant pronunciation, gwótàuh.

2. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh séung máaih
gàan daaih ngūk.

T: I want to buy a big house.

S: Ngóh séung máaih
gàan daaih-
dáaidéi ge ngūk.

S: I want to buy a fairly big house.

1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùng
kwàhn.
I want to buy a red skirt.

1. Ngóh séung máaih tìuh hùng-
hùngdéi ge kwàhn.
I want to buy a skirt
that has some red in it.

2. Ngóh séung síhk faai hàahm béng.
I want to eat a salty cake.

2. Ngóh séung síhk faai hàahm-
háamdéi ge béng.
I want to eat a cake that
is a bit salty.

3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yíht chàh.

3. Ngóh séung yám bùi yíhtyít-
déi ge chàh.
I want to drink a cup of
tea that is hot (but not
too hot).

4. Ngóh séung máaih go sai syut-
gwaih.

4. Ngóh séung máaih go saisái-
déi ge syutgwaih.

5. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī syùn yéh.

5. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī syūn-
syúndéi ge yéh.

6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dung yéh.

6. Ngóh jùngyi yám dī dung-
dúngdéi ge yéh.

7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhng bou.

7. Ngóh séung máaih dī pèhng-
péngdéi ge bou.

8. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī laaht yéh.

8. Ngóh jùngyi síhk dī laaht-
lāatdéi ge yéh.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih hóu fan lā.

1. Néih hóu fan lā.

2. /heui/

2. Néih hóu heui lā.

3. /héi sàh/

3. Néih hóu héi sàh lā.

4. /síhk jóuchāan/

4. Néih hóu síhk jóuchāan lā.

5. /fàan gùng/
6. /tái yīsāng/
7. /wuhn sām/

5. Néih hóu fàan gùng lā.
6. Néih hóu tái yīsāng lā.
7. Néih hóu wuhn sām lā.

4. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Néih hóu faaidí heui T: You'd better hurry and go to
ngàhnhòhng ló chín the bank to get money. If
la, (yùhgwó) mhhaih, not, you won't have enough
néih jauh mhgau chín money to use.
yuhng ge la.

S: Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí S: If you don't hurry and go to
heui ngàhnhòhng ló the bank to get money, you
chín, néih jauh won't have enough money to
mhgau chín yuhng use.
ge la.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih hóu faaidí heui fan la,
mhhaih, tǐngyaht néih jauh
mhgau jǐngsahn ge la. | 1. Yùhgwó néih mheui fan,
néih tǐngyaht jauh mhgau
jǐngsahn ge la. |
| 2. Néih hóu faaidí dá dihnwá bái
kéuih la, mhhaih, kéuih
jauh chēutjǎ gaai ge la. | 2. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí dá
dihnwá bái kéuih, kéuih
jauh chēutjǎ gaai ge la. |
| 3. Néih hóu faaidí heui máaih la,
mhhaih, jauh maaihsaai ge la. | 3. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí heui
maaih, jauh maaihsaai ge
la. |
| 4. Néih hóu faaidí jough la, mhhaih
jauh gónmhchit ge la. | 4. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí jough,
néih jauh gónmhchit ge la. |
| 5. Néih hóu faaidí yám lá, mhhaih
jauh dung ge la. | 5. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí yám,
jauh dung ge la. |
| 6. Néih hóu faaidí níngheui sái
la, mhhaih jauh mhgóndākchit
ge la. | 6. Yùhgwó néih mhfaidí níng-
heui sái, néih jauh
mhgóndākchit ge la. |
| 7. Néih hóu fàan ngūkkéi la,
mhhaih néih taaitáai jauh
wán néih ge la. | 7. Yùhgwó néih mhfàan ngūkkéi,
néih taaitáai jauh wán
néih ge la. |

5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih jǜngyi síhk
mēyéh a?

T: What do you want to eat?

S: Mēyéh dōu dāk.

S: Anything is OK.

- | | |
|--|---|
| + 1. Néih wán bǐngō tèng dihñwá a?
Who do you want to speak to
(on the telephone.) | 1. <u>Bǐngō</u> dōu dāk.
<u>Anyone</u> will do. |
| + 2. Néih séung heui bǐndouh a?
Where do you want to go? | 2. <u>Bǐndouh</u> dōu dāk.
<u>Anywhere</u> will do. |
| + 3. Ngóh géisíh heui néihdouh a?
When shall I come to see
you? | 3. <u>Géisíh</u> dōu dāk.
<u>Any time</u> is fine. |
| + 4. Néih oi bǐn gihn a?
Which one do you want? | 4. <u>Bǐn</u> gihn dōu dāk.
<u>Any</u> one will do. |
| + 5. Néih séung máaih géidō a?
How many do you want to buy? | 5. <u>Géidō</u> dōu dāk.
<u>Any number</u> --it doesn't
matter. |
| 6. Tíhng hái bǐn bihn a?
Which side should I stop on? | 6. Bǐn bihn dōu dāk.
Either side is OK. |
| + 7. Néih yiu dím jōuh a?
How do you want to do it? | 7. <u>Dím</u> dōu dāk.
<u>Any way</u> is fine. |

6. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh chin gó-
ján, jauh máaih lā.

T: When I have money, I('ll) buy
it.

S: Ngóh géisí yáuh
chin, jauh géisí
máaih lā.

S: Whenever I have money, I buy.
or
When I have the money, I'll
buy.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh héi sán góján, jauh
giuséng néih lā. | 1. Ngóh géisí héi sán, jauh
géisíh giuséng néih lā. |
| 2. Ngóh dākhaahn góján, jauh wán
néih chòh lā. | 2. Ngóh géisí dākhaahn, jauh
géisí wán néih chòh lā. |
| 3. Ngóh tóuhngoh góján, jauh síhk
lā. | 3. Ngóh géisí tóuh ngoh, jauh
géisí síhk lā. |
| 4. Ngóh héisàn góján, jauh dá
dihñwá béi neih lā. | 4. Ngóh géisí héisàn, jauh
géisí dá dihñwá béi neih
lā. |
| + 5. Ngóh <u>génghot</u> góján, jauh yám
lā.
When I am <u>thirsty</u> , I('ll)
drink. | 5. Ngóh géisí <u>génghot</u> , jauh
géisí yám lā. |

Comment: Here the final lā represents la for change, plus raised intonation for liveliness.

7. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh pa joughm̄hsaai
bo.

T: I'm afraid I won't get them
all done.

S: Jouhdāk géidò, jauh
géidò lā.

S: Do as many as you can, then.

1. Ngóh pa maaih̄m̄hsaai bo.

1. Maaih̄dāk géidò, jauh géidò
lā.

2. Ngóh pa sihk̄m̄hsaai bo.

2. Sihkdāk géidò, jauh géidò
lā.

3. Ngóh pa sé̄m̄hsaai bo.

3. Sé̄dāk géidò, jauh géidò lā.

4. Ngóh pa ninḡm̄hsaai bo.

4. Ningdāk géidò, jauh géidò
lā.

5. Ngóh pa b̄n̄m̄hsaai bo.

5. B̄ndāk géidò, jauh géidò
lā.

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih j̄ngyi sihk
m̄yéh a?

T: What would you like to eat?

S: Néih j̄ngyi sihk
m̄yéh, jauh
m̄yéh lā.

S: Eat what(ever) you like.

1. Néih j̄ngyi heui b̄ndouh a?

1. Néih j̄ngyi heui b̄ndouh,
jauh b̄ndouh lā.
Go where you want to go.

2. Néih j̄ngyi tái b̄n̄ b̄n̄ a?

2. Néih j̄ngyi tái b̄n̄ b̄n̄,
jauh b̄n̄ b̄n̄ lā.

3. Néih j̄ngyi yám m̄yéh a?

3. Néih j̄ngyi yám m̄yéh, jauh
m̄yéh lā.

4. Néih j̄ngyi taam b̄ngo a?

4. Néih j̄ngyi taam b̄ngo,
jauh b̄ngo lā.

5. Néih j̄ngyi paak b̄ndouh a?

5. Néih j̄ngyi paak b̄ndouh,
jauh b̄ndouh lā.

6. Néih j̄ngyi jeuk b̄n̄ ḡhn̄ a?

6. Néih j̄ngyi jeuk b̄n̄ ḡhn̄,
jauh b̄n̄ ḡhn̄ lā.

9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih géidím síhk
faahn a? /jǐnghóu/

T: When do you eat dinner?

S: Géidím jǐnghóu, jauh
géidím síhk lā.

S: When its ready, then I eat. or
I'll eat whenever it's ready.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Néih oi bīn gihn a? /hóu/ | 1. Bīn gihn hóu, jauh oi bīn gihn lā. |
| 2. Néih máaih bīn jek a? /daaih/ | 2. Bīn jek daaih, jauh máaih bīn jek lā. |
| 3. Néih láihbaaigéi heui ngànhhòhng a? /dākhaahn/ | 3. Láihbaaigéi dākhaahn, jauh láihbaaigéi heui lā. |
| 4. Néih daap mēyéh chē jáu a? /laih sǐn/ | 4. Mēyéh chē làih sǐn, jauh daap mēyéh lā. |
| 5. Néih heui bīndoun síhk aan a? /pēhng/ | 5. Bīndouh pēhng, jauh heui bīndouh lā. |
| 6. Néih séung tái bīn bún syù a? /yih/ | 6. Bīn bún yih, jauh tái bīn bún lā. |

10. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih meih héi sàan bo.

T: She hasn't gotten up yet.
(very definite)

S: Ngóh juhng yíhwàih kéuih héijó sàan tím.

S: And I thought she had already gotten up!

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh meih giuséng kéuih bo. | 1. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih giuséngjó kéuih tím. |
| 2. Kéuih meih fan bo. | 2. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih kéuih fanjó tím. |
| + 3. Nǐdouh <u>gáu dím</u> meih <u>hòi mùhn</u> bo.
The store isn't open at 9 o'clock.
(<u>time + hòi mùhn = opening time at a store</u>) | 3. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih nǐdouh gáu dím hòi jó mùhn tím. |
| + 4. Gūngsǐ <u>sahp dím</u> meih <u>sàan mùhn</u> ga.
The store won't have closed by ten o'clock.
(<u>time + sàan mùhn = closing time at a store</u>)
[at 10 o'clock not yet closed] | 4. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih gūngsǐ sah p dím sàanjó mùhn tím.
And I thought they would be closed by ten! |

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 5. Néih ga chē meih jǐnghóu bo. | 5. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih ga chē jǐnghóujó tǐm. |
| 6. Ngóh meih maat gònjehng chisó bo. | 6. Ngóh juhng yíhwàih néih maat gònjehngjó chisó tǐm. |

Comment: tǐm adds to the sentences above the connotation that the situation expressed in the sentence is different from what the speaker expected. It may be a disappointment, as in the example sentence, or it may be a pleasant surprise, as in sentence #4, but in any event it is contrary to the speaker's preconception of the matter.

11. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Faaidǐ yámjó kéuih lā!
Hurry up and drink it! | 1. Faaidǐ yámjó kéuih lā! |
| 2. /dám/ | 2. Faaidǐ dāmjó kéuih lā! |
| 3. /níng/ | 3. Faaidǐ níngjó kéuih lā! |
| 4. /máaih/ | 4. Faaidǐ máaihjó kéuih lā! |
| 5. /wuhn/ | 5. Faaidǐ wuhnjó kéuih lā! |
| 6. /maat/ | 6. Faaidǐ maatjó kéuih lā! |

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh haih Méihgwok-yáhn. Ngóh jùngyi síhk Jùngohoi. T: I am an American.
I like to eat Chinese food.

S: Sèuiyǐhn ngóh haih Méihgwokyáhn, daahnhaih ngóh jùngyi síhk Jùngchoi. S: Although I am an American, still I like to eat Chinese food.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Hèunggóng tǐnhei hóu yiht.
Ngóh mǎhjùngyi yáuhséui. | 1. Sèuiyǐhn Hèunggóng tǐnhei hóu yiht, daahnhaih ngóh mǎhjùngyi yáuhséui. |
| 2. Dǐ yéh hóu gwai.
Kéuih máaihjó hóudò. | 2. Sèuiyǐhn dǐ yéh hóu gwai, daahnhaih kéuih máaihjó hóudò. |
| 3. Kéuih mǎhjùngyi tái hei.
Kéuih hóu jùngyi tái dihnsih. | 3. Sèuiyǐhn kéuih mǎhjùngyi tái hei, daahnhaih kéuih hóu |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. Kéuih sīk góng Gwóngdùngwá.
Kéuih hóu pa góng. | júngyi tái dihnsih. |
| 5. Kéuih hóu kàhnlihk duhk syù.
Kéuih m̀hbatdāk yihp. | 4. Sèuiyihñ kéuih sīk góng
Gwóngdùngwá, daahnhaih
kéuih hóu pa góng. |
| 6. Kéuih yíngíng gitjó fàn.
Kéuih juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-
páhngyauh. | 5. Sèuiyihñ kéuih hóu kàhnlihk
duhk syù, daahnhaih kéuih
m̀hbatdāk yihp. |
| | 6. Sèuiyihñ kéuih yíngíng
gitjó fàn, daahnhaih kéuih
juhng yáuh hóudò néuih-
páhngyauh. |

13. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: 1. T: Dī pihnggwó
jánhaih hóu-
sīk laak.
/sóng/tihm/ | T: The apples are really good.
/crisp/sweet/ |
| S: Dī pihnggwó yauh
sóng yauh tihm,
jánhaih hóusihk
laak. | S: The apples are crisp and sweet
--really good. |
| 2. T: Dī tòng m̀hhóuyám
ge. /fú/háahm/ | T: The soup tastes awful.
/bitter/salty/ |
| S: Dī tòng yauh fú
yauh háahm
m̀hhóuyám ge. | S: The soup is bitter and salty
--it tastes awful. |
| 1. Dī chòi m̀hhóusihk ge.
/syùn/laah/ | 1. Dī chòi yauh syùn yauh
laah, m̀hhóusihk ge. |
| 2. Dī ngáuhyuhk m̀hhóusihk ge.
/sáang/háahm/ | 2. Dī ngáuhyuhk yauh sáang
yauh háahm, m̀hhóusihk ge. |
| 3. Dī pihnggwó jánhaih hóusihk
laak. /suhk/tihm/ | 3. Dī pihnggwó yauh suhk yauh
tihm, jánhaih hóusihk
laak. |
| 4. Dī yí m̀hhóuchóh ge. /gòu/daaih/ | 4. Dī yí yauh gòu yauh daaih,
m̀hhóuchóh ge. |
| 5. Dī heiséui jánhaih hóuyám laak.
/dung/tihm/ | 5. Dī heiséui yauh dung yauh
tihm, jánhaih hóuyám laak. |
| 6. Dī gafē m̀hhóuyám ge.
/dung/fú/ | 6. Dī gafē yauh dung yauh fú,
m̀hhóuyám ge. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) Seichyùn = Szechwan, -ese
- 2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?
- 3) Móuh = Nothing special
- 4) chichi = every time
- 5) syùnlaah tòng = pungent pepper soup
- 6) tònghchou yú = sweet and sour fish

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It's hotter than blazes today! (i.e., excessively hot.) 2. This orange is rotten! 3. His younger brother hasn't gotten married yet. 4. (to a clerk in a store) What time do you close? 5. This soup is bitter and salty both--not at all tasty. 6. You'd better get to the bank and get some money, otherwise you won't have any money to pay the servants. 7. How come you're up so early? 8. Which do you like better, Cantonese food or Shanghai food? 9. Are you thirsty? 10. Would you wake me up tomorrow whatever time you get up? 11. What time would you like to have dinner? | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. That's what I say too. 2. Well then, throw it out! 3. And I thought he had already gotten married! 4. We close at 5:30. 5. Well don't eat it then. 6. You're right. Tomorrow's the 1st. 7. I have to go to work a little early today. 8. Although I'm from Shanghai, I like Cantonese food better. 9. I <u>do</u> feel a bit thirsty, I think I'll what there is in the refrigerator to drink. 10. Sure--is 7:00 OK? 11. Whatever time you get it done will be OK. |
|--|---|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 12. Which tie should I wear? | 12. Any one is fine. |
| 13. Is there a place to park cars around here? | 13. Yes, park anywhere you can find a place. |
| 14. Hurry and change clothes, otherwise we'll be late. | 14. I don't have time to change clothes, let's go now! |
| 15. Do you like the yellow dress or the blue one? | 15. They're both nice--buy the one you like. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 25

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. bīn- | nonQW: any (one place, etc.) whatever (one place, etc.) |
| 2. bīndouh | nonQW: anywhere, wherever |
| 3. bīngo | nonQW: anyone; whoever |
| 4. dām | v: throw out, discard |
| 5. dīm | nonQW: any manner, whatever manner, however |
| 6. fanjeuhk | v: get to sleep, fall asleep |
| 7. fanmàhjeuhk | v: can't get to sleep |
| 8. fú | adj: strong [bitter] |
| 9. géi- | nonQW: any (number) |
| 10. géidím | nonQW: whatever hour, any hour, any time |
| 11. géidò | nonQW: any moment; however many |
| 12. géisí | nonQW: any time, whenever |
| 13. génghot | adj: thirsty |
| 14. guih | adj: tired |
| 15. ...-gwotàuh | bf: too..., excessively... |
| 16. hàahm | adj: salty |
| 17. <u>Tw</u> hòi mùhn | Ph: open the doors (of a store) at X time. expresses opening time of a store. |
| 18. hóu + Verb phrase + la | Ph: It would be a good idea to...' a form used in making a suggestion |
| 19. hùhng | adj: red |
| 20. jīngsàhn | n/adj: energy |
| 21. làahm | adj: blue |
| 22. laahnjó | adj: spoiled, rotten (of perishables) |
| 23. laaht | adj: peppery |
| 24. lòh | ss: sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy |

25. luhk	adj: green
26. Māt + sentence	sen: How come + sentence?
27. mēyéh	nonQW: anything; everything; whatever
28. m̀h̄hah	cj: otherwise, if not
29. ngáahnfan	adj: sleepy
30. ngohngódeí	adjP: a bit hungry
31. s̀aang	adj: raw, underdone (of cooked tip); green (of fruit)
32. s̀euiyih	Cj: although
33. s̀euiyih...daahn̄hah	PCj: although,..still...
34. s̀óng	adj: crisp
35. suhk	adj: ripe (of fruits); done (of cooked
36. sỳun	adj: sour
37. syutgwaih	n: refrigerator
38. tihm	adj: sweet
39. tóuhngoh	adj: hungry
40. wòhng	adj: yellow
41. yihwàih	v: think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')
42. ỳuhgwó m̀h̄hah	Cj: otherwise; if not
43. <u>TW</u> s̀aan mùhn	Ph: close the doors (of a store) at <u>X</u> time. expresses closing time of a store.

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wòhng siujé

Mēyéh sih a?

Yes? [What business?]

Jyúfáanjyúfáan or jyúfaahn

cook, person who works as
cook in a private home
(usually a woman)

chéng jyúfáan

hire a cook

boují wah nǐdoh chéng

the newspaper said they

jyúfáan

were hiring a cook here

Ngóh táidóu boují wah nǐdoh

I read in the paper that they

chéng jyúfáan--haih m̀hahh a?

were hiring a cook here--is
that right?

Wòhng Siujé

Haih a--Yahpláih lā.

Yes. Please come in.

-gán

verb suffix, indicating
action in progress

dágán dihnwá

talking on the telephone

Ngóh màhmā dágán dihnwá.

My mother is talking on the
phone.

Néih chóhháh sǐn lā.

First have a seat.

-yùhn

verb suffix, 'finish'

góngyùhn

finish talking

dáng kéuih góngyùhn

when she finishes talking...

Dáng kéuih góngyùhn ngóh wah

When she gets through, I'll

kéuih jí néih làihjó lā.

tell her you've come.

Jyúfáan

Hóu, m̀hgoi.

Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and
comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai

seun

letter

gaaisiuh seun

letter of introduction,

sànfánjing
 Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun
 tùhng sànfánjing làih a?

Jyúfáan

Yáuh. Nàh, m̀ngòì néih táiháh là.

Wòhng Táai

gūngfù
 nīdoh dī gūngfù
 fàn
 gám or gámyéung

gám fàn
 Ngòhdeih nīdoh ge gūngfù haih
 gám fàn ge:
 dáleih
 jyúsihk
 Jyúfáan jihng haih dáleih jyúsihk.

ngoih
 jí

chyùhfóng jí ngoih
 chyùhfóng jí ngoih ge sih
 fuhjaak

gùngyàhn fuhjaak
 Chyùhfóng jíngoih ge sih yáuh
 daihdí gùngyàhn fuhjaak.

daaihyàhn

letter of recommendation
 ID card
 Did you bring your letters of
 recommendation and your ID
 card?

Yes. Here--please take a look.

work
 the work here
 divide, divide up
 in such a way; this way,
 that way
 divide in this way
 Our work here is divided up
 this way:
 take care of, do
 cooking
 The cook just takes care of
 the cooking.
 outside
 'of,' grammatical word
 joining modifying
 structure on its left to
 head structure on its
 right.
 outside of the kitchen
 the work outside the kitchen
 take responsibility (for),
 is responsible (for)
 the servant is responsible
 There's another servant respon-
 sible for the work outside of
 the kitchen.
 adults

hahmbahlaahng	altogether
hahmbahlaahng léuhng go	altogether two adults and
daaihyàhn, léuhng go	two children
sailóugō.	
Ngóhdeih nídouh hahmbahlaahng	Altogether there are two adults
léuhng go daaihyàhn, léuhng	and two children here.
go sailóugō.	
tùngsèuhng	ordinarily, usually
yāt go yān	by myself, himself, etc.
	alone
ji	to, until
láihsaaiyāt ji láihsaaińgh	Monday to Friday
Tùngsèuhng láihsaaiyāt ji	Ordinarily from Monday to
láihsaaińgh jihngaih dāk	Friday there's only myself
ngóh yāt go yān hái ūkkéi	alone who eats lunch at home.
sikh ngaan ge jē.	
sèhng	entire
sèhng go láihsaai	all week, the whole week
sèhng go láihsaai dōu	aren't able to come back
m̄hfaandāklàih sikh	to eat all week.
tùhngmāaih	and, together with
Ngóh sīnsāang tùhngmāaih dī	My husband and the children
sailóugō chàmhō sèhng go	aren't able to come home for
láihsaai dōu m̄hfaandāklàih	lunch for practically the
sikh ge.	whole week.
gūng	work
gām ge gūng	that/this kind of work,
	such work
Gām ge gūng ngāam m̄hngāam néih	Does such work suit you?
nē?	
	<u>Jyúfaan</u>
Móuh sówaih	'Whatever you say.' 'Any
	way is OK with me.' 'No
	complaints.'
Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.	It's all right--no complaints.

	<u>Wòhng Táai</u>	
Gám, néih yiu géidō-chín yàhngùng nē?		How much do you want for wages?
	<u>Jyúfáan</u>	
Sei baak lā.		Four hundred.
	<u>Wòhng Táai</u>	
Hóu lā. séuhng gūng		Agreed. start work (usually means for day, but here means for the first time.)
Néih géisi hóyih làih séuhng gūng nē?		When can you come start work?
	<u>Jyúfáan</u>	
Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma?		The first of next month, all right?
	<u>Wòhng Táai</u>	
Hóu lā. Ngóh dáng néih lā.		Fine. I'll expect you.

B. Recapitulation:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

	<u>Wòhng Siujé</u>	
Mēyéh sih a?		Yes? [What business?]
	<u>Jyúfáan</u>	
Ngóh táidóu boují wah n'Idouh chéng jyúfáan--haih m'haih a?		I read in the paper that they were hiring a cook here--is that right?
	<u>Wòhng Siujé</u>	
Haih a--Yahplàih lā. Ngóh màhmā dágán dihnwá. Néih chóh'háh s'ín lā. Dáng kéuih góngyúhn ngóh wah kéuih jí néih làihjó lā.		Yes--please come in. My mother is on the phone. Have a seat first. When she gets through, I'll tell her you've come.
	<u>Jyúfáan</u>	
Hóu, m'gòì.		Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and comes to interview the cook:)

Wòhng Táai

Néih yáuh móuh daai gaaisiuhseun
tùhng sánfánjing làih a?

Did you bring your letters
recommendation and your ID
card?

Jyúfáan

Yáuh. Nàh, m̀h̀gòì néih táiháh là.

Yes. Here--please take a look.

Wòhng Táai

Ngóhdeih n̄idouh ge gùngfù haih
gám fàn ge:

Our work here is divided up
this way:

Chyùhfóng jí ngoih ge sih yáuh
daihdí gùngyahn fuhjaak.

There's another servant respon-
sible for the work outside
of the kitchen.

Ngóhdeih n̄idouh hahmbahlaahng
léuhng go daaihyàn, léuhng
go sailógō.

Altogether there are two
adults and two children here.

Tùngsèuhng láihbaaiyāt jí
láihbaaińgh jihnghaih dāk
ngóh yāt go yān hái ūkkéi
sihk ngaan ge jē.

Ordinarily from Monday to
Friday there's only myself
alone who eats lunch at home.

Ngóh s̄insàang tùhngmàaih dī
sailógō chàmhđō sèhng go
láihbaai dōu m̀h̀fàandāklāih
sihk ge.

My husband and the children
aren't able to come back
for practically the whole
week.

Gám ge gùng ngāam m̀h̀ngāam
néih nē?

Does such work suit you?

Jyúfáan

Dāk--móuh sówaih gé.

It's all right--whatever you
say.

Wòhng Táai

Gám, néih yiu géidō chin
yàhngùng nē?

How much wages do you want?

Jyúfáan

Sei baak là.

Four hundred.

Wòhng Táai

Hóu là.

Agreed.

Néih géisi hóyih làih séuhng
gùng nē?

When can you come start work?

Jyúfáan

Hah go yuht yāt houh, hóu ma?

The first of next month, all
right?

Wòhng Táai

Hóu lā. Ngóh dāng néih lā.

Fine. I'll expect you.

- 1) As an independent unit: gám = such things, this (or that) kind of thing; in such a way.
- Ex: 1. Ngóh máaihjó dí búi I bought some glasses, and some plates,
a, díp a, cheunglím and some curtain material-- that kind
bou a, gam jē. of stuff, that's all.

(See Lesson 19 BC)

2. Kéuih Yíngmán góngdāk He speaks English just like an
tuhng Yíngwok yahn Englishman. [(Regarding) him,
yatyeuhng gam. English speaks with Englishman
same thus.]
3. Gám dōu wah tihm àh! (Done in such a way, and you still say
it's sweet! (i.e., I put such a
small amount of sugar in-- you still
say it's too sweet?) gám = do/done
in such a way

(See Drill 2)

- 2) As a verb modifier: gám Verb = Verb in such a way, Verb this (or that) way, Verb like this (or that)
- Ex: Gám sé mhdāk ga. It won't do to write that way.
Mhóu gam jōuh. Don't do it that way.
Ngóhdeih hahmbahlahng Everybody says it that way.
dōu haih gam gong.

(See BC and Drill 1)

- 3) As modifier of a noun: gám ge Noun = this (or that) kind of Noun, such a Noun, a thus-done Noun
- Ex: Gám ge tòng, néih jùng Do you like soup done this way? [Thus-
mhjungyi yam a? done soup, you like to drink?]
- Gám ge gùng ngāam Does such work suit you?
mhngaam neih a?

(See BC)

(Gám N, 'such an N' also occurs. See, for example,

Lesson 27, Drill 4:

Hóu chíh haih bējáu It seems to be beer--
gám meih. such a smell. i.e.,
It smells like beer.)

b. gám, 'such' and gam, 'so' compared:

gám joins with Nouns and Verbs, and gam joins with adjectives.

Ex: 1. gám

Gám jouh.

Do it that way.

Gám ge yéh.

That kind of stuff.

2. gam

Wàh! Gam leng!

Wow-- so pretty!

Aiya, gam laahttaat.

Oh my-- so dirty!

4. ...ji ngoih, 'outside' in the sense 'aside from,' 'with the exception of.'

Chyùhfóng ji ngoih douhdouh
dou yiu maat.

[Kitchen's outside place-place
all want mop] i.e., Except for the
kitchen, every place needs mopping
(giving instructions).

yih ngoih is interchangeable with ji ngoih.

(See BC)

5. Some Verb-Object phrases serve as basis of a compound noun formula:

VO-ge, 'one who does VO as an occupation.'

Ex: têng dihnwá ge = telephone operator [one who listens to
the telephone]

maaih syù ge = bookseller [one who sells books]

jà chē ge = chauffeur [one who drives a car]

(See Drill 6)

English has a similar pattern for occupations, except in English the word order in the compound noun is: Object-Verb-er.

Ex: bookseller
math teacher
ball player
taxi driver

The only English expression on the Chinese VO-ge pattern that comes to mind is 'do-gooder.' Can you think of any others?

6. Móuh sówaih ge. 'Whatever you say,' 'No complaints,' 'It doesn't make any difference,' 'I don't have any preferences.'

There is some overlap in the use of Móuh sówaih ge and Sihdaahn lā.

With Sihdaahn lā you are asked to make a selection between two or more choices: Which do you want, A or B? Answering Sihdaahn lā you indicate that either/any of the choices suggested is OK by you.

Ex: Q: Néih jǔngyi sihk hā Would you like to have shrimp
yikwaahk sihk yú a? or fish?
A: Sihdaahn lā. Either one is fine.

With Móuh sówaih ge there are three possibilities:

1) One specific thing has been suggested, and in saying Móuh sówaih ge you agree to it: Is X OK? Ans: No complaints-- whatever you say.

Ex: Q: Gám ge gǔng ngāam Does such work suit you?
mhngaam neih a?

A: Dāk-- móuh sówaih gé. Agreed-- no complaints.

(See BC)

2) You are given a choice between two or more suggestions, and in saying Móuh sówaih ge you indicate that any of the suggestions is OK by you. In this use, Móuh sówaih ge is interchangeable with Sihdaahn lā.

Ex: Q: Néih jǔngyi sihk hā Do you want to eat shrimp,
yikwaahk sihk yú a? or fish?

A: Móuh sówaih ge. I don't have any preference--
either is OK.

3) No specific suggestion has been made, but you are asked what you would like. In answering Móuh sówaih ge you indicate that you have no special preferences, that anything/any way/any place, etc., is OK by you.

Ex: A: Néih wah dím, jauh dím lā. However you want it done,
we'll do it that way.

B: Ngóh móuh sówaih ga. I don't have any preferences
-- any way is fine.

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gám jough, dāk m̀hdāk a? T: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way? [Do in such a way, OK or not?]

S: Gám jough, hóu ma? S: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way?

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. Gám góng dāk m̀hdāk a?
Is it OK to say it that way? | 1. Gám góng, hóu ma? |
| 2. Gám sé, dāk m̀hdāk a?
Is it OK to write it like this? | 2. Gám sé, hóu ma? |
| + 3. Gám dá, dāk m̀hdāk a?
Is it OK to hit this way?
(in ref. to typing: Is it OK to type this way?) dá jih = to type | 3. Gám dá, hóu ma? |
| 4. Gám jǐng, dāk m̀hdāk a? | 4. Gám jǐng, hóu ma? |
| 5. Gám yuhng, dāk m̀hdāk a? | 5. Gám yuhng, hóu ma? |
| 6. Gám sái, dāk m̀hdāk a? | 6. Gám sái, hóu ma? |
| 7. Gám tong, dāk m̀hdāk a? | 7. Gám tong, hóu ma? |
| 8. Gám maat, dāk m̀hdāk a? | 8. Gám maat, hóu ma? |

2. Substitution Drill:

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Gám dōu wah tǐhm àh!
Do it that way and you <u>still</u> say it's sweet! (for example: I put such a tiny bit of sugar in it, and you <u>still</u> say it's sweet!) | 1. Gám dōu wah tǐhm àh! |
| 2. /syùn/ | 2. Gám dōu wah syùn àh! |
| 3. /laaht/ | 3. Gám dōu wah laaht àh! |
| 4. /laahttaat/ | 4. Gám dōu wah laahttaat àh! |
| 5. /chàauh/ | 5. Gám dōu wah chàauh àh! |
| 6. /chúhng/ | 6. Gám dōu wah chúhng àh! |
| 7. /gònjehng/ | 7. Gám dōu wah gònjehng àh! |
| 8. /leng/ | 8. Gám dōu wah leng àh! |
| 9. /sàng/ | 9. Gám dōu wah sàng àh! |

Comment: In the above sentences gám substitutes for a VP: gám jòuh 'do it thus', 'did it thus,' and is the subject of the sentence. It is separated from the predicate by a slight pause. As a verb gám is used in the affirmative only.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāan a?
Who is responsible for
cooking? | 1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāan a? |
| 2. /máaih yéh/ | 2. Bīngō fuhjaak máaih yéh a? |
| 3. /jyúsíhk/ | 3. Bīngō fuhjaak jyúsíhk a? |
| 4. /sái sām/ | 4. Bīngō fuhjaak sái sām a? |
| 5. /jà chē/ | 5. Bīngō fuhjaak jà chē a? |
| 6. /dá jìh/ | 6. Bīngō fuhjaak dá jìh a?
Who is responsible for
typing? |
| 7. /chyùhfóng jìngòih ge síh/ | 7. Bīngō fuhjaak chyùhfóng
jìngòih ge síh a? |

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: laahnjó
become broken

S1: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh yāt-
dihng fuhjaak.
If it breaks, I will de-
finitely take the respon-
sibility.

S2: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh m̄hfu-
jaak ga!
If it breaks, I won't be
(refuse to be) responsible.
(or I won't take the re-
sponsibility.)

S3: Yùngwó laahnjó, néih fuh
m̄hfujaak ga?
If it breaks, will you take
the responsibility?

1. chàauhjó

1. S1: Yùngwó chàauhjó, ngóh
yatdihng fuhjaak.

S2: Yùngwó chàauhjó, ngóh
m̄hfujaak ga!

2. laahnjó
3. laahttaatjó
- + 4. waaihjó
(waaihjó = out of order, broken down, doesn't work)
5. jinglaahnjó
- S3: Yùngwó chàauhjó, néih fuh m̃fhuhjaak ga?
2. S1: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.
S2: Yùngwó laahnjó, ngóh m̃fhuhjaak ga!
S3: Yùngwó laahnjó, néih fuh m̃fhuhjaak ga?
3. S1: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.
S2: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, ngóh m̃fhuhjaak ga!
S3: Yùngwó laahttaatjó, néih fuh m̃fhuhjaak ga?
4. S1: Yùngwó waaihjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak. If it gets out of order, I will take the responsibility.
S2: Yùngwó waaihjó, ngóh m̃fhuhjaak ga!
S3: Yùngwó waaihjó, néih fuh m̃fhuhjaak ga?
5. S1: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh yatdihng fuhjaak.
S2: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh m̃fhuhjaak ga!
S3: Yùngwó jinglaahnjó, néih fuh m̃fhuhjaak ga?

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm! /go dihnwá/

S: Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm!

T: Oh-oh, the car has broken down. (or is out of order, or doesn't work.) /phone/

S: Oh-oh, the phone is out of order.

+ 1. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm! /ga dihnsh(gēi)/ (TV Set)

1. Aiya! Ga dihnsh(gēi) waaihjó tīm!

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Aiya! Ga dihnsih(gēi) waaihjó tīm! /go bīu/ | 2. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tīm! |
| 3. Aiya! Go bīu waaihjó tīm! /go syutgwaih/ | 3. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó tīm! |
| 4. Aiya! Go syutgwaih waaihjó tīm! /ga chē/ | 4. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm! |
| 5. Aiya! Ga chē waaihjó tīm!
+ /ga <u>lāahnghei(gēi)</u> /
(air conditioner) | 5. Aiya! Go lāahnghei(gēi) waaihjó tīm!
The air conditioner is out of order. |
| 6. Aiya! Go lāahnghei(gēi) waaihjó tīm! /go <u>sāuyāngèi</u> /
(radio) | 6. Aiya! Go sāuyāngèi waaihjó tīm!
The radio is out of order. |
| 7. Aiya! Go sāuyāngèi waaihjó tīm! /go <u>dājihgēi</u> /
(typewriter) | 7. Aiya! Go dājihgēi waaihjó tīm!
The typewriter is out of order. |
| 8. Aiya! Go dājihgēi waaihjó tīm! /go dihnwá/ | 8. Aiya! Go dihnwá waaihjó tīm! |

Comment: For lāahngheigēi, 'air conditioner,' and dihnsihgēi, 'TV set,' some speakers omit -gēi, others don't. [gēi = machine]

Both ga and go are used as Measures for sāuyāngèi, dihnsihgēi, and lāahngheigēi.

6. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /gaau Gwóngdùngwá/ T: What does he do? (he is a do-what one?) /teach Cantonese/

S: Kéuih gaau Gwóngdùngwá ge. S: He's a Cantonese teacher. [teach-Cantonese one]

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /gaau syù/ | 1. Kéuih gaau syù ge. He's a teacher. |
| 2. Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /maaih boujì/ | 2. Kéuih maaih boujì ge. He's a newspaper hawker. |
| 3. Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /jǐng chē/ | 3. Kéuih jǐng chē ge. He's a car mechanic. |
| 4. Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /jà chē/ | 4. Kéuih jà chē ge. He's a chauffeur. |
| 5. Kéuih jōuh mēyéh ga? /dá jih/ | 5. Kéuih dá jih ge. She's a typist. |

7. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Néih sèhng yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a?
Where were you all day? | 2. Néih sèhng yaht heuijó bīndouh làih a? |
| 2. /hahjau/ | 2. Néih sèhng go hahjau heuijó bīndouh làih a? |
| 3. /máahn/ | 3. Néih sèhng máahn heuijó bīndouh làih a? |
| 4. /jiu/ | 4. Néih sèhng jiu heuijó bīndouh làih a? |
| 5. /nihn/ | 5. Néih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh làih a? |
| 6. /lâihbaai/ | 6. Néih sèhng go lâihbaai heuijó bīndouh làih a? |

Comment: Heui...lâih = the lâih part indicates that the person has returned from having been away. Compare:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh a? | Where has he gone off to all year? (still away) |
| 2. Kéuih sèhng nihn heuijó bīndouh làih a? | Where did he go off to all year? (has returned) |

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Dīnggāai sèhng gihn sām dōu laahttaatsaai ga?
How come the [entire] dress is dirty all over? | 1. Dīnggāai sèhng gihn sām dōu laahttaatsaai ga? |
| 2. /faai bou/ | 2. Dīnggāai sèhng faai bou dōu laahttaatsaai ga? |
| 3. /tiuh kwàhn/ | 3. Dīnggāai sèhng tiuh kwàhn dōu laahttaatsaai ga? |
| + 4. /fùng seun/
(M for letter) | 4. Dīnggāai sèhng fùng seun dōu laahttaatsaai ga?
How come the whole letter is dirty all over? |
| + 5. /jèung jòubou/
(M. for newspapers) | 5. Dīnggāai sèhng jèung jòubou dōu laahttaatsaai ga? |

6. /tíuh mòuhgān/

6. Dǐngáai sèhng tíuh mòuhgān
dòu laahттаatsaai ga?

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chàhn Táai yǐngā
tái syù.

T: Mrs. Chan is reading now.

S: Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā,
Chàhn yǐngā tái-
gán syù.S: Please wait a bit, Mrs. Chan
is reading now.

1. Dǐ sailóugō yǐngā yám chàh.

1. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, dǐ sailóugō
yǐngā yámgán chàh.2. Kéuih go néui yǐngā sǐhk
faahn.2. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, kéuih go
néui yǐngā sǐhkgán faahn.3. Chàhn Siujé yǐngā wán sán-
fánjing.3. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, Chàhn Siujé
yǐngā wángán sánfánjing.

4. Hòh Sàang yǐngā tái dihnsih.

4. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, Hòh Sàang
yǐngā táigán dihnsih.

5. Kéuih bàhbā yǐngā dá dihnwá.

5. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, kéuih bàhbā
yǐngā dágán dihnwá.6. Kéuih màhmā yǐngā jǐng jóu-
chāan.6. Dǎngjǎn sǐn lā, kéuih màhmā
yǐngā jǐnggán jóuchāan.

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn
dihnwá meih a?
/shake/T: Has your mother finished
telephoning yet?

S: Meih, juhng dágán.

S: No, she's still on the phone.

T: Néih màhmā dáyùhn
dihnwá meih a?
/nod/T: Has your mother finished
telephoning yet?

S: Dáyùhn laak.

S: Yes, she's finished.

1. Néih bàhbā sǐhkyùhn ngaanjau
meih a? /shake/

1. Meih, juhng sǐhkgán.

2. Néih màhmā tèngyùhn sǎuyām-
gèi meih a? /nod/

2. Tèngyùhn laak.

3. Néih go néui duhkyùhn daaih-
hobk meih a? /shake/

3. Meih, juhng duhkgán.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 4. Néih tühng kéuih kingyùhn gáí
meih a? /nod/ | 4. Kingyùhn laak. |
| 5. Néih gājē táiyùhn dihnsih meih
a? /shake/ | 5. Méih, juhng táigán. |

11. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Kéuih têng sāuyām-
gèi. /dá páai/ | T: He is listening to the radio.
/play mahjong/ |
| S: Kéuih tênggán sāu-
yāngèi, mhdākhàahn
dá páai. | S: He's listening to the radio,
and doesn't have (free) time
to play mahjong. |
| 1. Kéuih sé jih. /tái dihnsih/ | 1. Kéuih ségán jih, mhdākhàahn
tái dihnsih. |
| 2. Kéuih jouh gūngfù. /kinggái/ | 2. Kéuih jouhgán gūngfù,
mhdākhàahn kinggái. |
| 3. Kéuih duhk syù. /dá bō/ | 3. Kéuih duhkgán syù, mhdāk-
hàahn dá bō. |
| 4. Kéuih jyú faahn. /heui ló chin/ | 4. Kéuih jyúgán faahn, mhdāk-
haahn heui ló chin. |
| 5. Kéuih tong sāam. /tái hei/ | 5. Kéuih tonggán sāam, mhdāk-
hàahn tái hei. |

12. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Ngóhdeih dōu sihk háh
Sàichāan gé.
/yáuhshí/ | T: We eat Western food too. [i.e.,
at times, instead of Chinese
food.] |
| S: Ngóhdeih yáuhshí dōu
sihk háh Sàichāan
gé. | S: We sometimes eat Western food
too. |
| 1. Ngóhdeih dōu sihk háh Jùng choi
gé. /gáumhégáu/
from time to time | 1. Ngóhdeih gáumhégáu dōu
sihk háh Jùng choi gé.
From time to time we eat
Chinese food. |
| 2. Ngóhdeih dōu heui háh léuihhàhng
gé. /yáuhshí/
We go on outings too. | 2. Ngóhdeih yáuhshí dōu heui-
háh léuihhàhng gé. |
| 3. Ngóhdeih dōu dá háh páai gé.
/hóudòshí/ | 3. Ngóhdeih hóudòshí dōu
dá háh páai gé. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Ngóhdeih dōu yámháh bējáu gé.
/tùngsèuhng/ | 4. Ngóhdeih tùngsèuhng dōu
yámháh bējáu gé. |
| 5. Ngóhdeih dōu chénggháh haak gé.
/gáumhngáu/ | 5. Ngóhdeih gáumhngáu dōu
chénggháh haak gé. |

13. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān
sìhk faahn.
My elder brother doesn't like
to eat alone. | 1. Ngóh agō hóu pa yāt go yān
sìhk faahn. |
| 2. /gājē/heui Sàandéng/ | 2. Ngóh gājē hóu pa yāt go yān
heui Sàandéng. |
| 3. /sailóu/gwo hóí/ | 3. Ngóh sailóu hóu pa yāt go
yān gwo hóí. |
| 4. /gùngyàhn/chēut gāai/ | 4. Ngóh gùngyàhn hóu pa yāt go
yān chēut gāai. |
| 5. /màhmā/hàahng gūngsī/ | 5. Ngóh màhmā hóu pa yāt go
yān hàahng gūngsī. |
| 6. /ngóh chānchīk/tái hei/ | 6. Ngóh chānchīk hóu pa yāt go
yān tái hei. |

14. Conversation Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: A: Néih tùhng bīngō
kīnggán gái a? | A: Who are you talking to? [with] |
| B: Tùhng ngóh gùngyàhn. | B: To [with] the servant. |
| A: Néihdeih kīnggán
mātyéh a? | A: What are you talking about? |
| B: Ngóhdeih kīnggán
chéng haak. | B: We're talking about having a
dinner party. |
| 1. A: | 1. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán
gái a? |
| B:chyùhjí. | B. Tùhng ngóh chyùhjí. |
| A: | A. Néihdeih kīnggán mātyéh
a? |
| B:kīnggán jyú chāan. | B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jyú
chāan. |

2. A.?
 B.dǎjǎap.
 A.?
 B.máaih yéh.
3. A.?
 B.bàhbā.
 A.?
 B.tái hei.
4. A.?
 B.agō.
 A.?
 B.wán néuihpàhngyáuh.
5. A.?
 B.gājē.
 A.?
 B.jauh sām.
6. A.?
 B.sailóu.
 A.?
 B.dá bō.
7. A.?
 B.màhmā.
 A.?
 B.dá páai.
8. A.?
 B.saimúi.
 A.?
 B.léuihhàhng.
2. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh dǎjǎap.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mǎtyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán máaih yéh.
3. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh bàhbā.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán tái hei.
4. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh agō.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán wán néuihpàhngyáuh.
5. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh gājē.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán jauh sām.
6. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh sailóu.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá bō.
7. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh màhmā.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán dá páai.
8. A. Néih tùhng bīngō kīnggán gái a?
 B. Tùhng ngóh saimúi.
 A. Néihdeih kīnggán mēyéh a?
 B. Ngóhdeih kīnggán léuihhàhng.

15. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih láihbaaiyāt ji T: He works from Monday to Friday.
 láihbaaiŋgh yiu /1 to 5/
 fāangùng. /yāt dīm
 ji ŋgh dīm/

S: Kéuih yāt dīm ji ŋgh S: He works from one o'clock to
 dīm yiu fāangùng. five o'clock.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh gāmyaht ji tīngyaht dōu mhdākhaahn.
/láihbaaisāam ji láihbaailuhk/ | 1. Ngóh láihbaaisāam ji láihbaailuhk dōu mhdākhaahn. |
| 2. Jèung Sāang gauhnín ji gāmnín dōu meih fāangwo láih.
/kàhmyaht ji gāmyaht/ | 2. Jèung Sāang kàhmyaht ji gāmyaht dōu meih fāangwo láih. |
| 3. Kéuih gāmjiu ji yīngā juhng meih sihkwo faahn.
/chihnyaht ji yīngā/ | 3. Kéuih chihnyaht ji yīngā juhng meih sihk faahn. |
| 4. Làuh Siujé yihyuht ji sàamyuht yiu heui Yīngwok.
/yātyuht ji nghyuht/ | 4. Làuh Siujé yātyuht ji nghyuht yiu heui Yīngwok. |
| 5. Ngóh léuhng dīm ji sei dīm yiu duk syù.
/sāam dīm ji ŋgh dīm/ | 5. Ngóh sām dīm ji ŋgh dīm yiu duk syù. |
| 6. Ngóh chihnyaht ji gāmyaht mhsái fāangùng.
/gāmyaht ji hauhyaht/ | 6. Ngóh gāmyaht ji hauhyaht mhsái fāangùng. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chau = to take care (of children)
 chaujái = baby amah
- 2) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!
- 3) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'
- 4) néuihjái = young girl
- 5) jough gùngfo = do homework, lessons

- 6) jihgēi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.
here: ourselves alone
-

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. How come Mr. Chan hasn't come yet? 2. I've come to see Mr. Wong. 3. (on the phone:) Mother, I'm at school, can you come get me? 4. (at the head of the stairs looking down:) Who is that person coming up? 5. This book is really interesting! 6. We'd better go, otherwise we'll be late. 7. Did we finish lesson 25 yesterday? 8. When you finish fixing the radio, would you have a look at the TV set? 9. Is it OK to do it this way? 10. Everybody says it that way. 11. Who is responsible for fixing the typewriter? 12. If you break it, will you be responsible? 13. Where were you all day? I phoned you 3 or 4 times. 14. Did you get it (the ID card)? | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. He's on his way now. 2. He's on the phone right now, would you have a seat first please? 3. I'm fixing dinner--you take the bus home. 4. It's the radio repairman. 5. When you're through, would you lend it to me? 6. Let me just finish writing this letter of recommendation, then I'll go. 7. Yes, we finished lesson 25 and started lesson 26. 8. I've already fixed the radio, where's the TV? 9. That way's not right--don't use chopsticks. 10. Is it OK to say it this way? 11. There's a company (gūngsī) responsible. 12. Yes. 13. I went to fetch my ID card. 14. No, I didn't--they said to come back next Tuesday. |
|---|--|

15. How many people altogether are there in your school? 15. More than 1500.
16. What are you chatting about? 16. We're talking about taking a trip.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 26

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------|--|
| 1. daaiyhàhn | n: | adult |
| 2. dá | v: | hit |
| 3. dá jih | vo: | type on the typewriter [hit-words] |
| 4. dájihgēi | n: | typewriter |
| 5. dá | v: | take care of |
| 6. dihnsihgēi | n: | TV set |
| 7. dōu | adv: | still |
| 8. fàn | v: | divide, divide up |
| 9. fuhjaak | v: | take responsibility for, is responsible for |
| 10. fùng | m: | M. for letter |
| 11. gaaisihseun | n: | letter of recommendation, letter of introduction |
| 12. gám | n/v: | in such a way; this/that way; as <u>V</u> , a reduced form of <u>gam jōuh</u> ; 'do it this/that way' |
| 13. -gán | vs: | verb suf. highlighting action in progress |
| 14. gùng | n: | work |
| 15. gùngfù | n: | work |
| 16. gáumhgáu | adv: | from time to time |
| 17. hahmbahlaahng | Ph: | altogether |
| 18. jèung | m: | M. for newspaper |
| 19. <u>TW</u> ji <u>TW</u> | prep: | <u>TW</u> to <u>TW</u> ; <u>TW</u> until <u>TW</u> |
| 20. jì | bf: | 'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it |
| 21.jìngoih | Ph: | aside from....., outside (of) |
| 22. jyúfáan | n: | a person who works as cook in private home (usually a woman) |
| 23. jyúfaahn | n: | same as jyúfáan (QV) |
| 24. jyúsihk | v: | cooking (VV compound which occupies noun position in sentence; cannot be preceded directly by <u>mh.</u>) |

25. láahnghei (gēi)	n: air conditioner
26. Mòuh sówaih ge.	Ph: 'Whatever you say.' 'Any way is OK with me.' 'No complaints.'
27. ngoih	bf: outside
28. sànfánjing	n: ID card
29. sāuyāngèi	n: radio
30. sèhng	sp: entire, whole
31. seun	n: letter
32. séuhng gùng	vo: start work
33. tùhngmàaih	Cj: and, with
34. tùngsèuhng	adv: ordinarily, usually
35. waaihjó	adjP: out of order, broken down
36. yāt go yān	np: alone; by one's self
37. -yùhn	vs: verb suf. = finish

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndehyáhn

ngoingwok-yáhn	foreigners
dòsou	mostly, for the most part
ngoingwok-yáhn dòsou dōu	foreigners mostly all study
hohk Gwok-yúh	Mandarin
hohk Jùngmán ge ngoingwok-yáhn	foreigners who study Chinese
Tèngginwah hohk Jùngmán ge ngoingwok-yáhn dòsou dōu hohk Gwok-yúh--	I hear that foreigners who study Chinese mostly all study Mandarin--
jàn	true
Haih àh-haih jàn ga?	Is that true?

Méihgwokyáhn

Haih jàn ga.	Yes, that's right.
Daahn-haih hái Hèunggóng jauh yáuh hóudò Méihgwokyáhn hohk Gwóngdùngwá la.	But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.

Búndehyáhn

lìhngsihwún	consulate
hái lìhngsihwún jòuh sih	work at the consulate
hái lìhngsihwún jòuh sih gó dī Méihgwokyáhn	the Americans who work at the consulate
Gám, hái lìhngsihwún jòuh sih gó dī Méihgwokyáhn haih àh-haih gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge nē?	Do the Americans who work at the consulate all study Cantonese?

Méihgwokyáhn

yáuhdī	some, some of them
yáuhdī..., yáuhdī	some..., others ...
Mh-haih ge--	No--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī hohk Gwok-yúh, yáuhdī léuhng yeuhng dōu àh-hohk.	Some study Cantonese, some study Mandarin, others don't study either one.

Búndeihyáhn

deui...laih góng
deui ngoihgwokyáhn laih góng

ní léuhng yeuhng wá, bín
yeuhng nàahndí a?

Deui ngoihgwokyáhn laih góng, ní
léuhng yeuhng wá, bín yeuhng
nàahndí a?

speaking for....: speaking
speaking for foreigners; ^{about} for
foreigners; to foreigners
These two languages--which
one is harder?

For foreigners which of the two
languages is more difficult?

Méihgwokyáhn

Ngóh mǎhjí bo.
Yànwaih ngóh jihng haih hohkgwo
Gwóngdúngwá ja.
mǎhtúhng

Gwóngdúngwá túhng Gwokyúh yáuh
mǎyéh mǎhtúhng a?

Gee, I don't know.
Because I've only studied
Cantonese.
not alike, different,
difference
Cantonese and Mandarin--how do
they differ?

Búndeihyáhn

kèihsaht
chíh
Kèihsaht Gwóngdúngwá túhng Gwokyúh
yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.

actually
similar, resemble
Actually Cantonese and Mandarin
have many similarities.

Méihgwokyáhn

fànbiht
móuh fànbiht
Néih jíkhaih wah Gwóngdúngwá túhng
Gwokyúh móuh mǎyéh daaih fànbiht
lo bo?

difference
there's no difference
You're saying that there are no
big differences between
Cantonese and Mandarin? (He
doesn't believe it)

Búndeihyáhn

Gám yauh àh haih.

geui

No, I'm not saying that either.
[that way--also-not]
sentence

sàamléuhng geui

two or three sentences,
(i.e., a few sentences)

Bātgwo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn
góngdākyùhn gé.

However it is difficult to
explain [tell and be able
to finish] in just a few
sentences.

B. Recapitulation:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in
Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Búndeihyàhn

Tèngginwah hohk Jùngmán ge
ngoihgwokyàhn dòsou dōu hohk
Gwokyúh--
Haih m̀hhaih jàn ga?

I hear that foreigners who
study Chinese for the most
part study Mandarin--
Is that true?

Méihgwokyàhn

Haih jàn ga.
Daahnhaih hái Hèunggóng jauh yáuh
hóudò Méihgwokyàhn dōu hohk
Gwóngdùngwá la.

Yes, that's right.
But in Hong Kong a lot of
Americans study Cantonese.

Búndeihyàhn

Gám, hái líhngsihwún jowh sih
gó dī Méihgwokyàhn haih m̀hhaih
gogo dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá ge
nē?

Do the Americans who work at
the consulate all study
Cantonese?

Méihgwokyàhn

M̀hhaih gé--
Yáuhdī hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdī
hohk Gwokyúh, yáuhdī léuhng
yeuhng dōu m̀hhohk.

No--
Some study Cantonese, some
study Mandarin, others don't
study either one.

Búndeihyàhn

Deui ngoihgwokyàhn làih góng,
ní léuhng yeuhng wá, bīn
yeuhng nàahndī a?

Which of the two languages
is more difficult for
foreigners?

Méihgwokyáhn

Ngóh m̄hji bo, yánwaih ngóh jihngaih hohkgwo Gwóngdùngwá ja. Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh yáuh mēyéh m̄htùhng a?	Gee, I don't know, because I've only studied Cantonese. Cantonese and Mandarin--how do they differ?
---	---

Búndeihyáhn

Kèihsaht Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh yáuh hóudò hóu chíh ge.	Actually Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.
--	--

Méihgwokyáhn

Néih jíkhaih wah, Gwóngdùngwá tùhng Gwokýuh móuh mēyéh daaih fànbiht lo bo?!	You're saying that Cantonese and Mandarin don't have any big differences? (He doesn't believe it.)
--	---

Búndeihyáhn

Gám yauh m̄hhaih. Bātgo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn góngdākýuhn gé.	No, I'm not saying that either. [that way--also not] However it is difficult to explain in just a few sentences.
---	--

II. NOTES

1. chíh 'similar to,' 'resembles'

In the spoken language chíh, 'is similar to,' 'resembles' does not stand alone in the affirmative, but is preceded by hóu: hóu chíh, [very similar], i.e., 'similar.' The negative and question forms pattern regularly.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ex: 1. Kéuih hóu chíh Mähma. | She resembles her mother. |
| 2. Kéuih m̄hchíh Mähmā. | She doesn't resemble her mother. |
| 3. Kéuih chíh m̄hchíh Mähmā a? | Does she resemble her mother? |

(See Drill 1)

2. yáuhdí, 'some'

a. yáuhdí may be either modifier or head.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdí noi^hgwok^hyáhn Some foreigners can speak
sík góng Gwóngdungwá. Cantonese.

2. Yáuhdí sík góng, daahn- Some can speak, but can't
haih mhsík se. write.

b. yáuhdí..., yáuhdí... = some..., some...; some..., others...

In paired clauses yáuhdí..., yáuhdí... form a set meaning: 'some (do this), some (do that);' 'some (do this), others (do that)'

Ex: Yáuhdí yám^hgán heis^héui, Some are drinking soft drinks and
yáuhdí yám^hgán be^hjau. others are drinking beer.

(See BC and Drill 5)

c. yáuhdí is used only in subject position, not in object position.

In object position where English would have 'some' as modifier to a noun object, Cantonese uses dí + N to represent 'some N.' But where English has 'some' as the pronoun object of the verb, Cantonese, in keeping with its characteristic absence of pronoun object (See Lesson 3, p. 67), does not have an object to the verb.

Ex: 1. Yáuhdí béng hóu hóusihk, Some cookies are quite good,
yáuhdí mhhaih géi some aren't so good.
hóusihk.

2. Siháh dí béng lā! Try some cookies!

3. Siháh lā! Try some!

d. Comparison with yáuhshíh, 'sometimes'

yáuhdí is a nominal expression, and yáuhshíh a verbal one.

Ex: 1. Gó dí yáhn yáuhdí heui (Of) those people, some went
yám chah, yáuhdí hai out to tea, and others
ukkei. stayed at home.

2. Gó dí yáhn yáuhshíh Those people sometimes go
heui yám chah, yáuhshíh out to tea and sometimes
hai ukkei. stay home.

(See Drill 5)

3. Duplicated Measures for individual nouns = 'every N,' 'all Ns,' 'Ns all V'

In Lessons 20 and 23 you learned duplicated Measures in relation to Timewords-- for example, nihnnihñ, 'every year,' jiuñiu, 'every morning,' gogo laihbaai, 'every week.'

In this lesson you encounter the duplicated individual Measure used to mean 'every,' 'all' in relation to its individual noun. In duplicated form the Measure occurs in a set with a following dōu: M-M dōu V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'

Ex: gogo dōu V = 'every M Vs,' 'all Ms V'

Méihgwokyahn gogo dōu V = Americans, all V

Gogo Méihgwokyahn dōu ... = Every American Vs

<u>Hái lihngsihwún jowh sih</u>	Those Americans who work at
<u>gōdī Méihgwokyahn haih</u>	the Consulate-- do they
<u>mhhaih gogo dōu hōhk</u>	all study Cantonese?
<u>Gwóngdungwá ge nē?</u>	

(See BC and Drill 10)

The duplicated Measure can either precede or follow the noun it is measure to, and in a follow sentence can occur without its noun referent. When it precedes its noun referent, it modifies the noun, which is subject of the sentence; when it follows its noun referent, the sentence is in Topic;Comment form, with the noun as Topic and the duplicated Measure serving as subject of the Comment sentence. (See examples above)

The noun yahn, 'person,' is used as a Measure in duplicated form to mean 'everybody.'

Ex: yahn yahn = everybody

Yahn yahn dōu jùngyi sihk faahn. Everybody likes to eat.

4. dòsou, 'most,' 'the majority;' 'mostly,' 'for the most part,' 'the majority of the time'

a. dòsou may modify an otherwise unmodified noun, in which case its sentence position is before the noun:

Ex: Dòsou sailóugō dōu jùngyi Most children like to drink
yam heiseui. soft drinks.

b. Elsewhere, dòsou follows the subject and comes just before the verb.

- Ex: 1. Kéuih dòsou góng He speaks Cantonese most
Gwóngdungwá. of the time.
2. Ngòhdeih dòsou haih We for the most part
gam góng. express it that way.
3. Gó dí yahn dòsou Those people speak Cantonese
góng Gwóngdungwá. most of the time
or:
Those people-- most of them
speak Cantonese.

(See BC and Drill 10)

5. kèihsaht, 'in actuality,' 'really,' 'but really...'

Kèihsaht leads off a response sentence, indicating disagreement with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence.

- Ex: Kéuih wah kéuih sīk sé jih. He said he could write Chinese,
Kèihsaht yat go jih dòu but actually he couldn't
mhsik sé. write a word.

(See BC)

6. lo bo, sen. suf.

The sentence suffix lo bo gives to the sentence to which it attaches the connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.

- Ex: A: Gwóngdungwá tūhng Gwok- Cantonese and Mandarin have many
yuh yauh hóudò hóu similarities.
chih ge.
- B: Néih jikhaih wah, Gwóng- You're saying that Cantonese and
dungwá tūhng Gwokyuh Mandarin don't have any big dif-
mòuh méyeh daaih fan- ferences?! (The English here
biht lo bo?! would be more apt to be: 'You're
not saying...' to indicate protest-
ing disbelief.)

(See BC)

7. m̀t̀uhng, 'not alike,' not used in the affirmative.

The verb t̀uhng, 'to be alike, similar to' is used in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

Ex: q	Ni gih̄n t̀uhng gó gih̄n t̀uhng m̀t̀uhng a?	Are this one and that one alike?
n	Nī gih̄n t̀uhng gó gih̄n m̀t̀uhng.	This one and that one are not alike.
a	Nī gih̄n t̀uhng gó gih̄n yátyeuhng.	This one and that one are alike.

(See BE and Drills 6,7,8)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Néih wah kéuih <u>chíh</u> m̀hchíh m̀h̄mā a?
 (chíh X =
 resemble X)
 Do you think he looks like Mother?</p> <p>+ 2. /S̀aiyàhn/
 (Westerner, European,
 Caucasian)</p> <p>+ 3. /D̀akgwokyàhn/
 (a German, Germans)</p> <p>+ 4. /Faatgwokyàhn/
 (Frenchman)</p> <p>5. /néih s̀insàang/</p> <p>6. /kéuih bàhbā/</p> | <p>1. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh m̀h̄mā a?</p> <p>2. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh S̀aiyàhn a?
 Do you think he looks like a European?</p> <p>3. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh D̀akgwokyàhn a?</p> <p>4. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh Faatgwokyàhn a?</p> <p>5. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh néih s̀insàang a?</p> <p>6. Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih bàhbā a?</p> |
|---|--|

Comment: S̀aiyàhn [West-person], refers to Caucasians, and is translated as 'European' in Hong Kong, though it includes non-European Caucasians as well.

- a. Repeat, with responses, according to teacher's nod or shake, thus:

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā a? /nod/

S: Hóu chíh kéuih m̀h̄mā.

T: Néih wah kéuih chíh m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā a? /shake/

S: Dōu m̀hchíh kéuih m̀h̄mā.

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih haih dá bō ge. T: He's a ball player.

S: Kéuih dō. m̀hchíh haih dá bō gé. S: He doesn't look like a ball player.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Kéuih haih maaih ngūk ge.
 He's a real estate agent.</p> <p>2. Kéuih haih duhk syù ge.
 He's a student.</p> | <p>1. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih maaih ngūk gé.</p> <p>2. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih duhk syù gé.</p> |
|---|---|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. Kéuih haih jòuh yīsāng ge.
He's a doctor. [work as a
doctor, be a doctor] | 3. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih jòuh
yīsāng gé. |
| 4. Kéuih haih jyú faahn ge.
She's a cook. | 4. Kéuih dōu m̀hchíh haih jyú
faahn gé. |

Comment: The sentence suffix gé said with light stress and rising intonation indicates doubt.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih ge Yíngmàhn góngdāk
tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám.
He speaks English just like
an American. | 1. Kéuih ge Yíngmàhn góngdāk
tùhng Méihgwokyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám. |
| 2. /Yíngmán/Yínggwokyàhn/ | 2. Kéuih ge Yíngmán góngdāk
tùhng Yínggwokyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám. |
| + 3. /Faاتمán/Faatgwokyàhn/
(French language) (Frenchman)
(also: Faاتمàhn) | 3. Kéuih ge Faاتمán góngdāk
tùhng Faatgwokyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám. |
| 4. /Yahtmán/Yahtbúnyàhn/ | 4. Kéuih ge Yahtmàhn góngdāk
tùhng Yahtbúnyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám. |
| + 5. /Dākmán/Dākgwokyàhn/
(German language) (German person)
(also: Dākמàhn) | 5. Kéuih ge Dākמàhn góngdāk
tùhng Dākgwokyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám.
He speaks German just
like a German. |
| + 6. /búndeihwá/búndeihyàhn/
(the local language) | 6. Kéuih ge búndeihwá góngdāk
tùhng búndeihyàhn yāt-
yeuhng gám. |

4. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Hmm...néih t̀ngdóu
+ mēyéh s̀ng a?
/dihnwá/ | T: What <u>sound</u> (or what <u>noise</u>) do
you hear? |
| S: Hóu chíh haih dih-
wá gám s̀ng bo. | S: It sounds like a telephone.
[It seems to be a telephone
that kind of sound.] |
| 1. Hmm...néih t̀ngdóu mēyéh | 1. Hóu chíh haih dá páai gám |

- sèng a? /dá páai/
 2. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /kinggái/
 3. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /fóchē/
 4. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /laahmchē/
 5. Hmm...néih têngdóu mēyéh sèng a? /sāuyāngèi/
 ++ 6. Hmm...néih mǎhdóu mēyéh meih a? /bējáu/
 What smell do you smell?
mǎhn = to smell
meih = a smell
7. Hmm...néih mǎhdóu mēyéh meih a? /jǐng bēng/
 What's that smell?
- sèng bo.
 2. Hóu chíh haih kinggái gám sèng bo.
 3. Hóu chíh haih fóchē gám sèng bo.
 4. Hóu chíh haih laahmchē gám sèng bo.
 5. Hóu chíh haih sāuyāngèi gám sèng bo.
 6. Hóu chíh haih bējáu gám meih bo.
 It smells like beer.
7. Hóu chíh jǐng bēng gám meih bo.
 Smells like a cake being baked.

5. Alteration Drill

- Ex: T: Yáuhdí yǎhn jǔngyi dá páai, yáuhdí jǔngyi yáuhséui. T: Some people like to play mahjong, others like to swim.
 S: Ngóh yáuhsíh jǔngyi dá páai, yáuhsíh jǔngyi yáuhséui. S: I sometimes like to play mahjong and sometimes like to go swimming.
1. Yáuhdí yǎhn tái hei, yáuhdí tái dihnsih. 1. Ngóh yáuhsíh tái hei, yáuhsíh tái dihnsih.
 2. Yáuhdí yǎhn hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhdí hohk Gwokýuh. 2. Ngóh yáuhsíh hohk Gwóngdùngwá, yáuhsíh hohk Gwokýuh.
 3. Yáuhdí yǎhn síh Jǔngchoi, yáuhdí síh Sāichāan. 3. Ngóh yáuhsíh síh Jǔngchoi, yáuhsíh síh Sāichāan.
 4. Yáuhdí yǎhn daap syùhn, yáuhdí chón fēigēi. 4. Ngóh yáuhsíh daap syùhn, yáuhsíh chón fēigēi.
 5. Yáuhdí yǎhn daap bāsí, yáuhdí chón díksí. 5. Ngóh yáuhsíh daap bāsí, yáuhsíh chón díksí.
 6. Yáuhdí yǎhn góng Faatmán, yáuhdí góng Dákmán. 6. Ngóh yáuhsíh góng Faatmán, yáuhsíh góng Dákmán.

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Nĭ jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng ge jē. T: This one and that one are just alike.

S: Nĭ jèung m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jèung ga. S: This one is not like that one.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Nĭ faai tùhng gó faai yātyeuhng ge jē. | 1. Nĭ faai m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó faai ga. |
| 2. Nĭ bùi tùhng gó bùi yātyeuhng ge jē. | 2. Nĭ bùi m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bùi ga. |
| 3. Nĭ tou tùhng gó tou yātyeuhng ge jē. | 3. Nĭ tou m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó tou ga. |
| 4. Nĭ jĭ tùhng gó jĭ yātyeuhng ge jē. | 4. Nĭ jĭ m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jĭ ga. |
| 5. Nĭ jek tùhng gó jek yātyeuhng ge jē. | 5. Nĭ jek m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jek ga. |
| 6. Nĭ jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng ge jē. | 6. Nĭ jèung m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó jèung ga. |

Comment: tùhng can be the verb of the predicate in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

	Subject	Predicate	
n	Nĭgo	m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó go.	This one is not like that one.
q	Nĭgo	tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó go a?	Is this one like that one?
a	Nĭgo tùhng gógo	yātyeuhng.	This one is like that one.

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nĭ bún tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bún a? T: Is this book like that one?

S: Nĭ bún tùhng gó bún yáuh móuh fànbiht a? S: Is there any difference between this book and that one?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nĭ deui tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó deui a? | 1. Nĭ deui tùhng gó deui yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 2. Nĭ tĭuh tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó tĭuh a? | 2. Nĭ tĭuh tùhng gó tĭuh yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 3. Nĭ bá tùhng m̀h̀t̀h̀ng gó bá a? | 3. Nĭ bá tùhng gó bá yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4. Ní bāau tūhng m̀ht̀t̀hng gó bāau a? | 4. Ní bāau tūhng gó bāau yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 5. Ní gāan tūhng m̀ht̀t̀hng gó gāan a? | 5. Ní gāan tūhng gó gāan yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |
| 6. Ní júng tūhng m̀ht̀t̀hng gó júng a? | 6. Ní júng tūhng gó júng yáuh móuh fànbiht a? |

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Chàhlàuh tūhng chāan-sāt yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a?
T: What's the difference [what things are not alike] between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?

S: Chàhlàuh tūhng chāan-sāt yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a?
S: What's the difference (or what are the differences) between a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Gwóngdúng choi tūhng Seuhng-hói choi yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a? | 1. Gwóngdúng choi tūhng Seuhng-hói choi yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a? |
| 2. Júngchoi tūhng Sāichāan yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a? | 2. Júngchoi tūhng Sāichāan yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a? |
| 3. Jáugā tūhng jáudim yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a? | 3. Jáugā tūhng jáudim yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a? |
| 4. Chàhlàuh tūhng jáugā yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a? | 4. Chàhlàuh tūhng jáugā yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a? |
| 5. Ngūk tūhng ngūkkéi yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng a? | 5. Ngūk tūhng ngūkkéi yáuh m̀t̀t̀hng fànbiht a? |

9. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ní dī sām dòsou haih làahm ge. /jeuk/

T: Most of these dresses are blue. [blue ones].

S: Ngóh dòsou jeuk làahm sām.

S: I wear blue dresses most of the time. or I mostly wear blue dresses.

1. Ní dī pihnggwó dòsou haih hùhng ge. /sikh/

1. Ngóh dòsou sihk hùhng pihnggwó.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 2. Nǐ dī bēng dòsou haih tǐhm ge.
/sǐhk/ | 2. Ngóh dòsou sǐhk tǐhm bēng. |
| 3. Nǐ dī mǒuhgān dòsou haih daaih ge.
/yuhng/ | 3. Ngóh dòsou yuhng daaih mǒuhgān. |
| 4. Nǐ dī bējáu dòsou haih dung ge.
/yám/ | 4. Ngóh dòsou yám dung bējáu. |
| 5. Nǐ dī hàaih dòsou haih lòihlǒu ge.
/jeuk/ | 5. Ngóh dòsou jeuk lòihlǒu hàaih. |
| 6. Nǐ dī fu dòsou haih gauh ge.
/jeuk/ | 6. Ngóh dòsou jeuk gauh fu. |

10. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gogo sailóugō dōu jǔngyi yám hei-séui.

T: All children like to drink soft drinks.

S: Sailóugō dòsou dōu jǔngyi yám hei-séui.

S: Most children like to drink soft drinks.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Gogo sailóugō dōu jǔngyi sǐhk bēng. | 1. Sailóugō dòsou dōu jǔngyi sǐhk bēng. |
| 2. Gàangāan jáugā dōu yáuh Gwóng-dǔng choi sǐhk. | 2. Jáugā dòsou dōu yáuh Gwóng-dǔng choi sǐhk. |
| 3. Gogo ngoihgwokyáhn dōu jǔngyi yám jáu. | 3. Ngoihgwokyáhn dòsou dōu jǔngyi yám jáu. |
| + 4. Gogo <u>néuihyán</u> dōu jǔngyi jeuk leng sām.
([female-person] <u>woman</u> , <u>women</u>)
Every woman likes to wear pretty clothes. | 4. Néuihyán dòsou dōu jǔngyi jeuk leng sām.
Most women like to wear pretty clothes. |
| + 5. Gogo <u>nàahmyán</u> dōu jǔh sǐh.
([male-person] <u>man</u> , <u>men</u>)
Every man works. | 5. Nàahmyán dòsou dōu jǔh sǐh.
Most men work. |

Comment: Note the use of reduplicated Noun Measures gogo, gàangāan to mean 'every,' 'each' Noun. This corresponds to the reduplicated time expression measures nihnnih, gogo láihbaai, etc, previously studied, meaning 'every, each time expression.' Note also the tendency to form a set with dōu.

11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Deui ngóh làih góng, yat chǐn mǎn taai dò laak. T: Speaking for myself, one thousand dollars is too much. or For me, one thousand dollars is too much.

S: Deui ngóh làih góng, yat chǐn mǎn dò gwotàuh laak. S: For me, one thousand dollars is much too much.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ bún syù taai nàahn laak. | 1. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ bún syù nàahn gwotàuh laak. |
| 2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ dǐ faaijǐ taai dyùn laak. | 2. Deui ngóh làih góng, nǐ dǐ faaijǐ dyùn gwotàuh laak. |
| 3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gǎan ngūk taai sai laak. | 3. Deui ngóh làih góng, gó gǎan ngūk sai gwotàuh laak. |
| 4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sǎu-yāngèi hòidāk taai daaih sèng laak. | 4. Deui ngóh làih góng, go sǎu-yāngèi hòidāk daaih sèng gwotàuh laak. |
| + <u>hòì sǎuyāngèì =</u>
<u>turn on the radio</u>
For me, the radio is turned on too loud. | |
| 5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahng-hei hòidāk taai dung laak.
For me, the air conditioner is turned on too cold. | 5. Deui ngóh làih góng, go láahng-hei hòidāk dung gwotàuh laak. |
| + 6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sǎam gihn taai <u>siu</u> laak.
For me, three is too few. | 6. Deui ngóh làih góng, sǎam gihn siu gwotàuh laak. |

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh daap fóchē. Fóchē léuhng dím hòì. T: I'm going to take the train. The train leaves at two o'clock.

S: Ngóh daap léuhng dím hòì ge fóchē. S: I'm taking the train that leaves at 2 o'clock.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ngóh mǎhjungyi néuihyán. Néuihyán jungyi góng yéh. | 1. Ngóh mǎhjungyi jungyi góng yéh ge néuihyán.
I don't like talkative women. |
| 2. Nàahmyán jungyi néuihyán. Néuihyán sǐk jyúsìhk. | 2. Nàahmyán jungyi sǐk jyúsìhk ge néuihyán. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Ngóh mhmáaih yéh.
Máaih yéh yiu béi hóu dò
chín. | 3. Ngóh mhmáaih yiu béi hóu dò
chín ge yéh. |
| 4. Ngóh mhcchéng dájáp.
Dájáp mhcjúngyi jough yéh. | 4. Ngóh mhcchéng mhcjúngyi jough
yéh ge dájáp.
I'm not going to hire an
amah who doesn't like to
work. |
| 5. Kéuih hóusiu máaih lāangsāam.
Lāangsāam hóu gwai. | 5. Kéuih hóusiu máaih hóu gwai
ge lāangsāam. |

13. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gó go Yínggwokyáhn
haih ngóh pāhng-
yáuh. Kéuih jeuk
lāahm sēutsāam.

T: That Englishman is my friend.
He is wearing a blue shirt.

S: Jeuk lāahm sēutsāam
gó go Yínggwokyáhn
haih ngóh pāhng-
yáuh.

S: That Englishman (who is)
wearing the blue shirt is
my friend.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Gó go sailógō haih kéuih ge
jai. Kéuih yáuhgán séui.
That child is his son.
He is swimming. | 1. Yáuhgán séui gó go sailógō
haih kéuih ge jái.
That child (who is)
swimming is his son. |
| 2. Gó go yáhn haih ngóh mähmā.
Kéuih dágán dihnwá. | 2. Dágán dihnwá gó go yáhn
haih ngóh mähmā. |
| 3. Gó go ngoihgwokyáhn gaau ngóh
Yíngmáhn. Kéuih yámgán
cháh. | 3. Yámgán cháh gó go ngoih-
gwokyáhn gaau ngóh
Yíngmáhn. |
| 4. Gó go néuihyán haih ngóh dá-
jáp. Kéuih saigán sām. | 4. Saigán sām gó go néuihyán
haih ngóh dájáp. |
| + 5. Gó go <u>sailouhnéui</u> haih ngóh
ge néui. Kéuih jeuk hùhng
kwáhn.
That <u>little girl</u> is my
daughter. | 5. Jeuk hùhng kwáhn gó go
sailouhnéui haih ngóh ge
néui. |
| 6. Gó go Faatgwokyáhn haih kéuih
néuihpāhngyáuh. Kéuih hái
daaihhohek gaau Faatmáhn. | 6. Hái daaihhohek gaau Faatmáhn
gó go Faatgwokyáhn haih
kéuih néuihpāhngyáuh. |

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ní léuhng júng chē,
bīn júng hóudī a?
/Dāk gwok/Faat gwok/

T: Which of these two kinds of
cars is better? or
Of these two kinds of cars
which is better? /Germany/
France/

S: Dāk gwok chē tūhng
Faat gwok chē, bīn
júng hóudī a?

S: Which is better--German cars
or French cars? [Between
German cars and French cars,
which is better?]

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Ní léuhng ga sāuyāngèi, bīn
ga hóudī a? /daaih gó ga/
sai gó ga/</p> <p>2. Ní léuhng jèung tóí, bīn jèung
lengdī a? /chèuhngdī gó
jèung/dyúndī gó jèung/</p> <p>3. Ní léuhng bún syù, bīn bún
pèhngdī a? /háuh gó bún/
+ <u>bohk gó bún/</u>
+ <u>the thick one</u>
<u>the thin one</u>
<u>háuh = thick</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;"><u>bohk = thin</u></p> <p>4. Ní léuhng jí bējáu, bīn jí
hóuyámdī a? /Hèunggóng/
Ngoih gwok/</p> <p>5. Ní léuhng go gúngyáhn, bīn go
kàhnlihk dī a?
/daaih dī gó go/saidī gó go/
/the older one/the younger
one/</p> | <p>1. Daaih gó ga sāuyāngèi tūhng
sai gó ga, bīn ga hóudī a?</p> <p>2. Chèuhngdī gó jèung tóí
tūhng dyúndī gó jèung,
bīn jèung lengdī a?</p> <p>3. Háuh gó bún syù tūhng bohk gó
bún, bīn bún pèhngdī a?
Which is cheaper--the thick
book or the thin one?</p> <p>4. Hèunggóng bējáu tūhng
Ngoih gwok bējáu, bīn jí
hóuyámdī a?</p> <p>5. Daaih dī gó go gúngyáhn
tūhng saidī gó go, bīn
go kàhnlihk dī a?</p> |
|---|--|

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwóngdùngwá tūhng
Gwok yúh dōu gam
nàahn ge laak.

T: Cantonese and Mandarin are
both equally difficult.

S: Gwóngdùngwá tūhng
Gwok yúh, Gwóng-
dùngwá nàahndī.

S: Between Cantonese and Mandarin,
Cantonese is a bit more
difficult. or
Cantonese is a bit more
difficult than Mandarin.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán dōu gam yih ge laak. | 1. Faatmán tùhng Dākmán, Faatmán yihdī. |
| 2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go dōu gam leuhnjeuhn ge laak. | 2. Ngóh go tùhng néih go, ngóh go leuhnjeuhndī. |
| 3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou dōu gam gauh ge laak. | 3. Nī tou tùhng gó tou, nī tou gauhdī. |
| 4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai dōu gam háuh. | 4. Nī faai tùhng gó faai, nī faai háuhdī. |
| 5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn dōu gam bohk. | 5. Nī gihn tùhng gó gihn, nī gihn bohkdī. |
| 6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan dōu gam hóusihk. | 6. Jùngchoi tùhng Sāichāan, Jùngchoi hóusihkdī. |

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu. /chèuhngdī/

T: This one is as high as that one.

S: Nī jèung tùhng gó jèung yātyeuhng gam gòu, bātgow nī jèung chèuhngdī jē.

S: This one is as high as that one, but this one is a little longer.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih. /gwaidī/ | 1. Nī bún tùhng gó bún yātyeuhng gam daaih, bātgow nī bún gwaidī jē. |
| 2. Chóh bāsí tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chin. /noihdī/ | 2. Chóh bāsí tùhng chóh fóchē yātyeuhng gam dò chin, bātgow chóh bāsí noihdī jē. |
| 3. Nī gāan tùhng gó gāan yātyeuhng gam dò chin jòu. /dò go chisó/ | 3. Nī gāan tùhng gó gāan yātyeuhng gam dò chin jòu, bātgow nī gāan dò go chisó jē. |
| 4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu. /guihdī/ | 4. Tái dihnsih tùhng tái hei yātyeuhng gam hóu, bātgow tái dihnsih guihdī jē. |
| 5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu. /yuhng dōdī/ | 5. Syutgwaih tùhng láahngheigèi yātyeuhng gam gányiu, bātgow syutgwaih yuhng dōdī jē. |
| 6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai. /faaidī/ | 6. Daap fēigēi tùhng daap syùhn yātyeuhng gam gwai, bātgow daap fēigēi faaidī jē. |

7. Néuihyán tùhng nàahmyán yāt-
yeuhng gam hóu. /kinggái
dōdī/

7. Néuihyán tùhng nàahmyán
yāt yeuhng gam hóu, bāt gwo
néuihyán kinggái dōdī jē.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chà mhdāk gei dò = chàmhdò = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]
- 2) Mhgingdāk ā! = Not necessarily!
- 3) Fāanjing = anyway, besides,...
- 4) Néih go yàhn jànhaih ā = You really are something!
- 5) sàangjò = gave birth (to)
- 6) hōisām = happy
- 7) jihgéi ge = one's own, your own, etc.
- 8) Mhsái gam mēyéh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?
- 9) séungfaat = idea, concept
- 10) A Jèung = Mrs. Jèung's husband
- 11) hóu chíh = similar to; A similar to B.
(A Jèung is similar to Wòhng Tāai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Which is more expensive-- Chinese food or Western food?
2. Does your child speak English or Cantonese?
3. Someone told me that some Americans don't speak English--is that true?
4. Miss Chan looks like her younger brother.

B. And he replies:

1. Perhaps Western food is more expensive; however among Chinese food some is cheap and some expensive.
2. He speaks Cantonese mostly, but he can speak a little English too.
3. Yes, it's true. Do all Chinese people know how to speak Chinese?
4. Do you know her mother? She also looks like her mother.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5. You speak Cantonese just like a Cantonese. | 5. You praise me too much--I speak very awkwardly. |
| 6. He's a teacher. | 6. He doesn't look like a teacher. |
| 7. (sniff-sniff:) What's that smell? | 7. Smells like beer. |
| 8. How many languages can he speak altogether? | 8. He speaks four altogether-- French, German, English, and Cantonese. |
| 9. Are there two typewriters alike? | 9. No, this one isn't like that one. |
| 10. This radio is like that one, right? | 10. Yes, they're just alike. |
| 11. This cloth is too thin--do you have any heavier? | 11. Yes, go downstairs. |
| 12. I hear you speak Cantonese very well. | 12. Actually I just speak a few sentences. |
| 13. How do you like soup? | 13. It's too peppery for me. |
| 14. What's the difference between <u>jáugā</u> and <u>chàhlàuh</u> ? | 14. Actually the difference is quite small. |

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 27

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. bohk | thin (in thickness, as of cloth) |
| 2. bündei hwá | local language |
| 3. chíh | v: is similar to; resembles |
| 4. Dǎkgwok yáhn [go] | n: German |
| 5. Dǎkmáhn (also: <u>-mán</u>) | n: German (language) |
| 6. deui <u>X</u> làih góng | Ph: speaking for <u>X</u> , from the point of view of <u>X</u> |
| 7. dòsou | att/adv: mostly, for the most part; the majority |
| 8. Faatgwok yáhn [go] | n: Frenchman |
| 9. Faatmáhn (also: <u>-mán</u>) | n: French (language) |
| 10. fànbiht | n: difference |
| 11. háuh | adj: thick |
| 12. hòi sāuyāngēi | VO: turn on the radio |
| 13. jàn ge | Ph: true; the truth |
| 14. kèihsaht | Ph: in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence |

15. lǐhngsǐhgwún	n: consulate
16. lo bo!	ss: with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying
17. mǎhtùhng	v: not alike, used in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative
18. mǎhn	v: to smell
19. meih	n: smell
20. nàahmyán [go]	n: man
21. néuihyán [go]	n: woman
22. sailouhnéui [go]	n: little girl
23. Sàiyàhn [go]	n: Westerner, European, Caucasian
24. sèng	n: sound
25. síu	adj: few
26. yáuhdí	Ph: some, a few
27. yáuhdí..., yáuhdí...	Ph: some..., others...

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(The amah answers a ring at the door-bell to find the postman at the door:)

Gúngyáhn

Jouh māt a?

What is it?

Yáuhcháai

yáuhcháai

postman

gwahouh seun

registered letter

sàu

receive, collect, take in

sàu seun

receive letters

Sàu gwahouh seun a.

Registered letter. [Receive a registered letter.]

Gúngyáhn

sihtáu

employer, boss

Dím syun a?

'How can we handle this?'

or 'What's to be done?'

Ngóh sihtáu mhhái douh bo, dím syun a?

My boss isn't home--what'll I do?

sáujuhk

procedure(s)

yiú mēyéh sáujuhk?

What procedure(s) is (are) necessary?

Ngóh mǎhji yiú mēyéh sáujuhk ga.

I don't know what the procedure is.

Yáuhcháai

Mhánganyiu gé.

That's all right.

chím méng

sign one's name

chím go méng hái nǐdouh

sign your name here

yiú néih chím go méng hái nǐdouh

require you to sign your name here

jíyiu...,jauh

just have to...; as long as you

jíyiu néih chím go méng,

you just have to sign

jauh...

your name, and ...

Jíyiu néih chím go méng hái nǐdouh, jauh dāk ge laak.

You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

Gúngyàhn

m̀hsík jìh
Ngóh m̀hsík jìh ga, dím chím a?

to be illiterate
I can't read or write--how can
I sign?

Yáuhchàai

juhng yáuh móuh bíngó sĭk
jìh ge hái douh a?
chèuhjǒ...(jǐngoih)

is there anyone else here
who can read and write?
aside from, apart from,
besides

chèuhjǒ néih jǐngoih
Gám, chèuhjǒ néih jǐngoih, juhng
yáuh móuh bíngó sĭk jìh ge hái
douh a?

apart from you, besides you
Well, aside from you, is there
anyone else here who can
read and write?

Gúngyàhn

Móuh lòh.

No. (childishly feeling sorry
for herself)

Yáuhchàai

tòuhjēung
Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?

chop, seal
In that case, do you have a
chop?

Gúngyàhn

só
sómàaih

to lock
lock up, lock tight, lock
away

ngóh go tòuhjēung sómàaihjǒ
ngóh go tòuhjēung béijǒ
sihtáu

my chop has been locked up
my chop was given to the
boss

Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijǒ sihtáu
tùhng ngóh sómàaih.

My chop I gave to the boss to
lock up for me.

sósìh

key

Ngóh yauh móuh sósìh gé.

And I don't have the key.

gwaih

cupboard; dresser

gwaihtúng

drawer

jǐnglaahn go gwaihtúng

break the drawer

jèung

take

jèung go gwaihtúng jinglaahn	take the drawer and break
chèuihfèi	it; i.e., break the drawer
Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng	unless; would have to;
jinglaahn lā...	only if
	Unless I took the drawer and
	broke it... (thinking it over)
	<u>Yàuhchāai</u>
màhfàahn	trouble
Syun laak.	Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!
Gám a, gam màhfàahn.	Oh, such trouble!
Syun la, syun laak.	Never mind!
bātyùh...bá la(ak)	it would be preferable to...
yàuhjinggúk	post office
bātyùh heui yàuhjinggúk ló	it would be better to go
bá laak	to the post office to
	get it
jihgéi	oneself, himself, myself,
	etc.
sihtáu jihgéi	the boss himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	tell your boss to go get
heui ló	it himself
giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	tell your boss to go to
heui yàuhjinggúk ló	the post office himself
	to get it
Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi	You'd better tell your boss
heui yàuhjinggúk ló bá laak.	to go to the post office
	himself to get it.
	<u>Gungyāhn</u>
Hóu la.	All right.
yāt Verbl, jauh Verb ² la.	as soon as..., then ...
yāt fānlàih, jauh heui la	as soon as he returns,
	he'll go
jìkhāak	immediately
Kéuih yāt fānlàih, ngóh jauh	As soon as he comes back, I'll
giu kéuih jìkhāak heui lā.	tell him to go right away.

Yàuhchàai

Haih gám wah la.

That's the way! [Be (it) the way (you) say]

Gùngyàhn

M̀ngòisaai.

Thanks a lot.

B. Recapitulation:

(The amah answers a ring at the door-bell to find the postman at the door:)

Gùngyàhn

Jouh māt a?

What is it?

Yàuhchàai

Sàu gwahouh seun a.

Registered letter. [Take a registered letter.]

Gùngyàhn

Ngòh sìhtáu m̀hhái douh bo, dím syun a?

My boss isn't home--what'll I do?

Ngòh m̀hji yiu m̀yéh sáujukh ga.

I don't know what procedures are required.

Yàuhchàai

Jíyiu néih chím go méng hái nídouh, jauh dāk ge laak.

You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

Gùngyàhn

Ngòh m̀hsík jih ga, dím chím a?

I can't read and write--how can I sign?

Yàuhchàai

Gám, ch̀euihjó néih jingoih, juhng yáuh móuh b́nggo sík jih ge hái douh a?

Well, aside from you, is there anyone else here who can read and write?

Gùngyàhn

Móuh lòh.

No.

Yàuhchàai

Gám, néih yáuh móuh tòuhjēung a?

In that case, do you have a chop?

Gùngyàhn

Ngóh go tòuhjēung béijó sihtáu
 tùhng ngóh sómáaih.
 Ngóh yauh móuh sósih gé.
 Chèuihfèi jèung go gwaihtúng
 jínglaahn lā...

My chop I gave to the boss
 to lock up for me.
 And I don't have the key.
 Unless I broke the drawer...
 (thinking it over)

Yàuhchàai

Gám a, gam màhfàahn.
 Syun la, syun laak.
 Bātyùh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi
 heui yàuhjìnggúk ló bá laak.

Oh, such trouble!
 Never mind!
 You'd better tell your boss to
 go to the post office himself
 to get it.

Gùngyàhn

Hóu la.
 Kéuih yāt fàanlāih, ngóh jauh giu
 kéuih jíkhaak heui la.

All right.
 As soon as he comes back, I'll
 tell him to go right away.

Yàuhchàai

Haih gám wah la.

That's the way.

Gùngyàhn

Mhòisaaì.

Thank you.

II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

tòuhjēung, 'seal,' 'chop'

A tòuhjēung is a seal (usually referred to as a 'chop') cut from stone or wood, bearing the name of the owner. Documents may be validated by stamping with one's chop rather than by signature.

B. Structure Notes

1. jíyiu..., jauh..., = 'If only..., then...'; 'You just have to..., and';
'As long as..., then...'

Ex: 1. Jíyiu yáuh sei go yáhn, You have to have 4 people
jauh hóyih dá mah to play mahjong.
jéuk laak.

2. Jíyiu haih gònjehng ge, As long as it's clean, it
jauh géi gauh dōu móuh doesn't matter how old
sówaih ge. it is.

(See BC)

2. chèuihjó...(jǐ ngoih)... = 'aside from...,' 'with the exception of...,'
'in addition to...'

- a. Chèuihjó...(jǐ ngoih), juhng... = 'aside from..., also...,'
'in addition to..., also!..'

Ex: Chèuihjó Méihgwok Aside from America, I have also
(jǐ ngoih), ngoh been to Japan. or: In addition
juhng heuigwo to America, I have also been
Yahtbun tím. to Japan.

(See Drill 10)

- b. Chèuihjó...(jǐ ngoih), jauh mēyéh (or bīndouh, etc.) dōu mē Verb =
'Aside from..., no thing/place/one/etc. else,' or 'With the
exception of..., no thing/place/one/etc. else.'

Ex: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, jauh Aside from America, I
bīndouh dōu meih haven't gone anywhere.
heuigwo laak.

(See Drill 11)

b. In double clause sentences.

In double clause sentences, chèuihfèi pairs with ji, jauh, or yùhgwó m̀h̄hah, with chèuihfèi introducing the first clause, and the paired conjunction operating in the second clause. The chèuihfèi clause establishes the necessary condition, and the second states the consequences.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| 1. Chèuihfèi.....,ji..... | } | Must be....,in order that... |
| 2. Chèuihfèi.....,jauh..... | | Only if...., then... |
| | | Unless....., then... |
| 3. Chèuihfèi.....,yùhgwo m̀h̄hah..... | | Must...., otherwise,... |

- Ex: 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui, He'll have to go before I go.
ngòh ji heui. i.e.,
Only if he goes will I go.
2. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀h̄heui, Only if he doesn't go, will I go.
ngòh jauh heui. or:
I'll go unless he doesn't.
3. Chèuihfèi kéuih m̀h̄heui, If he doesn't go, I won't go.
ngòh jauh m̀h̄heui lak.
4. Chèuihfèi kéuih heui; He'll have to go; otherwise,
yùhgwo m̀h̄hah, ngòh I won't go.
m̀h̄heui.

(See Drills 5-9)

4. bātyùh.X.bá laak (or lā) = 'it would be better to...'

Bātyùh...bá laak suggests alternate plan X as being preferable to the plan already proposed.

- Ex: A: Ngòhdeih máaih nīdī Let's buy these, what do
hou m̀h̄hóu a? you say?
- B: Nīdī taai gwai, bātyùh These are too expensive-- it
máaih pēngdī ge bá lā. would be better to buy
cheaper ones instead.

(See BC and Drill 2)

5. yāt..., jauh... = as soon as..., (then)...

These two form a set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a sentence.

Ex: Ngóh yāt yáuh chín, As soon as I have some money,
 (ngóh) jauh chéng néih I'll invite you out to
 sìhk faahn laak. dinner.

(See BC and Drill 3)

6. jeung, 'take'

jeung N, V. = take N and V it.

This pattern rearranges a basic VO structure into two verbal phrases, with the object of the basic VO structure brought forward in the sentence to become the object of jeung, thus:

VO becomes jeung O, V...

Ex: V O jeung O V
 dalaahn go gwaihtúng → jeung go gwaihtúng dalaahn
 break the drawer → take the drawer and break it

(See BC)

This pattern only occurs if the basic verb is a two-part verb or has a post verbal complement.

(The jeung O, V-complement pattern in Cantonese is the equivalent of the bǎ O, V-complement pattern in Mandarin, but the bǎ construction is more common in Mandarin than is the jeung construction in Cantonese.)

III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 1. a. <u>dihnbou</u>
b. fùng dihnbou</p> <p>+ c. <u>dá fùng dihnbou</u>
d. dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā
e. heui dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā.</p> <p>+ f. heui <u>dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā++</u></p> <p>g. séung heui dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā</p> <p>h. Ngóh séung heui dihnboughk dá fùng dihnbou béi màhmā.</p> | <p>1. a. telegram(s), cablegram(s)
b. telegram, cablegram
c. <u>send a telegram</u>
d. send a telegram to Mother
e. go to send a telegram to Mother
f. go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother
g. plan to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother
h. I want to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram to Mother.</p> |
|---|---|

Comment: A common alternate pronunciation of dihnboughk is dihnboughk.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>2. a. seun</p> <p>+ b. <u>gei seun</u></p> <p>c. heui gei seun
d. heui yàuhjinggúk gei seun
e. heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun
f. yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun
g. Ngóh yiu heui jógán yàuhjinggúk gei seun.</p> <p>+ 3. a. <u>wùih seun</u>
b. wùih seun béi kéuih
c. meih dākhaahn wùih seun béi kéuih tím</p> | <p>2. a. letter(s)
b. <u>mail letters, send letters</u>
c. go to mail letters
d. go to the post office to mail letters
e. go to the nearby post office to mail a letter
f. have to go to the nearby post office to mail some letters
g. I have to go to the nearby post office to mail letters.</p> <p>3. a. <u>answer a letter, reply by letter</u>
b. answer his letter, reply to him by letter
c. haven't had time to answer his letter</p> |
|---|--|

- | | |
|---|---|
| d. juhng meih dākhaahn wùih
seun béi kéuih tím | d. still haven't had time
to answer his letter |
| e. ngóh juhng meih dākhaahn wùih
seun béi kéuih tím | e. I still haven't had time
to answer his letter. |
| f. Léuhng go láihbaai laak, ngóh
juhng meih dākhaahn wùih
seun béi kéuih tím. | f. It's been 2 weeks, and I
still haven't had time
to answer his letter. |
| g. Yíhging léuhng go láihbaai
laak, ngóh juhng meih dāk-
haahn wùih seun béi kéuih tím. | g. It's already been two
weeks, and I still
haven't had time to
answer his letter. |
| 4. a. chéuhng tòuh | 4. a. 'long distance' |
| + b. <u>chéuhng tòuh dihnwá</u> | b. <u>long distance phone call</u> |
| c. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá | c. make a long distance
phone call |
| d. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá wah
kéuih jí | d. make a long distance call
and tell him. |
| e. dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá wah
kéuih jí jí dāk laak | e. ought to make a long
distance phone call
and tell him |
| f. yiu dá chéuhng tòuh dihnwá
wah kéuih jí jí dāk laak | f. ought to make a long
distance phone call and
tell him |
| g. yiu jíkhāak dá chéuhng tòuh
dihnwá wah kéuih jí jí
dāk laak. | g. ought to make a long
distance phone call
immediately and tell
him. |
| h. Néih yiu jíkhāak dá chéuhng
tòuh dihnwá wah kéuih jí
jí dāk laak. | h. You ought to make a long
distance phone call
immediately and tell
him. |

2. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Ngóh jingéi heui
ló. /sihtáu/

T: I'll go get it myself. /boss/

S: Bātyùh sihtáu heui
bá lā.

S: It would be better for the
boss to go instead.

1. Ngóh séung jòu ga láahngheigēi.
/máaih/

1. Bātyùh máaih ga bá lā.

2. Ngóh séung máaih gihn sēutsāam.
/léuhng gihn/

2. Bātyùh máaih léuhng gihn
bá lā.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 3. Ngóh séung sé seun béi kéuih.
/dá dihnbou/ | 3. Bātyùh dá dihnbou bá lā. |
| 4. Ngóh séung wuhn yāt baak mán
Méihgām. /baak ngh/ | 4. Bātyùh wuhn baak ngh mán
bá lā. |
| 5. Ngóh séung ngaandī fan gaau.
/yihgā/ | 5. Bātyùh yihgā heui fan bá lā. |
| 6. Ngóh séung tingjiu heui tái
yīsāng. /gàmyaht/ | 6. Bātyùh gàm̄yaht heui bá lā. |

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh heui tái heì.
The moment he gets some
leisure time, he goes
to see a movie. <u>or</u>
As soon as he has some
leisure time, he'll go to
see a movie. <u>or</u>
As soon as he had some
leisure time, he went to
see a movie. | 1. Kéuih yāt dākhàahn, jauh
heui tái heì. |
| 2. /yáuh chin/jài heui ngànhhòhng/ | 2. Kéuih yāt yáuh chin, jauh
jài heui ngànhhòhng. |
| + 3. /sàudóu seun/wùih/
(<u>receive a letter</u>) | 3. Kéuih yāt sàudóu seun, jauh
wùih. |
| 4. /yáuh síngaan/tái syù/ | 4. Kéuih yāt yáuh síngaan,
jauh tái syù. |
| 5. /gau chin/jouh sán sām/ | 5. Kéuih yāt gau chin, jauh
jouh sán sām. |
| + 6. /m̄hjingsàhn/tái yīsāng/
(<u>not feel well; i.e.</u>
<u>feel sick</u>) | 6. Kéuih yāt m̄hjingsàhn, jauh
tái yīsāng.
The moment he felt sick,
he saw a doctor. |
| 7. /tóuhngoh/sihk yéh/ | 7. Kéuih yāt tóuhngoh, jauh
sihk yéh. |
| 8. /génghot/yiu yám bējáu/ | 8. Kéuih yāt génghot, jauh yiu
yám bējáu. |

4. Expansion Drill .

Ex: T: M̀ngòì néih tùhng
ngòh sái gònjehng
go chyùhfong là.

T: Please clean the kitchen.

S: M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak
tùhng ngòh sái
gònjehng go chyùh-
fong là.

S: Please clean the kitchen right
away.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh tongháh
tiuh kwahn là. | 1. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng
ngòh tongháh tiuh kwahn
là. |
| + 2. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh <u>sàanjó</u>
go sàuyāngèi là.
(<u>sàan sàuyāngèi</u> =
turn off the radio)
Please turn off the radio. | 2. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng
ngòh sàanjó go sàuyāngèi
là. |
| 3. M̀ngòì néih tùhng ngòh heui
máaih dī béng fàanlāih là.
Please go out for me and buy
some cookies and bring them
back. | 3. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak tùhng
ngòh heui máaih dī béng
fàanlāih là. |
| 4. M̀ngòì néih heui wánháh kéuih là. | 4. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak heui
wánháh kéuih là. |
| 5. M̀ngòì néih yahphei táiháh
kéuih jough méyéh là. | 5. M̀ngòì néih jìkhāak yahphei
táiháh kéuih jough méyéh
là. |

5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Hóu tihm ji sihk.

T: Only if it's sweet will I eat
it. or
I won't eat it unless it's
sweet.

S: Chèuihfèi hóu tihm,
ji sihk.

S: Only if it's sweet will I eat
it. or
It has to be very sweet be-
fore I eat it.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Hóu ngáahnfan ji fan. | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu ngáahnfan,
ji fan. |
| 2. Hóu gònjehng ji yiu. | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng,
ji yiu. |
| 3. Hóu génghot ji yám séui. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu génghot,
ji yám séui. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4. Hóu dung ji jeuk lāangsaam. | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu dung, ji jeuk lāangsaam. |
| + 5. Hóu yíht ji <u>hòih láahnghei.</u>
It has to be very hot before
I <u>turn on the air conditioner.</u> | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu yíht, ji hòih láahnghei. |
| 6. Hóu guih ji fan. | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu guih, ji fan. |
| 7. Hóu daaih sèng ji têngdākdóu. | 7. Chèuihfèi hóu daaih sèng, ji têngdākdóu. |

6. Alteration Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Mhfanfu dōu mhjauh. | T: If you don't tell him, he won't do it. |
| S: Chèuihfèi fānfu, ji jauh. | S: Only if you order him will he do it. (i.e. unless you tell him, he won't do it.) |
| 1. Mhmahn, dōu mhgóng. | 1. Chèuihfèi mahn, ji góng. |
| 2. Mhchéng, dōu mhlàih. | 2. Chèuihfèi chéng, ji làih. |
| 3. Mhgiu, dōu mhhéisàn. | 3. Chèuihfèi giu, ji héisàn. |
| 4. Mhdá, dōu mhpa.
If you don't spank him, he won't take you seriously. | 4. Chèuihfèi dá, ji pa. |
| 5. Mhgóng, dōu mhjidou.
If he hadn't told me, I wouldn't know. | 5. Chèuihfèi góng, ji jidou. |
| 6. Mhhohk, dōu mhsík. | 6. Chèuihfèi hohk, ji sík. |

7. Alteration Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Yùngwó hóu pèhng, ngóh jauh máaih gé. | T: If it's very cheap, I'll buy it. |
| S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèhng--
mhhaih, jauh mh-
máaih. | S: It has to be cheap, otherwise I won't buy it. <u>or</u>
Unless it's cheap, I won't buy it. |
| 1. Yùngwó hóu leng, ngóh jauh júngyi gé. | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng--mhhaih, jauh mhjúngyi. |
| 2. Yùngwó hóu yih, ngóh jauh hohk gé. | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu yih--mhhaih, jauh mhhohk. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. Yùngwó hóu kàhnlihk, ngóh jauh chéng gé. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu kàhnlihk--mhhaih, jauh mchéng. |
| 4. Yùngwó hóu chàauh, ngóh jauh tong gé. | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu chàauh--mhhaih, jauh mhtong. |
| 5. Yùngwó hóu yeh, ngóh jauh chók díksí gé. | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu yeh--mhhaih, jauh mhchók díksí. |
| 6. Yùngwó hóu meih, ngóh jauh sihk gé. | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu meih--mhhaih, jauh mhsihk. |

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Mhpèhng, dōu mhmáaih. T: If it's not cheap, I won't buy it.

S: Chèuihfèi hóu pèhng ji máaih. S: Only if it's cheap will I buy it. or
It has to be cheap, before I buy it.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Mhleng, dōu mhjeuk. | 1. Chèuihfèi hóu leng ji jeuk. |
| 2. Mhhóu, dōu mhmáaih. | 2. Chèuihfèi hóu hóu ji máaih. |
| 3. Mhtóuhngoh, dōu mhsihk. | 3. Chèuihfèi hóu tóuhngoh ji sihk. |
| 4. Mhgònjehng, dōu mhoi. | 4. Chèuihfèi hóu gònjehng ji oi. |
| 5. Mhlahttaat, dōu mhwuhn. | 5. Chèuihfèi hóu lahttaat ji wuhn. |
| 6. Mhtihm, dōu mhsihk. | 6. Chèuihfèi hóu tihm ji sihk. |

9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sìn lā.
He would have to (<u>or</u> will have to) leave first.
(i.e. Unless he leaves, I'm not going to leave. <u>or</u> He'll have to go first, before I move an inch.) | 1. Chèuihfèi kéuih jáu sìn lā. |
| 2. /sihk/ | 2. Chèuihfèi kéuih sihk sìn lā. |

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 3. /wán/ | 3. Chèuihfèi kéuih wán sìn lā.
She'll have to start
looking for it first (before I'll help her). |
| 4. /mahn/ | 4. Chèuihfèi kéuih mahn sìn lā. |
| 5. /fànfu/ | 5. Chèuihfèi kéuih fànfu sìn lā. |
| 6. /héisáu/ | 6. Chèuihfèi kéuih héisáu sìn lā. |
| 7. /chíhdou/ | 7. Chèuihfèi kéuih chíhdou sìn lā.
He would have to be late
for work first (before I
have an excuse to fire
him.) |

a. Do the above exercise again, the teacher giving the right hand column sentences, and the students in turn expanding the sentences with a related clause, for example:

T: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā.

S: Chèuihfèi kéuih chéng sìn lā, ngóh jì chéng kéuih.
I'll only invite him if he invites me first.

10. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méihgwok,
néih juhng heuigwo
bīndouh a?
/Yahtbún/ | T: In addition to (or aside from)
America, where else have you
been? /Japan/ |
| S: Chèuihjó Méihgwok,
ngóh juhng heuigwo
Yahtbun tīm. | S: In addition to (or aside from)
America, I've also been to
Japan. |
| 1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, néih
juhng sīk bīngó a?
/Wòhng Táai/ | 1. Chèuihjó Wòhng Sàang, ngóh
juhng sīk Wòhng Táai tīm. |
| 2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, néih juhng
sīk jòuh méyeh a? /tong sām/ | 2. Chèuihjó jyú faahn, ngóh
juhng sīk tong sām tīm. |
| 3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, néih
juhng sīk gong méyeh wá a?
/Gwokyúh/ | 3. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, ngóh
juhng sīk gong Gwokyúh
tīm. |
| 4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, néih juhng
jùngyi méyeh sīk a? /luhk/ | 4. Chèuihjó hùhng sīk, ngóh
juhng jùngyi luhk sīk
tīm. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>+ 5. Chèuihjò tihmsyùn yú, néih juhng séung yiu dī mēyéh a?
+ /syunlaaht tòng/
(tihmsyùn yú = sweet and sour fish)
(syunlaaht tòng = vinegar-pepper soup)
What else do you want besides sweet and sour fish?</p> | <p>5. Chèuihjò tihmsyùn yú, ngóh juhng séung yiu go syunlaaht tòng tím.</p> |
|---|---|
-

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chèuihjò Méihgwok, néih juhng heuigwo bīndouh a?

T: In addition to America, where else have you been?

S: Chèuihjò Méihgwok, ngóh jauh bīndouh dōu meih heuigwo laak.

S: Except for America, I haven't been anywhere. or I haven't been anywhere except America.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Chèuihjò cháau faahn, néih juhng sihkjò mēyéh a?
2. Chèuihjò chēunglīm, néih juhng máaihjò mēyéh a?
3. Chèuihjò jī bāt, néih juhng wāndou mēyéh a?
4. Chèuihjò tái syù, néih juhng joughjò mēyéh a?
5. Chèuihjò heui kéuih douh, néih juhng yiu heui <u>bīnsyu</u> a?
(<u>bīnsyu</u> = where?)
6. Chèuihjò jyú chāan jīngoih, néih juhng sīk jough mēyéh a?</p> | <p>1. Chèuihjò cháau faahn, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh sihk.
2. Chèuihjò chēunglīm, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh máaih laak.
3. Chèuihjò jī bāt, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu wán mhdou laak.
4. Chèuihjò tái syù, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu móuh jough laak.
5. Chèuihjò heui kéuih douh, ngóh jauh bīnsyu dōu mhheui laak.
6. Chèuihjò jyú chāan jīngoih, ngóh jauh mēyéh dōu mhsīk jough ge laak.</p> |
|---|---|

Comment: bīnsyu and bīndouh are used interchangeably. In Hong Kong bīndouh is heard more frequently than bīnsyu.

12. Substitution Drill:

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Chèuihjó yàuh séui jingoih,
+ ngòh <u>yeuhngyeuhng</u> dòu jùngyi.
Aside from swimming, I like
<u>everything</u>. <u>or</u>
With the exception of swim-
ming, I like everything.</p> <p>2. /laht yéh/</p> <p>3. /tái syù/</p> <p>4. /dá jih/</p> <p>5. /jyú faahn/</p> <p>6. /Yahtbún choi/</p> <p>7. /léuihhàhng/</p> | <p>1. Chèuihjó yàuh séui jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> <p>2. Chèuihjó laht yéh jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> <p>3. Chèuihjó tái syù jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> <p>4. Chèuihjó dá jih jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> <p>5. Chèuihjó jyú faahn jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> <p>6. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi jin-
goih, ngòh yeuhngyeuhng
dòu jùngyi.</p> <p>7. Chèuihjó léuihhàhng jingoih,
ngòh yeuhngyeuhng dòu
jùngyi.</p> |
|--|---|

13. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>a. wùih seun</p> <p>b. wùih seun béi ngòh</p> <p>c. meih wùih seun béi ngòh</p> <p>d. juhng meih wùih seun béi ngòh</p> <p>e. kéuih juhng meih wùih seun
béi ngòh</p> <p>f. daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih
wùih seun béi ngòh</p> <p>g. ngòh séjó fùng seun béi kéuih,
daahnhaih kéuih juhng meih
wùih seun béi ngòh</p> <p>h. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai chíhn
séjó fùng seun béi kéuih,
daahnhaih kéuih juhng</p> | <p>a. answer a letter</p> <p>b. answer my letter</p> <p>c. hasn't answered my letter</p> <p>d. still hasn't answered my
letter.</p> <p>e. She still hasn't answered
my letter.</p> <p>f. but she still hasn't
answered my letter.</p> <p>g. I wrote a letter to her, but
she still hasn't replied.</p> <p>h. I wrote her a letter a
week ago, but she still
hasn't replied.</p> |
|--|---|

meih wùih seun béi ngòh.

14. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai (jǐ)
chíhn séjǒ fùng seun béi
kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih
juhng meih wùih seun béi
ngòh.
I wrote him a letter a week
ago, but he still hasn't
answered.</p> | <p>1. Ngòh yāt go láihbaai (jǐ)
chíhn séjǒ fùng seun béi
kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih
juhng meih wùih seun béi
ngòh.</p> |
| <p>2. /bun go yuht/</p> | <p>2. Ngòh bun go yuht jíchíhn
séjǒ fùng seun béi kéuih,
daahnhaaih kéuih juhng
meih wùih seun béi ngòh.</p> |
| <p>3. /sei houh/</p> | <p>3. Ngòh sei houh jíchíhn séjǒ
fùng seun béi kéuih,
daahnhaaih kéuih juhng
meih wùih seun béi ngòh.
I wrote him a letter
before the 4th of the
month, but he still hasn't
answered.</p> |
| <p>4. /léuhng go láihbaai/</p> | <p>4. Ngòh léuhng go láihbaai
jíchíhn séjǒ fùng seun
béi kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih
juhng meih wùih seun béi
ngòh.</p> |
| <p>5. /léuhng go géi láihbaai/</p> | <p>5. Ngòh léuhng go géi láihbaai
jíchíhn séjǒ fùng seun
béi kéuih, daahnhaaih kéuih
juhng meih wùih seun béi
ngòh.</p> |
| <p>6. /léuhng go lèhng láihbaai/
(a little more than two
weeks)</p> | <p>6. Ngòh léuhng go lèhng láih-
baai jíchíhn séjǒ fùng
seun béi kéuih, daahnhaaih
kéuih juhng meih wùih seun
béi ngòh.
I wrote him a letter more
than two weeks ago, but
he still hasn't answered.</p> |
| <p>7. /go géi láihbaai/</p> | <p>7. Ngòh go géi láihbaai jíchíhn
séjǒ fùng seun béi kéuih,
daahnhaaih kéuih juhng meih
wùih seun béi ngòh.</p> |

I wrote him a letter more
than a week ago, but he
still hasn't answered.

15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh béijó dī chīn kéuih. Kéuih tūhng ngóh jàijó heui ngàhnhòhng. T: I gave him the money. He put it into the bank for me.
S: Ngóh béijó dī chīn kéuih tūhng ngóh jàiheui ngàhnhòhng. S: The money I gave (him), he put in the bank for me.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih sómáaih hái gwaihtúng. | 1. Kéuih béijó bún syù ngóh tūhng kéuih sómáaih hái gwaihtúng. |
| 2. Ngóh béijó tiuh sósih kéuih. Kéuih tūhng ngóh níngjó heui béi màhmā. | 2. Ngóh béijó tiuh sósih kéuih tūhng ngóh níngheui béi màhmā. |
| 3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē. Gājē tūhng ngóh níngjóheui gei. | 3. Ngóh béijó fùng gwahouhseun gājē tūhng ngóh níngheui gei. |
| 4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu. Sihtáu tūhng ngóh jàimáaih hái gwaihtúng. (<u>jàimáaih = put in and close up</u>) | 4. Ngóh béijó go tòuhjēung sihtáu tūhng ngóh jài-máaih hái gwaihtúng. |
| 5. Màhmā béijó gāan ūk ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih jòujó béi yahn. | 5. Màhmā béijó gāan ūk ngóh tūhng kéuih jòu béi yahn. |
| 6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh. Ngóh tūhng kéuih níngjó heui maaih. | 6. Ngóh chānchīk béijó ga gauh chē ngóh tūhng kéuih níngheui maaih. |

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Yáuh chīn, jauh mēyéh dōu máaih dōu. T: When you have money, you can buy anything.
S: Jíyiu yáuh chīn, jauh mēyéh dōu máaih dāk dōu. S: As long as you have money, you can buy anything.

1. Yáuh síhgaan, jauh bíndouh dōu 1. Jíyiu yáuh síhgaan, jauh

- | | |
|--|--|
| heuidāk. | bīndouh dōu heuidāk. |
| 2. Yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisi dōu heuidāk.
When you get a response, you can go any time. | 2. Jíyiu yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisi dōu heuidāk. |
| 3. Gau yáhn, jauh géi chéuhng dōu níngdāk.
When there are enough people, you can move it no matter how heavy it is. | 3. Jíyiu gau yáhn, jauh géi chuhng dōu níngdāk. |
| 4. Yáuhdāk sihk, jauh mēyéh dōu dāk. | 4. Jíyiu yáuhdāk sihk, jauh mēyéh dōu dāk. |
| 5. Yáuhdāk jyuh, jauh géichín yáhnngùng dōu dāk. | 5. Jíyiu yáuhdāk jyuh, jauh géichín yáhnngùng dōu dāk. |

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun meih a?
Have you received Mrs. Lee's letter yet? | 1. Néih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun meih a? |
| 2. /sàu mhsàudóu/ | 2. Néih sàu mhsàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a? |
| 3. /juhng meih sàudóu ...mē?/ | 3. Néih juhng meih sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun mē? |
| 4. /géisi/ | 4. Néih géisi sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a? |
| 5. /yáuh móuh/ | 5. Néih yáuh móuh sàudóu Léih Táai fùng seun a? |

18. Expansion Drill:

- Ex: 1. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge.
/ngàuhyuhk/+/
S: Chèuihjó ngàuh-yuhk, kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge.
- T: I eat all meats. /beef/
S: With the exception of beef, he eats all meats. or He eats all kinds of meat except beef.
2. T: Kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu sihk ge.
/ngàuhyuhk/-/
- T: He eats all meats. /beef/

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>S: Chèuihjó ngàuh-yuhk, kéuih mēyéh yuhk dōu m̄hsikh ge.</p> | <p>S: With the exception of beef, he doesn't eat any meat. <u>or</u> He doesn't eat any meat except beef.</p> |
| <p>1. Kéuih mēyéh wá dōu sīk góng.
/Gwóngdùngwá/-/</p> | <p>1. Chèuihjó Gwóngdùngwá, kéuih mēyéh wá dōu m̄hsīk góng.</p> |
| <p>2. Kéuih mēyéh choi dōu jùngyi.
/Yahtbun choi/+/</p> | <p>2. Chèuihjó Yahtbun choi, kéuih mēyéh choi dōu jùngyi.</p> |
| <p>3. Kéuih mēyéh Jùnggwok choi dōu sikh. /yúhgyū/+/</p> | <p>3. Chèuihjó yúhgyū, kéuih mēyéh Jùnggwok choi dōu sikh.</p> |
| <p>4. Kéuih mēyéh dōu yiu máaih.
/syutgwaih/-/</p> | <p>4. Chèuihjó syutgwaih, kéuih mēyéh dōu m̄hsái máaih.</p> |
| <p>5. Kéuih mēyéh sīk dōu jùngyi.
/húhng sīk/+/</p> | <p>5. Chèuihjó húhng sīk, kéuih mēyéh dōu jùngyi.</p> |
| <p>6. Kéuih mēyéh jáu dōu jùngyi yám.
/bējáu/-/
He likes all kinds of liquor.</p> | <p>6. Chèuihjó bējáu, kéuih mēyéh jáu dōu m̄hjùngyi yám.</p> |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) fo = goods
- 2) láih? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.
- 3) n̄ikheui = níngheui
- 4) m̄hchíh bo = Not likely!
- 5) Jàn m̄hfaahn = What a nuisance!
- 6) A Jyù = servant's name
- 7) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family' but it is not now restricted to that meaning.
- 8) louh = road
- 9) hòì wuhháu = open an account

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A. You say to the person sitting next to you:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Could you please tell me how to get to the cablegraph office? 2. I got a cablegram from my younger sister yesterday. 3. Oh-oh, I broke the teapot-- what'll I do? 4. I'll go get it myself. 5. I think I'll go to bed a little later. 6. Have you gotten a letter from your girl friend recently? 7. It's already been two weeks-- she certainly must have received my letter. 8. Mr. Brown asked us for dinner, but I don't want to go. 9. Hey, I can't find the key! 10. Please tell Mrs. Cheung to call me as soon as she gets in. 11. I have to go to the office as soon as I finish breakfast. 12. What kinds of alcoholic beverages do you like? 13. I like all alcoholic beverages except beer. 14. What procedures are required for getting an ID card? 15. I'm illiterate--how can I sign my name?! | <p>B. And he replies:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It's just beyond the Mandarin Hotel--do you know where the Mandarin is? 2. What did she say? 3. You'd better buy another one. 4. It'd be better for the boss to go. 5. You'd better go now, otherwise you'll be tired in the morning. 6. Yes, I got one the day before yesterday, but I haven't had time to answer it yet. 7. Unless she's off on a trip. 8. Unless you go, I'm not going. 9. It doesn't matter, the door isn't locked. 10. All right--does she know your phone number? 11. Do you drive down, or take the bus? 12. I don't like anything but beer. 13. You and I are not a bit alike! 14. I don't know. If you're an American, you'd better go to the American Consulate and ask. 15. So long as you use a chop, it's OK. |
|--|---|

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 28

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. bātyùh .ㄟ. bá laak
(or ...bá lā) | PhF: it would be preferable to do <u>X</u> |
| 2. bīnsyu? | QW: where? |
| 3. chèuihfèi | MA/Cj: unless...; only if |
| 4. chèuihjó...(jǐ ngoih) | PhF: aside from...; other than... |
| 5. chèuhng tòuh dihnwá | n: long distance phone call |
| 6. chǐm méng | VO: sign one's name |
| 7. dá chèuhng touh
dihnwá | VO: make a long distance phone call |
| 8. dá dihnbou | VO: send a telegram |
| 9. dihnbou | n: telegram, cablegram |
| 10. dihnbougúk or
dihnbouguk | n: telegram office |
| 11. Díng syun a? | Ph: 'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?'
or 'What's to be done?' |
| 12. fùng | m: for letter, telegram |
| 13. gei | v: to mail, send by mail |
| 14. gei seun | VO: mail a letter, send a letter |
| 15. gwahouh | VO: to register |
| 16. gwahouhseun | n: registered letter |
| 17. gwaihtúng | n: drawer |
| 18. Haih gám wah lā. | Ph: That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.] |
| 19. hòì láahnghei | VO: turn on the air conditioner |
| 20. jèung | CV: take |
| 21. jihgèi | NAdjunct: oneself, myself, himself, etc. |
| 22. jíkhaak | adv: immediately, right away |
| 23. jíyiu..., jauh... | PCj: just have to..., then...; as long as you..., then... |
| 24. lòh | ss: sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy |
| 25. -máaih | VSuf: together; tight |
| 26. màhfáahn | adj/n: trouble |
| 27. ìnhjingsàhn | adj: not feel well |
| 28. m̀hsík jih | Ph: illiterate |
| 29. sàan s̀auyāngèi | VO: turn off the radio |

30. sàu	v: receive, collect, take in
31. sàu seun	VO: receive a letter
32. sàujuhk	n: procedure(s)
33. sihtáu	n: employer, boss
34. só	v: lock
35. sómàaih	V: lock up, lock tight
36. sósih	n: key
37. Syun la(ak)!	Ph: Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!
38. syunlaaht tòng	Np: vinegar-pepper soup
39. tihmsyùn yú	Np: sweet and sour fish
40. tòujēung	n: chop, seal
41. wùih seun	VO: answer a letter
42. yāt <u>v¹</u> , jauh <u>v²</u> la.	PCj: as soon as..., then...
43. yàuhchàai	n: postman
44. yàuhjinggúk	n: post office
45. yàuhjingguhk	n: post office
46. yeuhngyeuhng	mm: everything, every kind of thing

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung:)

Hòh Sàang

ziu (Person Verb)

make (someone do something,)

cause (someone to do something)

Jèung Sàang, ziu néih dǎngjǒ gam
noih, jǎnhaih ànhóu yisi laak.

Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible
about making you wait for so
long.

Jèung Sàang

Mhngányiu.

That's all right.

faatsàng

happen

ngóh pa faatsàngjǒ mēyéh sih

I was afraid something had
happened

Daahnhaih ngóh jǐ néih hóusiu
chíhdou ge, ngóh pa faatsàngjǒ
mēyéh sih jē.

But I knew you are very seldom
late, and I was afraid some-
thing had happened.

Hòh Sàang

Haih a.

That's right.

johng

bump into

-chàn

injure, damage, hurt

johngchàn

bump into and injure

béi

by (introducing the agent
of an action)

ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chè

my girl was injured by a
car

johngchàn

hospital

yíyún

Ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chè johng-
chàn, yahpjǒ yíyún a.

My girl was hit by a car and
went to the hospital.

Jèung Sàang

Haih àh! Géisi a?

Really! When?

Hòh Sàang

fonggùng

leave work, get, off from
work

tàuhſɪn
Tàuhſɪn ngòhdeih fonggùng góján
ja.

just a while ago
Just a while ago as we were
leaving work.

Jèung Sàang

amáh
ngàihhím
Móuh ngàihhím amáh?

eh?! sent. suf., checking
an assumption
danger, dangerous
No danger, eh? (i.e., It wasn't
serious, was it?)

Hòh Sàang

Móuh!
chōchō
chōchō yíhwàih hóu ngàihhím
Móuh! Chōchō ngòh juhng yíhwàih
hóu ngàihhím tím.
sāumēi
fù yeuhk
Sāumēi fùjò yeuhk, yísāng jauh wah
fàandāk ngūkkéi laak.

'Nothing special' a response
making little of the topic
discussed.
at first, at the beginning
at first thought it quite
serious
At first I thought it was quite
serious.
in the end, finally
treat with medicine
In the end, after getting
treated with medicine, the
doctor said she could go home.

Jèung Sàang

Johngchàn bíndouh a?
geuk
tyúhn gwāt
Johngchàn jek geuk, hóuchóí móuh
tyúhndou gwāt ja.

Where (on the body) was she hit?
foot, leg
break bone
Her leg was hurt; luckily at
least the bone wasn't broken.

Jèung Sàang

Hái bíndouh johngchàn ga?

Where (in the city) was she hit?

Hòh Sàang

yúhn
lêih X

far
(distance) from X

lèih ngòhdeih séjihlàuh móuhgéiyúhn	not far from our office
Lèih ngòhdeih séjihlàuh móuh- géiyúhn ja.	At a place not far from our office.
<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
gahnjyuh	near
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng gódouh àh?	Near the Bank of China?
<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
jīgāan	between
hái 1 tùhng 2 jīgāan	between 1 and 2
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng tùhng Séuhngóhí Ngàhnhòhng jīgāan lòh.	Un-huh (nodding his head). Between the Bank of China and the Shanghai Bank.
<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
syun	is considered, can be con- sidered as ..., counted as.
Móuh sih dōu syun hóuchóí laak.	That there was no happening really can be considered lucky (i.e., She can consider herself lucky it wasn't serious.)
<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Ngòh dōu haih gám wah laak.	I think so too.

B. Recapitulation:(Mr. Ho arrives late for his
appointment with Mr. Cheung:)Hòh SàangJèung Sàang, yiu néih dǎngjǒ
gam noih, jànhaih mǎhóu yisi
laak.Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible
about making you wait for so
long.Jèung Sàang

Mhǎngyiu.

That's all right.

Daahnhaih ngòh jǐ néih hóusíu
chǐhdou ge, ngòh pa faatsǎngjǒBut I knew you are very seldom
late, and I was afraid some-

mēyéh sih jē.		thing had happened.
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Haih a.		That's right.
Ngóh néuihpáhngyáuh béi chē johngchàn, yahpjó yíyún a.		My girl was hit by a car and went to the hospital.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Haih àh! Géisih a?		Really! When?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Tàuhsein ngóhdeih fonggūng góján ja.		Just a while ago as we were leaving work.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Móuh ngáihhím amáh?		It wasn't serious, was it?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Móuh! Chōchō ngóh juhng yíhwàih hóu ngáihhím tím.		At first I thought it was quite serious.
Sāumēi fùjó yeuhk, yísāng jauh wah fàandāk ūkkéi laak.		In the end, after getting treated with medicine, the doctor said she could go home.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Johngchàn bíndouh a?		Where (on the body) did she get hurt?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Johngchàn jek geuk--hóuchóih móuh tyúhndou gwāt ja.		She got hurt in the leg--fortu- nately the bone wasn't broken.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Hái bíndouh johngchàn ga?		Where (in the city) was she hurt?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Lèih ngóhdeih séjihlàuh móuh- géiyúhn ja.		At a place not far from our office.
	<u>Jèung Sàang</u>	
Gahnjyuh Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng gódouh àh?		Near the Bank of China?
	<u>Hòh Sàang</u>	
Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái		Un-huh (nodding his head).

Júnggwok Ngáhnhòhng túhng
Seuhng hóí Ngáhnhòhng jígāan
lòh.

Between the Bank of China and
the Shanghai Bank.

Jèung Sàang

Móuh síh dōu syun hóuchóí laak.

It can really be considered
lucky that it wasn't serious.

Hòh Sàang

Ngòh dōu haih gám wah laak.

I think so too.

II. NOTES

1. S béi agent V sentence.

The agent of a painful action may be expressed in a co-verb phrase: béi + agent, 'by agent,' 'suffer agent' (to V). In such sentences the subject of the sentence is that thing or person receiving the harmful action.

S béi agent V

Ex: Go sáilougō béi ch̀ johngchàn. The child was struck and injured
by a car. [The child suffered
a car to bump into and injure
him]

a. Similarities to English passive construction.

- 1) As with the English passive, the subject of the béi X sentence is the receiver rather than the doer of the action.
- 2) The béi X phrase is similar to the 'by X' phrase in English identifying the doer of the action.

b. Dissimilarity to English passive construction.

In English there is a compulsory difference in verb form dependent on whether the subject of the sentence is the doer or receiver of the action of the verb (He hits/He is hit). In Cantonese the form of the verb is the same whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action. Compare:

S	(béi X) V	(O)	S	V
Ga <u>ch̀</u>		<u>johngchàn</u> go <u>sáilougō</u> .	The <u>car</u>	<u>struck</u> the child.
Go <u>sáilougō</u>		<u>béi ch̀</u> <u>johngchàn</u> .	The <u>child</u>	<u>was struck</u> by the car.

(See BC and Drill 3)

2. yi(person verb) = 'make (someone do something)' 'cause (someone to do something)

Example:

1. Yiu néih jǐng m̀hóu yisí bo. I feel bad about making you fix it.
(said by guest to hostess who has fixed tea herself in the absence of the cook)
2. Kéuih m̀hwúih yiu ngóh heui ge. He can't make me go.
3. Kéuih móuh yiu ngóh heui. He didn't make me go.
4. Ní dí yún haih m̀hhaih yísāng Is the doctor making you take
yiu neih sihk ga? these pills?

(See BC and Drill 10)

3. amáh (var: āma), sentence suffix.

amáh (or āma) has two different uses.

(1) as an interrogative sentence suffix checking on an assumption: amáh?

Example:

1. Móuh ngàihhím amáh? (It) wasn't serious, was it?
2. Néih m̀hhaih dáng ngóh āma? You're not waiting for me,
are you?
3. Néih luhk díim ji fong gùng It's six o'clock that you
āma? get off work, isn't it?
4. Néih juhng meih yáuh dihnwá You still don't have a phone
āma? yet, do you?

The āma? question suffix reflects a question in the mind of the speaker as to whether the idea he has about the situation is right.

Compare:

- Néih luhk díim ji fong gùng àh. You get off at six, don't you.
(is sure that he does-- the question is merely rhetorical)
- Néih luhk díim ji fong gùng āma? You get off at six, don't you?
(thinks that he does, but checking to make sure)

(See BC)

(2) as a non-interrogative, adds the connotation 'it's obvious that that's why/where/what/who' in a response sentence: amáh.

- Ex: A. Kéuih dímgaai gányah
mhfaan gung a? How come she's not at work today?
- B. Kéuih yáuh béhng āma. Because she's sick. (implying
nicely, not impatiently, that
it's obvious she'd have to be
sick not to be at work)

(See Drill 15)

4. hái bīndouh johngchàn a? = where (on the map) did you get hurt?
johngchàn bīndouh a? = where (on the body) did you get hurt?

In English 'Where did you get hurt?' could elicit the answer: 'On my elbow' or 'In the back yard,' but in Chinese the geographic place an action occurred is expressed in a hái phrase preceding the other verb, and the place on the body is expressed as the object of a VO construction.

Ex: Ngóh hái yàuhjinggúk I got hit opposite the post office.
deumihn johngchan.

Ngóh johngchàn go tàuh. I got hit on the head.

5. hái X tùhng Y jīgāan = between X and Y
yáuh X dou Y jīgāan = between X and Y

These two phrases pattern with the two different types of Placeword sentences: (1) the S hái PW sentence, and (2) the PW Subject yáuh M-N sentence.

- a. hái X tùhng Y jīgāan operates in the predicate in the S hái Placeword pattern.

Ex: S	P
Sp-M-N or Proper name	} Subj
	hái
	PW

Jùnggwok Ngàhnhòhng hái Máhtàuh tùhng Méingwok Jáudim jīgāan.

The Bank of China is between the
Pier and the American Hotel.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. yáuh X tühng Y jīgāan operates as the subject in the Placeword S yáuh M-N pattern.

Ex: S	P
PW-Subject	yáuh M - N
Yauh máhtàuh dou Méihgwok Jáudim jīgāan	yáuh gāan ngānhòhng.
	Between the Pier and the American Hotel there's a bank.

(See Drill 12)

The PW-Sub yáuh M-N sentence type permits hái X tühng Y jīgāan in Subject position as the PW-Subject.

Ex: Hái X tühng Y jīgāan yáuh Between X and Y there's a bank.
gāan ngānhòhng.

But the S hái PW sentence type doesn't permit the yáuh X dou Y jīgāan pattern.

6. lèih Placeword = (distance) from Placeword

a. Distance away from a place is expressed:

X léih Placeword (yáuh) adj of distance/distance measure

- Ex: 1. Jáudim léih nīdoh (yáuh) The hotel is far away
hóu yuhn ga. from here.
2. Jáudim léih nīdoh (yáuh) The hotel is about 3 miles
saam mǎi gamseuhnga. from here.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b. lèih occupies the position of a co-verb in the sentence, but as the negative and question forms of the sentence attach to the distance portion and not to the lèih portion, we classify lèih as a preposition and not a co-verb.

- Ex: 1. Jáudim léih nīdoh The hotel is not far from
mhahh géi yuhn jē. here.
2. Jáudim léih nīdoh Is the hotel far from here?
yuhn mhyuhn a?

(See Drill 6)

- c. Note that yáuh as an equating verb can be used as the verb of the predicate, or the center of the predicate can be an adjective or a nu-m compound of distance.

(See examples under a. above)

7. káhn and gahn(jyuh), 'near'

a. káhn, 'near'

káhn is an adjective which is used in the predicate. It does not take an object.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi lèih nīdoh [His house from here very near
hóu kahn jē. merely.]

His house is quite near here.

(See Drill 4)

b. gahn(jyuh), 'near'

gahn(jyuh) is a verb which takes an object. It patterns as a V in a VO construction.

Ex: Kéuih ngūkkéi gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk. His house is near
the post office.

Kéuih ngūkkéi gahn m̀hgahn yàuhjinggúk a? Is his house near
the post office?

M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng. Not near-- it's
near the airport.

(See BC and Drill 5)

III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kéuih mhdākhàahn, sóyih
m̀hheuidāk.
He was busy, so he couldn't
go. | 1. Kéuih mhdākhàahn, sóyih
m̀hheuidāk. |
| + 2. /m̀hsyùfuhk/
(<u>not feel well, not feel
comfortable.</u>) | 2. Kéuih m̀hsyùfuhk, sóyih
m̀hheuidāk.
He didn't feel well, so
he didn't go. |
| + 3. /faatsiù/
(<u>have a fever</u>) | 3. Kéuih faatsiù, sóyih m̀hheui-
dāk.
He had a fever, so he
couldn't go. |
| + 4. /sēungfùng/
(<u>have a cold, catch cold</u>) | 4. Kéuih sēungfùng, sóyih m̀h-
heuidāk.
He has a cold, so he can't
go. |
| + 5. /t̀auhtung/
(<u>have a headache</u>) | 5. Kéuih t̀auhtung, sóyih m̀hheui-
dāk.
She had a headache, so she
couldn't go. |
| + 6. /ỳauh behng/
(<u>be sick</u>) | 6. Kéuih ỳauh behng, sóyih m̀h-
heuidāk.
He's sick, so he can't go. |
| + 7. /behngj̀o/
(<u>got sick, get sick</u>) | 7. Kéuih behngj̀o, sóyih m̀hheui-
dāk.
He's gotten sick, so he
can't go. |
| + 8. /ditchàn/
(<u>fall and hurt yourself,
be dropped and get hurt</u>) | 8. Kéuih ditchàn, sóyih m̀h-
heuidāk.
She fell and hurt her
herself, so she can't go. |

2. Alteration/Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih ditchàn go
sailóugō.

T: She dropped the child and
hurt him.

S: Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu
ditchàn go sailóu-
gō!

S: Be careful, don't drop the
child and hurt him!

1. Kéuih j̀ingwaaihj̀o go láahnghei- 1. Hóu sēng a, m̀hhóu j̀ingwaaih

- | | |
|---|---|
| gēi.
He broke the air conditioner. | go láahngheigēi.
Be careful, don't break
the air conditioner! |
| 2. Kéuih chēchàn go néuihyán.
He ran over a woman (with his
car) and injured her. | 2. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu chēchàn
go néuihyán! |
| + 3. Ga chē johngchàn go <u>néuijái</u> .
His car bumped into a <u>girl</u>
and injured her. | 3. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu johngchàn
go néuijái! |
| 4. Kéuih dálaahnjó jek búi. | 4. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu dálaahn
jek búi! |
| 5. Kéuih jinglaahntaatjó gihn
chēuhngsāam. | 5. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu jinglaahnt-
taat gihn chēuhngsāam! |
| + 6. Kéuih <u>tong wòhngjó</u> tiuh baahk
fu.
She <u>scorched</u> the white pants.
[iron-yellowed] | 6. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu tong
wòhng tiuh baahk fu! |
| 7. Kéuih johngwaaihjó go dihnsih. | 7. Hóu sēng a, m̀h̀h̀óu johngwaaih
go dihnsih! |

3. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Ex: T: Go bīu jinglaahnjó. | T: The watch has been broken. |
| S: Go bīu béi yàhn
jinglaahnjó. | S: Somebody broke the watch.
[The watch was broken by
someone.] |
| 1. Jèk gāng dálaahnjó. | 1. Jèk gāng béi yàhn dálaahnjó. |
| 2. Go tòuhjēung jinglaahnjó. | 2. Go tòuhjēung béi yàhn jing-
laahnjó. |
| 3. Fùng gwahouhseun jingsāpjó. | 3. Fùng gwahouhseun béi yàhn
jingsāpjó. |
| 4. Tiuh sósih jingwaaihjó. | 4. Tiuh sósih béi yàhn jing-
waaihjó. |
| 5. Go gwaihtúng jinglaahnjó. | 5. Go gwaihtúng béi yàhn
jinglaahnjó. |
| 6. Fùng dihnbou jingchàauhjó.
The cablegram got wrinkled. | 6. Fùng dihnbou béi yàhn jing
chàauhjó. |
| 7. Go dihnwá ditwaaihjó.
The telephone dropped and
got out of order. | 7. Go dihnwá béi yàhn ditwaaih-
jó. |
| + 8. <u>Jèun yeuhkséui</u> dálaahnjó.
The bottle of [liquid]
medicine broke. | 8. Jèun yeuhkséui béi yàhn
dálaahnjó. |

(jèun = bottle having a stopper; [M])

(yeuhk'seui = liquid medicine)

- + 9. Jèun yeuhkyún dóuséjǒ.
The bottle of pills spilled.
(yeuhkyún = medicine in pill form)

9. Jèun yeuhkyún béi yàhn dóuséjǒ.

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok Lihngsih-gwun lèih nǐdoh hǒu kǎhn jē.
/móuh géi yúhn jē/

T: The American Consulate is quite near here. /not far/

S: Méihgwok Lihngsih-gwun lèih nǐdoh móuh géi yúhn jē.

S: The American Consulate is not far from here.

1. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh móuh géi yúhn jē.
/hǒu yúhn ga/

1. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh hǒu yúhn ga.

2. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh hǒu yúhn ga.
/hǒu kǎhn jē/

2. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh hǒu kǎhn jē.

3. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh hǒu kǎhn jē.
/dōu géi yúhn ga/

3. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh dōu géi yúhn ga.

4. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh dōu géi yúhn ga.
/m̄hah̄h géi yúhn jē/

4. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh m̄hah̄h géi yúhn jē.

5. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh m̄hah̄h géi yúhn jē.
/dōu m̄hsyun hǒu kǎhn ga/

5. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh dōu m̄hsyun hǒu kǎhn ga.

6. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh dōu m̄hsyundāk yúhn gé.
ga. /dōu m̄hsyundāk yúhn gé/

6. Méihgwok Lihngsihwún lèih nǐdoh dōu m̄hsyundāk yúhn gé.

Comment: Kǎhn is an adjective. It doesn't take an object:

Gàan ngànhòhng hǒu kǎhn jē. = The bank is quite near.

5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih gáan séjihlauh
gahn m̀hgahn J̀ung-
gwok Ngáhnhòhng a?
/yàuhjinggúk/

T: Is your office near the Bank
of China?

S: M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh
yàuhjinggúk.

S: No--it's near the post office.

1. Gó gáan jáugā gahn m̀hgahn
M̀eihgwok Lihngsihwun a?
/Faatgwok Lihngsihwun/

1. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Faatgwok
Lihngsihwun.

2. Kéuih gáan ũk gahn m̀hgahn Gáu-
lùhng yiyún a? /fēigēi-
chèuhng/

2. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh fēigēi-
chèuhng.

3. Gó gáan cháansāt gahn m̀hgahn
J̀unggwok Daaihohk a?
/Hèunggóng Daaihohk/

3. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Hèunggóng
Daaihohk.

4. Gáan jáudim gahn m̀hgahn fēi-
gēichèuhng a? /ngáhnhòhng/

4. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh ngáhnhòhng.

5. Sàam houh bāsi jaahm gahn m̀hgahn
ngáhnhòhng a? /gungsi/

5. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh gungsi.

6. Dihnbougúk gahn m̀hgahn Wihng
Ōn Gungsi a? /yàuhjinggúk/

6. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk.

7. Yahtbún Lihngsihwun gahn
m̀hgahn néih ũkkéi a?
/Wòhng Sàang ũkkéi/

7. M̀hgahn--gahnjyuh Wòhng Sàang
ũkkéi.

Comment: gahn(jyuh) is a transitive verb which takes an object
(VO):

Kéuih ngŭkkéi gahnjyuh
ngáhnhòhng.

His home is near the
bank.

6. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim
lèih nīdoh
yáuh géi yúhn
a? /yúhn m̀hyúhn/

T: How far is Mandarin Hotel
from here? /is (it) far?/

S: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim
lèih nīdoh yúhn
m̀hyúhn a?

S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from
here?

2. T: M̀ahnwàh Jáudim
lèih nīdoh
yúhn m̀hyúhn a?
/dihnbougúk/

T: Is the Mandarin Hotel far
from here?

S: Mǎnhwàh Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yúhn m̄hyúhn a?
S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from the telegraph office?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yúhn m̄hyúhn a?
/yáuh géidō go gàaiháuh/ | 1. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yáuh géidō go gàaiháuh a? |
| 2. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yáuh géidō go gàaiháuh a?
/yáuh géidō go chē jaahm/ | 2. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? |
| 3. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih dihnbou-gúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
/yáuhjinggúk/ | 3. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih yáuhjinggúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? |
| 4. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih yáuhjinggúk yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
/Hòuhwàh Heiyún/ | 4. Méihgwok Jǎudim lèih Hòuhwàh Heiyún yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a? |
| 5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh yáuh géidō go chē jaahm a?
/yáuh géi yúhn/ | 5. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh yáuh géi yúhn a? |
| 6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh yáuh géi yúhn a? /yúhn m̄hyúhn/ | 6. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh yúhn m̄hyúhn a? |
| 7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh yúhn m̄hyúhn a? /kǎhn m̄hkǎhn/ | 7. Hòuhwàh Heiyún lèih nǐdoh kǎhn m̄hkǎhn a? |

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Léuhng mǎn taai gwai.

T: Two dollars is too expensive.

S: Léuhng mǎn syun m̄hsyun gwai a?

S: Is two dollars considered expensive?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Chāt chek taai gòu. | 1. Chāt chek syun m̄hsyun gòu a? |
| 2. Gwóngdùngwá taai nàahnhoik. | 2. Gwóngdùngwá syun m̄hsyun nàahnhoik a? |
| 3. Gáulùhng yíyún hóu daaih. | 3. Gáulùhng yíyún syun m̄hsyun daaih a? |
| 4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu hóu gwai. | 4. Hèunggóng ūkjòu syun m̄hsyun gwai a? |
| + 5. Kéuih ge <u>behng</u> hóu gányiu.
His <u>illness</u> is serious. | 5. Kéuih ge behng syun m̄hsyun gányiu a? |
| 6. Kéuih jyúfáan hóu kǎhnlihk.
Her cook is very hard-working. | 6. Kéuih jyúfáan syun m̄hsyun kǎhnlihk a? |
| 7. Kéuih ge jáinéui hóu lēk. | 7. Kéuih ge jáinéui syun m̄hsyun lēk a? |

- a. Teacher asks questions and cues students to give affirmative or negative responses, thus:

Neg: X m̄hsyun Adj.

Aff: X béigaau Adj. dī.

or X hóu Adj.

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh chōchō dásyun
bùn ngūk gé.

T: At first I planned to move
[house].

S: Ngóh chōchō dásyun
bùn ngūk gé, sāumēi
ji kyutdihng m̄hbùn
ge jē.

S: At first I planned to move,
but finally I decided not to.

1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui Tòih-
wāan gé.

1. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui
Tòihwāan gé, sāumēi ji
kyutdihng m̄hheui ge jē.

2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui léuih-
hāhng gé.

2. Ngóh chōchō dásyun heui
léuihhāhng gé, sāumēi ji
kyutdihng m̄hheui ge jē.

3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp yīyún
gé.

3. Ngóh chōchō dásyun yahp
yīyún gé, sāumēi ji
kyutdihng m̄hyahp ge jē.

4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih seun
gé.

4. Ngóh chōchō dásyun wùih
seun gé, sāumēi ji kyut-
dihng m̄hwùih ge jē.

5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómàaih
mùhn gé.

5. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sómàaih
mùhn gé, sāumēi ji kyut-
dihng m̄hsó ge jē.

6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sihk yeuhk
gé.

6. Ngóh chōchō dásyun sihk
yeuhk gé, sāumēi ji kyut-
dihng m̄hsihk ge jē.

9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

1. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh fàan
hohk a?
Having a headache, did you
go to school?

1. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh
fàan hohk a?

2. /tái yīsāng/

2. Néih tàhtung yáuh móuh
tái yīsāng a?

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| 3. /sɪhk yeuhk/ | 3. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh sɪhk yeuhk a? |
| 4. /fàan gùng/ | 4. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh fàan gùng a? |
| 5. /faat siu/ | 5. Néih tàutung yáuh móuh faat siu a? |

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in subject position.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yiu néih dǎngjǒ gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak.
I feel terrible to have made you wait so long. | 1. Yiu néih dǎngjǒ gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |
| 2. /yuhng gamdò chǐn/ | 2. Yiu néih yuhng gamdò chǐn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |
| 3. /hàahng gam yúhn/ | 3. Yiu néih hàahng gam yúhn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |
| 4. /wán gam noih/ | 4. Yiu néih wán gam noih, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |
| 5. /gam jóu héisàn/ | 5. Yiu néih gam jóu héisàn, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |
| 6. /gam chǐh fàan ũkkéi/ | 6. Yiu néih gam chǐh fàan ũkkéi, jǎnhaih mǎhóu yisi laak. |

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Gó gǎan gūngsǐ gahn-jyuh bǐndouh ga?
/ngǎnhòhng/heiyún/

S: Hái ngǎnhòhng tùhng heiyún jǐgǎan jē.

T: What place is the department store near? /bank/movie theatre/

S: It's between the bank and the movie theatre.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Gó gǎan yàuhjǐnggúk gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /gǎaisih/mahtàuh/ | 1. Hái gǎaisih tùhng máhtàuh jǐgǎan jē. |
| 2. Gó gǎan ngūk gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /lǐhngsǐhwún/chaansat/ | 2. Hái lǐhngsǐhwún tùhng chaansat jǐgǎan jē. |
| 3. Gó gǎan jáudim gahnjyuh bǐndouh ga? /fēigeichèuhng/jáugā/ | 3. Hái fēigeichèuhng tùhng jáugā jǐgǎan jē. |

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>4. Méihgwok Jáudim gahnjyuh bīn-douh ga? /Méihgwok Líhng-sihgwun/Júnggwok Ngànhhòhng/</p> <p>5. Mǎhnwàh Jáudim gahnjyuh bīn-douh ga? /Tínsing Mǎhtàuh/Seuhngóhí Ngànhhòhng/</p> | <p>4. Hái Méihgwok Líhngsìhgwún túhng Júnggwok Ngànhhòhng jígāan jē.</p> <p>5. Hái Tínsing Mǎhtàuh túhng Seuhngóhí Ngànhhòhng jígāan jē.</p> |
|--|--|

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>+ 1. <u>Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jí-gaan</u>, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a?
From the ferry [pier] to the movie house is there a bus stop between?
(yáuh X dou X jígāan =
<u>between X and X</u>)</p> <p>2. /gàaisíh/</p> <p>3. /jáugā/</p> <p>4. /ngànhhòhng/</p> <p>5. /yíyún/</p> <p>6. /chē jaahm/</p> | <p>1. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan, yáuh móuh bāsí jaahm a?</p> <p>2. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan yáuh móuh gàaisíh a?</p> <p>3. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan yáuh móuh jáugā a?</p> <p>4. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan yáuh móuh ngànhhòhng a?</p> <p>5. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan yáuh móuh yíyún a?</p> <p>6. Yàuh mǎhtàuh dou heiyún jígāan yáuh móuh chē jaahm a?</p> |
|---|--|

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih wán ngóh jòuh. māt a?

S: Tàuhsíh néih wán ngóh jòuh māt a?

1. Haih mǎhah néih wán ngóh làih a?
Were you looking for me?

T: What are you looking for me about? (i.e., You're looking for me--here I am--what is it that you want?)

S: What were you looking for me about a little while ago?

1. Tàuhsíh haih mǎhah néih wán ngóh làih a?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. Bīngō dá dihñwá làih a?
Who phoned? <u>or</u>
Who's on the phone?
[dálàih = <u>call in</u>] | 2. Tàuhśin bīngō dá dihñwá
làih a? |
| + 3. Néih wah tàuh tung, yīngā hóu-
fàan meih a?
(<u>return to good health,</u>
<u>get well</u>)
You said you had a headache,
are you back to normal now? | 3. Tàuhśin néih wah tàuh tung,
yīngā hóufàan meih a? |
| 4. Néih wah faatsiú, yīngā hóu-
fàan meih a? | 4. Tàuhśin néih wah faatsiú,
yīngā hóufàan meih a? |
| 5. Néih wah behngjǒ, yīngā hóu-
fàan meih a? | 5. Tàuhśin néih wah behngjǒ,
yīngā hóufàan meih a? |
| 6. Néih wah yáuh behng, yīngā
hóufàan meih a? | 6. Tàuhśin néih wah yáuh behng,
yīngā hóufàan meih a? |

14. Conversation Drill

- Ex: 1. A: Heui Hòuhwáh Hei-
yún yúhn m̄h-
yúhn a? /shake/
B: M̄hyúhn-- hóu
kahn jē.
- A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-
douh a?
/Hòuhwáh Jáugā/
B: Gahnjyuh Hòuhwáh
Jáugā jē.
2. A: Heui Méihgwok Jáu-
dim yúhn m̄hyúhn
a? /nod/
B: Hóu yúhn gal
- A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-
douh a?
/Méihgwok Lihng-
sihwún/
B: Gahnjyuh Méihgwok
Lihngsihwún.
1. A:yáuhjinggúk.....?
/shake/
- A: Is the Hoover Theatre far?
B: Not far--it's quite near.
- A: What's it near? /Hoover Rest-
aurant/
B: It's near the Hoover Restaurant.
- A: Is the Hilton Hotel far?
B: Quite far.
- A: What's it near?
/American Consulate/
B: It's near the American Con-
sulate.
1. A. Heui yáuhjinggúk yúhn
m̄hyúhn a?

- | | |
|---|--|
| B. | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē. |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.Tīnsīng Máhtàuh..... | B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē. |
| 2. A.Gáulùhng Yīyún....? /nod/ | 2. A. Heui Gáulùhng Yīyún yúhn-mhyúhn a? |
| B. | B. Hóu yúhn ga! |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.fēigēichèuhng..... | B. Gahnjyuh fēigēichèuhng. |
| 3. A.Hèunggóng Daaihohk....? /shake/ | 3. A. Heui Hèunggóng Daaihohk yúhn mhyúhn a? |
| B. | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē. |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.sàam houh bāsī jaahm.... | B. Gahnjyuh sàam houh bāsī jaahm jē. |
| 4. A.dihnbougúk....? /shake/ | 4. A. Heui dihnbougúk yúhn mhyúhn a? |
| B. | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē. |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.yàuhjinggúk..... | B. Gahnjyuh yàuhjinggúk jē. |
| 5. A.Wihng Ōn Gūngsī.....? /shake/ | 5. A. Heui Wihng Ōn Gūngsī yúhn mhyúhn a? |
| B. | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē. |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.Wihng Ōn Ngànhòhng.... | B. Gahnjyuh Wihng Ōn Ngànhòhng jē. |
| 6. A.Màhnwàh Jáudim? /shake/ | 6. A. Heui Màhnwàh Jáudim yúhn mhyúhn a? |
| B. | B. Mhyúhn, hóu káhn jē. |
| A.? | A. Gahn(jyuh) bīndouh a? |
| B.Tīnsīng Máhtàuh | B. Gahnjyuh Tīnsīng Máhtàuh jē. |

15. Question and Answer Drill

Ex: T: Yànwaih sēungfùng,
kéuih mhlàihdāk.

T: She has a cold, so she can't
come.

S1: Dīnggāai kéuih mhlàih a?

S1: Why isn't she coming?

† S2: Kéuih sēungfùng ā ma. (or: a mǎh)

S2: It's because she has a cold,
that's why.

ā ma or a mǎh =

'that's why' in a response sentence which gives explanation of why something occurred ā ma adds the connotation (cheerfully without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Yànwaih lohkyúh, kéuih m̀hheui yáuhséui laak. | 1. A. Dīnggāai kéuih m̀hheui yáuhséui a?
B. Lohkyúh ā ma. |
| 2. Yànwaih yáuh behng, kéuih m̀hfàan fàandāk gùng. | 2. A. Dīnggāai kéuih m̀hfàan gung a?
B. Kéuih yáuh behng ā ma. |
| 3. Yànwaih móuh chin, kéuih m̀htáidāk yīsāng. | 3. A. Dīnggāai kéuih m̀htái yī-sang a?
B. Kéuih móuh chin ā ma. |
| 4. Yànwaih m̀hsík chim méng, kéuih yiu yuhng tòuhjéung. | 4. A. Dīnggāai kéuih yuhng tòuh-jéung a?
B. Kéuih m̀hsík chim méng ā ma. |
| 5. Gwai gwotàuh sóyih m̀hséung máaih. | 5. A. Dīnggāai m̀hséung máaih a?
B. Gwai gwotàuh ā ma. |
| 6. Ga chē waaihjó, sóyih yiu hàahng louh. | 6. A. Dīnggāai yiu hàahng louh a?
B. Ga chē waaihjó ā ma. |
| 7. M̀hgau síhgaan, sóyih yiu choh dīksí. | 7. A. Dīnggāai yiu choh dīksí a?
B. M̀hgau síhgaan ā ma. |

16. Expansion-Translation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.
yaht. /already /already well/
well/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He has been sick for a few days,
yaht, yínging but he's OK now.
hóufáansaai laak.

2. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.
yaht. /not yet/ /not yet/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He's been sick for a few days
yaht, juhng meih and is still sick.
hóufaan.

3. T: Kéuih behngjǎo géi T: He's been sick for a few days.
yaht. /well /well yet?/
yet?/

S: Kéuih behngjǎo géi S: He's been sick a few days--
yaht, yíngā is he well yet?
houfaan meih a?

1. Néih tàuhungjǎo sèhng go láih-
baai. /already well/

1. Néih tàuhungjǎo sèhng go
láihbaai, yínging hóufaan-
saai laak.

2. Ngóh faatsiujǎo léuhng sàam
yaht. /not yet/

2. Ngóh faatsiujǎo léuhng sàam
yaht, juhng meih hóufaan.

3. Kéuih m̄hsyùfuhkjǎo géi yaht.
/well yet?/

3. Kéuih m̄hsyùfuhkjǎo géi yaht,
yíngā hóufaan meih a?

4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfùngjǎo
sèhng go láihbaai.
/well yet?/

4. Kéuih taaitáai sēungfùngjǎo
sèhng go láihbaai, yíngā
hóufaan meih a?

5. Kéuih go jái behngjǎo sèhng bun
go yuht. /not yet/

5. Kéuih go jái behngjǎo sèhng
bun go yuht, juhng meih
hóufaan.

6. Kéuih sihtáu m̄hjingsàhnjǎo
sèhng yaht. /already well/

6. Kéuih sihtáu m̄hjingsàhnjǎo
sèhng yaht, yínging hóu-
fáansaai laak.

7. Ngóh agō sihkjǎo sèhng go
láihbaai yeuhk. /not yet/

7. Ngóh agō sihkjǎo sèhng go
láihbaai yeuhk, juhng
meih hóufaan.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) chíhn géi yaht = a few days ago
- 2) tàuh = head
- 3) johngmàaih = hit
- 4) tung = hurt
- 5) yeuhk = medicine
hòì dī yeuhk = write a prescription
- 6) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.
- 7) Hóu wah. = 'You're welcome'
- 8) Taaijī Douh = Prince Road
- 9) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road
- 10) jī ma = that's all
- 11) Yáuh sām. = It's kind of you to inquire
- 12) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
- 13) tái dōu mhtái néih = won't even come see you
- 14) Yáuh sām. = It's kind of you to inquire.
- 15) daih yaht = the next day
- 16) mhhaih jauh láihjó nīdoh lō! = Wasn't it that I came here!
i.e., Didn't I just wind
up here! (exasperated)
- 17) douh = degree (of temperature)
- 18) chēut yún = get out of the hospital
- 19) Síu yisi jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response
to thanks for a gift.
- 20) wánmàaih = get together with

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting
next to you:

1. Is the American Consulate
far from here?
2. Where is the telegraph office?

B. And he replies:

1. It's very near. (pointing:)
There! it's there.
2. I'm not sure (m̀hchinghó)--
maybe it's near the post
office.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. Where is the post office? | 3. It's in the Central District, midway between the Bank of China and the Central Market. |
| 4. Is there a restaurant between here and the Star Ferry pier? | 4. Yes, plenty of them. What kind of food do you want to eat? |
| 5. Why didn't Miss Chan come today? | 5. Because she has a cold. |
| 6. What's the matter? Do you have a headache? | 6. I think I have a fever. |
| 7. He didn't come to work today because he wasn't feeling well. | 7. O, so that's why--I thought he had gone on a trip. |
| 8. I hear one of the students has been sick for several days. | 8. Yes, there was one who was sick for a few days, but he's already well. |
| 9. I'm feeling very well. | 9. What? Didn't you tell me just a little while ago that you were very headache-y? |
| 10. When you have a headache, do to take a pill? (sihk) | 10. Sometimes I do and sometimes not. |
| 11. When Miss Ma first studied Cantonese she spoke very haltingly. | 11. Yes, but at the end she spoke very fluently. |
| 12. Did you hear that Mr. Cheung was hit by a car? | 12. Is that so? Did he go into the hospital? |
| 13. This watch sells for US\$50.-- would that be considered expensive? | 13. \$50 perhaps wouldn't be considered expensive. |
| 14. I hear you're planning to move. | 14. At first we planned to move, but finally we decided not to. |
| 15. Would you please say that last sentence again. | 15. I said "Speak louder." |

 Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 29

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <u>āma?</u> (or <u>amáh?</u>) | ss: 'Isn't that right?' sen. quest. suf. with the force of checking an assumption |
| 2. <u>āma.</u> (or <u>amáh.</u>) | ss: that (obvious reason) is why. |
| 3. <u>behng</u> | n: illness |

4. behngjǒ	VP: got sick
5. béi	CoV: introduces the agent of an action, 'by _____'
6. -chàn	VSuf: verb suf. injure, hurt, damage
7. chōchō	MA: at first, in the beginning
8. dītchàn	v: fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt
9. faatsāng	v: happen
10. faatsiū	VO: have a fever
11. fonggùng	VO: leave work, get off from work
12. fù yeuhk	VO: treat with medicine
13. gahn(jyuh) <u>PW</u>	v: near (followed by a placeword)
14. geuk	n: leg, foot
15. gwāt	n: bone
16. hái <u>X</u> tùhng <u>Y</u> jīgāan	PhF: between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>
17. hóufāan	v: get well, return to good health
18. jèun [gò]	N/M: bottle
19. jīgāan	BF: between
20. johng	v: bump into
21. johngchàn	v: injure by bumping [bump-injure]
22. kám	adj: near
23. lèih <u>X</u>	Prep: (distance) from <u>X</u>
24. m̀hsyùfuhk	adj: not feel well; i.e., feel sick
25. Móuh!	Ph: 'Nothing special.' A response making light of topic discussed.
26. néuihjái	n: girl, young woman
27. ngàihhím	Aj: dangerous; danger
28. sāmēi	MA: finally, in the end
29. sēungfùng	VO: have a cold, catch a cold
30. syun	v: is considered; can be considered...; counted as....
31. tàuhshīn	MA: just a while ago
32. tàutung	v/n: have a headache
33. tong wòhngjǒ	VP: scorched [iron-yellowed]
34. tyúhn	v: break (of bones and sticklike objects)
35. yáuh behng	VO: be sick
36. yàuh <u>X</u> dou <u>Y</u> jīgāan	PhF: between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>

37. yeuhk n: medicine
38. yeuhkséui n: [liquid] medicine
39. yeuhkyún n: pills
40. yīyún n: hospital
41. yiu v: make, cause (someone to do something)
42. yúhn adj: far
-

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Younger brother and elder sister
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Sailóu

fùng
yuht làih yuht Adj
yuht làih yuht daaih
Wah, dī fùng yuht làih yuht
daaih tīm!
Dīm chēut gāai a?

wind
getting more and more Adj
getting bigger and bigger
Wow--the wind is getting stronger
all the time!
How can I go out?

Gājē

fùngkàuh
sàam houh fùngkàuh
gwa sàam houh fùngkàuh
Yínging gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh
ge lo bo--

typhoon signal
typhoon signal #3
hang up the #3 typhoon signal
They've already put up the Number
3 typhoon signal, for heaven's
sake--(protesting good
naturedly that her younger
brother shouldn't go out under
such circumstances.

Néih juhng séung chēut gāai àh!
-yíhseuhng

You still plan to go out?

above ... more than ...
(follows a number ex-
pression)

ńgh houh yíhseuhng

above the number five
(signal). higher than the
number 5 (signal)

jyun fùngkàuh
Yùngwó yāt jyun ńgh houh yíhseuhng,
waahkjé jauh móuh chē móuh syühn
ge laak.

change the typhoon signal
If it once goes higher than
Number 5, then maybe there
won't be any buses or ferries.

Sailóu

Haih a.
ginmihh
hái máhtàuh ginmihh

That's right.
meet
meet at the ferry [pier]

yeuk		make an appointment
yeukhóu		agree on the time and/or place for an appointment
ji		between
léuhng díng yāt gogwāt ji		between 2:15 and 2:30
léuhng díng bun		
Daahnhaih ngóh tūhng Jèung Siujé		But I made an appointment to
yeukhóu léuhngdíng yāt go gwāt		meet Miss Cheung at the ferry
ji léuhng díng bun hái máhtàuh		between 2:15 and 2:30
ginmihn.		
	<u>Gājē</u>	
Yihgā géi díng a?		What time is it now?
	<u>Sailóu</u>	
jāangdí		almost, lacks a little (precedes number phrase)
Jāangdí léuhng díng la.		It's almost 2 o'clock.
	<u>Gājē</u>	
gói		change, alter
daihyaht		another day, another time
gói daihyaht		change it to another day
Néih dínggái mhdá dihnwá bēi		Why don't you phone her and
kéuih, giu kéuih góí daihyaht		tell her to change it to
nē?		another day?
	<u>Sailóu</u>	
hósík		unfortunately; it is un- fortunate (+ sentence)
Hósík kéuih ngūkkéi móuh		Unfortunately her house doesn't
dihnwá--		have a phone--
tūngjí		communicate with
móuh baahnfaat		'There's no way;' 'Can't do anything about it'
Móuh baahnfaat tūngjí kéuih.		There's no way to communicate with her.
	<u>Gājē</u>	
dáfùng		have a typhoon [hit-wind]

yíngā dágán fùng	there's a typhoon going on now
gú	guess, conjecture, hazard a guess
ngóh gú kéuh m̀hchēutlāih daaihkóí <u>or</u> daaihkoí	I bet she won't come out probably
Yíngā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung Siujé daaihkóí dōu m̀hchēutlāih ge laak.	There's a typhoon going on now and I bet Miss Cheung probably won't even come out.

(The phone rings:)

Sailóu

A, daaihkóí haih kéuh dālāih laak.	Oh, that's probably her calling now.
---------------------------------------	---

Gājē

Gám juhng hóu la--néih jauh m̀hsái chēutheui lā. yík yáuh yík	That's good--then you won't have to go out. benefit, profit beneficial, good for you, profitable towards
deui, deuiyù Gám ge tìnhei chēutheui deui néih móuh yík ga.	Going out in such weather isn't good for you.

B. Recapitulation:

(Younger brother and elder sister
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Sailóu

Wah, dí fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tīm! Dím chēut gāai a?	Wow--the wind is getting stronger all the time! How can I go out?
--	---

Gājē

Yíngíng gwajó sàam houh fùngkàuh ge lo bo--	They've already put up the Number 3 typhoon signal-- (as if to suggest that her younger brother shouldn't go out)
--	---

Néih juhng séung chēut gāai
àh?

You still plan to go out?

Yùhgwó yāt jyun ñgh houh
yihseuhng, waahkjé jauh
móuh chè móuh syùhn ge laak.

If it once goes higher than
Number 5, then maybe there
won't be any buses or ferries.

Sailóu

Haih a.

That's right.

Daahnhaih ngóh tùhng Jèung
Síujé yeukhóu léuhng dím yāt
go gwāt ji léuhng dím bun
háì máhtàuh ginmihn.

But I made an appointment to
meet Miss Cheung at the ferry
between 2:15 and 2:30.

Gājē

Yíhngā géi dím a?

What time is it now?

Sailóu

Jāangdí léuhng dím la.

It's almost 2 o'clock.

Gājē

Néih dím gāai mhdá dihnwá béi
kéuih, giu kéuih góì daihyaht
nē?

Why don't you phone her and tell
her to change it to another
day?

Sailóu

Hósík kéuih ūkkéi móuh dihnwá--

Unfortunately her house doesn't
have a phone.

Móuh baahnfaat tūngjí kéuih.

There's no way to communicate
with her.

Gājē

Yíhngā dágán fùng, ngóh gú Jèung
Síujé daaihkóì dōu m̀hchēut-
làih ge laak.

Since there's a typhoon going
on now, I bet Miss Cheung
probably won't even go out.

(The phone rings:)

Sailóu

A, daaihkóì haih kéuih dǎlàih
laak.

Oh, that's probably her calling
now.

Gājē

Gám juhng hóu lā--néih jauh
m̀hsáì chēutheui la.

That's good--then you won't
have to go out.

Gám ge tìnhei chēutheui deui
néih móuh yík ga.

Going out in such weather
isn't good for you.

II. NOTES

1. yuht.....yuht..... = more and more

There are several patterns formed with the double yuht:

a. yuht làih yuht Adjective = 'getting more and more Adjective'

Ex: 1. Dī fùng yuht làih yuht daaih tim! The wind is getting bigger and bigger! (i.e., stronger and stronger)

2. Kéuih yuht làih yuht lēk. He's getting smarter all the time.

3. Kéuih sé jih yuht lain yuht lēk. His writing is better and better all the time.

(See BC and Drill 1)

b. yuht Verb yuht Adjective = the more (or the longer) he Verbs, the more Adjective it becomes.

Ex: Kéuih yuht góng yuht làuhleih. The more (or the longer) he talks the more fluent he gets.

(See Drill 2)

c. yuht Adjective¹ yuht Adjective² = the more (or the longer) Adjective¹ the more Adjective².

Ex: Yuht faai yuht hóu. The sooner (or the quicker) the better.

2. yeuk, 'request an appointment,' 'make an appointment'

yeuk is a performance verb, basically meaning 'to request an appointment.'

Ex: Ngóh séung yeuk go sihgaan. I want to make an appointment [ask for a time]. (said in making doctor's appointment)

yeuk enters into performance-achievement compounds with -hóu, 'satisfactory,' forming yeukhóu, 'ask for and get, i.e., set, an appointment.'

Ex: Ngóh tühng kéuih yeukhóu hai mahtauh ginmihn. I arranged with her to meet at the pier.

(See BC)

3. deui + Obj Adj = towards } 'Obj is Adj'; i.e., 'is Adj towards Obj.'
 about about
 for for
 with with

deui + Obj is a prepositional phrase which comes before the adjective it forms a larger phrase with. In English equivalent sentences, the prepositional phrase follows the adjective: 'good for Obj,' 'harmful to Obj,' 'satisfied with Obj,' 'clear about Obj, etc.'

S	P	S	P
Ex: S	deui + Obj Adj.	S	is Adj prep + Obj
Yàuhséui	deui néih hóu yáuh yīk ga.	Swimming	is good for you.

(See BC and Drill 7)

The deui Obj pattern is a device for placing the object of the adjective before the adjective in the sentence. With some adjectives the object can either follow the adjective directly or precede it in a deui phrase. An example is:

S	P
S	(deui + Obj Adj (Obj))
1. Kéuih	m̀h̀ch̀ing̀ch̀ó nī gih̄n sih bo. } He's not
<u>or</u>	
2. Kéuih deui nī gih̄n sih m̀h̀ch̀ing̀ch̀ó	bo. } clear about this matter.

With other adjectives the deui device is compulsory-- there is no other way to phrase the sentence. Examples are:

- Gàmyaht chēutheui deui Going out today is not good
 neih móuhyīk ga. for you.
- Néih deui kéuih m̀h̀h̀óu ge. You're not nice to him.

The deui + Object phrase occupies the same pre-verbal sentence position as the Co-verb + Obj phrase, but deui as a preposition differs from co-verbs in not taking a negative prefix.

Compare a negative co-verb sentence with a negative deui sentence:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Kéuih m̀ht̀uh̄ng ngóh heui. | He's not going with me. |
| Kéuih deui ngóh m̀h̀h̀óu ga. | He's not nice to me. |

4. lihn: as preposition = 'including ___;' 'and ___;' 'even ___'
lihn: as Verb = 'to include'

lihn is a word that belongs to more than one grammatical category.

It is primarily a preposition, but also is used as a verb.

a. lihn as a preposition

- 1) lihn(màaih) = 'including'

lihn(màaih) + Obj, preceding the body of a sentence = 'including Obj.'

Ex: Lìhn(màaih) kéuih, ngóhdeih Including her, there are
yáuh sah p go yáhn. 10 of us.

(See Drill 4.4.b)

- 2) lihn(màaih) = 'and'

In another pattern, lihn(màaih) joins two nouns in subject position with the meaning 'and.'

Ex: Dī syù lihn bāt hahmbahlaahng The books and pencils
yiu yahgei mán. together cost twenty-some
dollars.

(See Drill 4.4)

- 3) lihn = 'even'

lihn can be translated as 'even' in negative sentences of the pattern:

Lìhn X (Subj) $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{dōu}(\text{m̀h}) \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{matrix} \right\} V = \text{'even X (Subj) } \left. \begin{matrix} \text{won't} \\ \text{can't} \\ \text{etc.} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{do.}$

This pattern is a rearrangement of the SVO order of a negative sentence for emphasis:

$S \left. \begin{matrix} \text{m̀h} \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{matrix} \right\} VO \longrightarrow \text{Lìhn O, (S) dou } \left. \begin{matrix} \text{m̀h} \\ \text{m̀ouh} \\ \text{meih} \end{matrix} \right\} V.$

Examples below give first the normal SVO sentence, then the rearranged sentence order of the lihn X dōu m̀hV pattern:

1. Ngóh móuh chín tái
yísang.

I don't have any money to
see a doctor.

Lìhn tái yísang ngóh
dōu móuh chín.

[Even see doctor I don't have
money.] i.e.,
I don't even have money to see
the doctor. (I'm that hard up)

(See Drill 11)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. Ngóh m̀h̀s̀ik góng yāt
geui Yíngmahn. | I can't speak one sentence
of English. |
| Líh̄n yāt geui Yíngmahn
ngóh dōu m̀h̀s̀ik gong. | I can't speak even one
sentence of English. |

(See Drill 11)

b. lih̄n as a verb.lih̄n = 'include'

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| Ex: a. Líh̄nm̄h̄l̄h̄n(m̀aaih) t̄ipsí a? | Does that include the tip? |
| b. Líh̄nm̀aaih ge la. } | Yes, it does. |
| <u>or</u>
Líh̄n a. } | |
| c. M̄h̄l̄h̄n. | No, it doesn't. |

5. ge lo bo = sen.suf ge/ga 'that's the way it is' + sen.suf lo bo
for good-natured protest.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: 1. Yíngíng gwajó s̀aam houh
fungkauh ge lo bo! | They've already raised the #3 typhoon
signal. (response to addressee's
announcement that he's going out
into the typhoon. Implication is:
They've already put up the signal,
that's a fact; and you shouldn't
do as you intend) |
| 2. Ngóh síhkj́o yeuhk ge
lo bo. | I took my medicine-- (implies nicely:
quit bugging me about it) |
| 3. Sahn díng ge lo bo! | Ten o'clock! (you told me you were
going out at ten-- you'd better get
going instead of sitting there) |

(See BC and Drill 12)

6. ...jē, ..dōu... 'Even though...., still....'
'Since only....., still....'

This is a double clause pattern, with the first clause a subordinate clause of concession and the second the principal clause. The jē indicates that the concession is thought to be a small one.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ex: Néih góí léuhng díng bun jē,
ngóh dōu haihgónmhchit
ge bo. | Since you're only changing it to 2:30,
I still can't make it. <u>or</u> If you
only changed it to 2:30, I still
couldn't make it. |
|--|--|

(See Drill 14)

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih hóu láahn.

T: He's lazy.

S: Kéuih yuht làih
yuht láahn.S: He's getting lazier and lazier
all the time. i.e., He's
getting increasingly lazy.1. Kéuih hóu kahnlihk.
He's very hard-working.1. Kéuih yuht làih yuht kahn-
lihk.
He works harder and harder
everyday.

2. Tinhei hóu yiht.

2. Tinhei yuht làih yuht yiht.

3. Ūkjòu hóu gwai.

3. Ūkjòu yuht làih yuht gwai.

4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá hóu
lèk.4. Kéuih ge Gwóngdùngwá yuht
làih yuht lèk.

5. Kéuih hóu yáuhchín.

5. Kéuih yuht làih yuht yáuh-
chín.

6. Kéuih hóu pa.

6. Kéuih yuht làih yuht pa.

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Yuht góng yuht faai.
/làuhleih/T: The more he talks the faster
it gets. /fluent/S: Yuht góng yuht
làuhleih.S: The more he talks, the more
fluent it gets.

1. Yuht chòh yuht dung. /guih/

1. Yuht chòh yuht guih.

2. Yuht sihk yuht hóu meih.
/tóuhngoh/
The more you eat the better
it tastes.

2. Yuht sihk yuht tóuhngoh.

3. Yuht hohk yuht maahn.
/leuhnjeuhn/

3. Yuht hohk yuht leuhnjeuhn.

4. Yuht góng yuht daaihshèng.
/làuhleih/

4. Yuht góng yuht làuhleih.

5. Yuht yám yuht génghot.
/hóu meih/

5. Yuht yám yuht hóu meih.

6. Yuht tái yuht m̀hchĩngchó.
/ngáahnfan/
The longer I read the
fuzzier it seems.6. Yuht tái yuht ngáahnfan.
The longer I read the
sleepier I get.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng
mhlāih.
I guess he's not coming. | 1. Ngóh gú kéuih yātdihng
mhlāih. |
| 2. /yíhwàih/ | 2. Ngóh yíhwàih kéuih yātdihng
mhlāih. |
| 3. /wah/ | 3. Ngóh wah kéuih yātdihng
mhlāih. |
| 4. /gokdāk/ | 4. Ngóh gokdāk kéuih yātdihng
mhlāih. |
| 5. /pa/ | 5. Ngóh pa kéuih yātdihng mhlāih |
| 6. /tèngginwah/ | 6. Ngóh tèngginwah kéuih yātdihng mhlāih. |

4. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. a. gáu dím ji ngh dím. | 1. a. 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock. |
| b. jiujóu gáu dím ji hahjau
ngh dím. | b. 9 in the morning to 5 in
the afternoon. |
| c. Múih yaht jiujóu gáu dím
ji hahjau ngh dím. | c. Everyday from 9 in the
morning to 5 in the
afternoon. |
| d. Múih yaht jiujóu gáu dím
ji hahjau ngh dím dōu
hái séjihlauh. | d. (I'm) at the office
everyday from 9 in the
morning to 5 in the
afternoon. |
| + 2. a. <u>fai</u> . | 2. a. <u>fee, fare, expenses</u> . |
| + b. <u>hohk fai</u> . | b. school fees, <u>tuition</u> . |
| c. béi hohk fai. | c. pay tuition. |
| d. mhsái béi hohk fai. | d. don't need to pay tuition. |
| e. sái mhsái béi hohk fai a? | e. do you have to pay
tuition? |
| f. Hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái
mhsái béi hohk fai a? | f. Do you have to pay
tuition to study Can-
tonese? |
| g. Hái Méihgwok Lihngsihwún
hohk Gwóngdùngwá, sái
mhsái béi hohk fai a? | g. Do you have to pay
tuition to study Can-
tonese at the American
Consulate? |
| + 3. a. <u>Búnlòih</u> heui Tòihwāan. | 3. a. <u>Originally</u> , (we) were
going to Taiwan. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| b. Búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan | b. Originally, (we) planned to go to Taiwan. |
| c. Ngóhdeih búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan. | c. We originally planned to go to Taiwan. |
| d. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan. | d. We originally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan. |
| e. Ngóhdeih chōchō búnlòih dásyun heui Tòihwāan, daahnhaish yingā mhheuidāk. | e. We originally, in the beginning, planned to go to Taiwan, but now we can't go. |

Comment: búnlòih 'originally,' carries the implication that the outcome was different from original intention: 'originally planned X, however Y instead.'

- | | |
|---|---|
| + 4. a. <u>lihn(màaih) dihnfai.</u>
<u>lihn(màaih) =</u>
<u>including</u>
<u>dihnfai =</u>
<u>electricity fee</u> | 5. a. including the electricity payment. |
| b. <u>lihn(màaih) dihnfai yiu</u>
<u>béi géi chǐn a?</u> | b. how much is it including electricity? |
| + c. <u>séuifai lihn(màaih) dihn-</u>
<u>fai yiu béi géi chǐn a?</u>
<u>(séuifai =</u>
<u>water fee)</u> | c. how much do you have to pay for water and electricity? |
| d. <u>séuifai lihn(màaih) dihn-</u>
<u>fai hahmbahlaahng yiu</u>
<u>béi géi chǐn a?</u> | d. how much do you have to pay altogether, for water and electricity? |
| e. <u>Múih go yuht séuifai lihn-</u>
<u>(màaih) dihnfai hahmbahlaahng</u>
<u>yiu béi géi chǐn a?</u> | e. How much a month do you pay for water and electricity together? |
| 5. a. <u>yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.</u> | 5. a. don't have a single dime. |
| b. <u>lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh.</u> | b. don't even have a single dime. |
| c. <u>ngóh lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu</u>
<u>móuh.</u> | c. I don't even have a single dime. |
| d. <u>Ngóh jànhaish lihn yāt hòuhjí</u>
<u>dōu móuh.</u> | d. I really don't even have a single dime. |
| e. <u>Néih mhjí àh? Ngóh jànhaish</u>
<u>lihn yāt hòuhjí dōu móuh</u>
<u>ga.</u> | e. Don't you know? I really don't have even a single dime. |
| + 6. a. <u>dāng</u> | 6. a. <u>light, lamp</u> |
| + b. <u>dihndāng</u> | b. electric light |

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>+ c. <u>jáan</u> dihndāng
(<u>jáan</u> =
M for lamp)</p> <p>d. gó jáan dihndāng.</p> <p>e. syüfóng gó jáan dihndāng.</p> <p>f. sàanjó syüfóng gó jáan
dihndāng lā.</p> <p>g. Hóu sàanjó syüfóng gó jáan
(dihn) dāng lā.</p> | <p>c. a lamp, a light</p> <p>d. that lamp, light.</p> <p>e. the lamp in the study.</p> <p>f. please turn off the lamp
(<u>or</u> light) in the study.</p> <p>g. You'd better turn off the
lamp (<u>or</u> light) in
the study. (said as a
suggestion, not as a
threat)</p> |
|--|--|
-

5. Alteration Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ex: T: Néih m̀hahih wah, yiu
cheut gāai gé?</p> <p>+ S: <u>Néih yauh wah</u> yiu
cheut gāai?</p> | <p>T: Didn't you say you had to go
out? (you see that he's still
here.)</p> <p>S: Didn't you say you had to go
out? (i.e., you said...but
it's not so--what's up?)</p> |
| <p>1. Néih m̀hahih wah, sēungfùng
gé?</p> <p>2. Néih m̀hahih wah, gāmyaht
hahjau m̀hsái ngòh làih gé?</p> <p>3. Néih m̀hahih wah, yíhging
jyunjó baat houh fùngkàuh
gé?</p> <p>4. Néih m̀hahih wah, góí tìngyaht
gé?</p> <p>5. Néih m̀hahih wah, yeukm̀hdóu
kéuih gé?</p> <p>6. Néih m̀hahih wah, móuh tūngjí
kéuih gé?</p> <p>7. Néih m̀hahih wah, yáuh baahn-
faat gé?</p> <p>8. Néih m̀hahih wah, dihndāng
waaihjó gé?</p> <p>9. Néih m̀hahih wah, jáangdí
chāt díng gé?</p> | <p>1. Néih yauh wah sēungfùng?</p> <p>2. Néih yauh wah gāmyaht hah-
jau m̀hsái ngòh làih?</p> <p>3. Néih yauh wah yíhging jyun-
jó baat houh fùngkàuh?</p> <p>4. Néih yauh wah góí tìngyaht?</p> <p>5. Néih yauh wah yeukm̀hdóu
kéuih?</p> <p>6. Néih yauh wah móuh tūngjí
kéuih?</p> <p>7. Néih yauh wah yáuh baahn-
faat?</p> <p>8. Néih yauh wah dihndāng
waaihjó?</p> <p>9. Néih yauh wah jáangdí chāt
díng?</p> |
-

6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih deui nī gihn
sih, m̄hchǐngchó bo.

T: She's not very clear about
this.

S: Kéuih deui nī gihn
sih chǐng m̄h-
chǐngchó a?

S: Is she clear about this? (i.e.,
does she understand how it
works?)

1. Néih deui kéuih m̄hhóu.
You're not nice to him.
2. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih, yātdī
dōu m̄hfuhjaak.
3. Kéuih deui dá jih yātdī cheui-
meih dōu móuh.
(She doesn't have the
slightest interest in
typing.)
deui X yáuh cheuimeih =
be interested in X.
4. Yàuhséui deui néih hóu yáuh
yīk ga.
5. Yámjáu deui néih móuh yīk
ga.
6. Tái syù deui néih ge behng
m̄hhóu ga.
7. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih hóu
chǐngchó.

1. Néih deui kéuih hóu m̄hhóu a?
2. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih fuh
m̄hfuhjaak a?
3. Kéuih deui dá jih yáuh
móuh cheuimeih a?
4. Yàuhséui deui ngóh yáuh
móuh yīk a?
5. Yámjáu deui ngóh yáuh móuh
yīk a?
6. Tái syù deui ngóh ge behng
hóu m̄hhóu a?
7. Kéuih deui nī gih sih chǐng
m̄hchǐngchó a?

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih m̄hjúngyi dá
jih ge.

T: She doesn't like to type.

S: Kéuih deui dá jih,
yātdī dōu m̄hjúngyi.

S: About typing--she doesn't like
it a bit.

1. Kéuih m̄hpa dá fùng ge.
2. Kéuih m̄hpa m̄hmā ge.
3. Kéuih m̄hji nī gihn sih ge.
4. Kéuih m̄hfuhjaak jáinéui ge
hohk fai ge.
5. Kéuih m̄hdáleih sailóugō ge.

1. Kéuih deui dá fùng, yātdī
dōu m̄hpa.
2. Kéuih deui m̄hmā, yātdī dōu
m̄hpa.
3. Kéuih deui nī gihn sih,
yātdī dōu m̄hji.
4. Kéuih deui jáinéui ge hohk
fai, yātdī dōu m̄hfuhjaak.
5. Kéuih deui sailóugō, yātdī
dōu m̄hdáleih.

6. Kéuih m̀hsik dá páai ge.

6. Kéuih deui dá páai, yātdī
dōu m̀hsik.

8. Response Drill

- Ex: T: Kéuih múih go yuht
yiu béi sei sah
mān séui fai.
/\$50/
+ S: M̀hji, yiu béi ngh-
sahp mān ga.
- T: His water bill is \$40 a month.
S: Not just (\$40)--it's \$50.
1. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi
baat sah mān hohk fai.
/\$100/
 1. M̀hji, yiu béi yāt baak mān
ga.
 2. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi ngh
go bun ngānhchín chē fai.
/\$7.50/
 2. M̀hji, yiu béi chāt go bun
ngānhchín ga.
 3. Kéuih múih yaht yiu béi sei
hòuhjī syūhn fai. /\$50#/
 3. M̀hji, yiu béi ngh hòuhjī ga.
 4. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi
baak ngh mān dihn fai.
/\$170/
 4. M̀hji, yiu béi baak chāt
mān ga.
 5. Kéuih múih sàam go yuht yiu
béi baat shap mān séui fai.
/more than \$100/
 5. M̀hji, yiu béi baak géi mān
ga.
 6. Kéuih múih go yuht yiu béi
baak géi mān yeuhk fai.
/\$210/
 6. M̀hji, yiu béi yih baak yāt
mān ga.

9. Expansion Drill: X ji Y dōu

- Ex: T: Móuh sówaih gé.
/sahp mān/yih sah
mān/
S: Sahp mān ji yih sah
mān dōu móuh só-
waih gé.
- T: It doesn't make any difference.
/\$10/\$20/
S: Anything between \$10 and \$20
is OK.
1. Ngóh m̀hdākhaahn bo.
/chāt dīm/sahp dīm/
 1. Chāt dīm ji sah
dīm ngóh
dōu m̀hdākhaahn gé.
 2. Ngóh hái Jùngmāhn daaihohk
gaau syù. /1958 nihh/1966/
 2. Yāt gau ngh baat nihh ji
yāt gau luhk luhk ngóh
dōu hái Jùngmāhn daaihohk
gaau syù gé.

- | |
|---|
| 3. Ngòh móuh chéng gùngyàhn.
/gauhnín/yíngā/
3. Gauhnín jì yíngā ngòh dōu
móuh chéng gùngyàhn gé. |
| 4. Ngòh móuh síhk faahn.
/kàhmmáahn/gámjiu/
4. Kàhmmáahn jì gámjiu ngòh dōu
móuh síhk faahn. |
| 5. Ngòh meih gingwo kéuih.
/chāt yuht/sahp yuht/
I haven't seen him.
5. Chāt yuht jì sah p yuht ngòh
dōu meih gingwo kéuih gé.
I didn't see him from
July to October. |

10. Expansion Drill: Expand with V-dākchit, 'time enough to V,' or mhV-dākchit, 'not enough time to V,' according to the pattern set by the example sentences.

- Ex: 1. T: Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē. /m̀aaih/
T: It's not very late now. /buy/
S: Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē, m̀aaih-dākchit gé.
S: It's not very late now-- there's time to buy it.
2. T: Yíngā gam yeh laak. /maaih/
T: It's so late now-- /buy/
S: Yíngā gam yeh laak, m̀hmaaih-dākchit ge laak.
S: It's so late now--there's not time to buy it.

- | |
|--|
| 1. Yíngā gam ngaan laak. /gón/
1. Yíngā gam ngaan laak, m̀h-gondākchit ge la. |
| 2. Yíngā hóu jóu. /jǐng/
2. Yíngā hóu jóu, jǐngdākchit gé. |
| 3. Yíngā gam chíh. /jouh/
3. Yíngā gam chíh, m̀hjoudākchit ge la. |
| 4. Yíngā gam yeh laak. /dá/
4. Yíngā gam yeh laak, m̀hdádākchit ge la. |
| 5. Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē. /sái/
5. Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu yeh jē, saidākchit gé. |
| 6. Yíngā hóu ngaan laak. /heui/
6. Yíngā hóu ngaan laak, m̀h-heuidākchit ge la. |
| 7. Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu chíh jē. /dá/
7. Yíngā m̀hhaih hóu chíh jē, dádākchit gé. |

11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih dāk yāt go
gūngyàhn.

T: She has only one servant.

S: Kéuih līhn yāt go
gūngyàhn dōu móuh.

S: Not even one servant does
she have. or
She doesn't even have one
servant.

1. Kéuih dāk yāt gihn sàan sām.

1. Kéuih līhn yāt gihn sàan
sām dōu móuh.

2. Kéuih dāk yāt go pàhngyáuh.

2. Kéuih līhn yāt go pàhngyáuh
dōu móuh.

3. Kéuih dāk yāt gauh fàangáan.

3. Kéuih līhn yāt gauh fàangáan
dōu móuh.

4. Kéuih dāk yāt hòuhjí.

4. Kéuih līhn yāt hòuhjí dōu
móuh.

5. Kéuih dāk yāt jek bīi.

5. Kéuih līhn yāt jek bīi dōu
móuh.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh dāmjó laak.

T: I tossed it out.

S: Ngóh yínging dāmjó
ge lo bo.

S: I already tossed it out.
(protesting, but friendly)

1. Jyunjó chāthouh fūngkàuh
laak.

1. Yínging jyunjó chāthouh
fūngkàuh ge lo bo.

2. Ngóh jáau fàan chin béi kéuih
laak.

2. Ngóh yínging jáau fàan chin
béi kéuih ge lo bo.

3. Kéuih síhkjó yeuhk laak.

3. Kéuih yínging síhkjó yeuhk
ge lo bo.

4. Ngóh tūngjíjó kéuih laak.

4. Ngóh yínging tūngjíjó kéuih
ge lo bo.

5. Ngóh fànfuljó kéuih laak.

5. Ngóh yínging fànfuljó kéuih
ge lo bo.

6. Ngóh wùihjó seun béi kéuih
laak.

6. Ngóh yínging wùihjó seun béi
kéuih ge lo bo.

13. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| Ex: T: Bāsi maahn gwotàuh.
/dīksi/ | T: The bus is much too slow.
/taxi/ |
| S: Bāsi maahn gwotàuh,
bātyùh chòh dīksi
bá laak. | S: The bus is much too slow--
we'd better take a taxi. |
-
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Háuh ge yíht gwotàuh.
/bohk ge/ | 1. Háuh ge yíht gwotàuh, bātyùh
jeuk bohk ge bá laak. |
| 2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh.
/tái hei/ | 2. Yàuhséui dung gwotàuh,
bātyùh tái hei bá laak. |
| 3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh.
/Gwóngjǎu/ | 3. Tòihwāan yúhn gwotàuh,
bātyùh heui Gwóngjǎu bá
laak. |
| 4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh.
/yiu yú tòng/
order fish soup | 4. Syùn laaht tòng laaht gwotàuh,
bātyùh yiu yú tòng bá laak. |
| 5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh. /gafē/ | 5. Heiséui dung gwotàuh, bātyùh
yám gafē bá laak. |
| 6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng)
gwai gwotàuh. /chéng
néuihgūngyàhn/ | 6. Nàahmgūngyàhn (ge yàhngùng)
gwai gwotàuh, bātyùh chéng
néuihgūngyàhn bá laak. |

14. Expansion Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ex: T: Néih dáng ngóh
jē,... | T: Even though you would wait
for me,... |
| S: Néih dáng ngóh jē,
ngóh dōu haih gón-
m̀hchit ge bo. | S: Even though you would wait
for me, I still can't make
it. (wouldn't have time to
do it.) |
-
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Néih gó léuhng dím bun jē,... | 1. Néih gó léuhng dím bun jē,
ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit ge
bo. |
| 2. Néih tìngyaht ji yiu jē,... | 2. Néih tìngyaht ji yiu jē,
ngóh dōu haih gónm̀hchit
ge bo. |
| 3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ngh dím
bun ji hòih jē,... | 3. Néih gó bāan fēigēi ngh dím
bun ji hòih jē, ngóh dōu
haih gónm̀hchit ge bo. |
| 4. Kéuihdeih gámáahn ji làih
jē,... | 4. Kéuihdeih gámáahn ji làih
jē, ngóh dōu haih gón-
m̀hchit ge bo. |

5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tungji ngòh
jē,...

5. Kéuih kàhmyaht tungji ngòh
jē, ngòh dōu haih gón-
mhchit ge bo.

15. Expansion Drill: Expand with sèuiyih̄n...., daahnhaih....

Ex: T: Néih wah móuh ngàih-
hím jē, ngòh dōu
haih pa ge.

T: (Although) you say there's
no danger, I'm (still) afraid.

S: Sèuiyih̄n néih wah
móuh ngàihhím jē,
daahnhaih ngòh dōu
haih pa ge.

S: Although you say there's no
danger, I'm still afraid.

1. Dihnsih waaihjó jē, néih hóyih̄
tèng sàuyāngèi ā.

1. Sèuiyih̄n dihnsih waaihjó jē,
daahnhaih néih hóyih̄ tèng
sàuyāngèi ā.

2. Yiu béi yāt chīn mán jē, ngòh
dōu gau chīn gé.
Even though I had to spend
\$1000, I still have some
money.

2. Sèuiyih̄n yiu béi yāt chīn
mán jē, daahnhaih ngòh
dōu gau chīn gé.

3. Kéuih gokdāk m̄hsyūfuhk, kéuih
juhng fàan gūng.

3. Sèuiyih̄n kéuih gokdāk m̄h-
syūfuhk, daahnhaih kéuih
juhng fàan gūng.

4. Jyunjó chāt houh fūngkàuh,
ngòh juhng yiu fàan gūng.

4. Sèuiyih̄n jyunjó chāt houh
fūngkàuh, daahnhaih ngòh
juhng yiu fàan gūng.

5. Kéuih yīnging gitjó fàn, kéuih
juhng yáuh hōudò néuihpāng-
yáuh.

5. Sèuiyih̄n kéuih yīnging gitjó
fàn, daahnhaih kéuih juhng
yáuh hōudò néuihpāngyáuh.

6. Ngòh hóu tóuhngoh, ngòh m̄hséung
sìhk yéh.

6. Sèuiyih̄n ngòh hóu tóuhngoh,
daahnhaih ngòh m̄hséung
sìhk yéh.

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher,
then substitute as directed.

1. Ngòh nīpáai m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

1. Ngòh nīpáai m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

2. /tàuhsin/

2. Ngòh tàuhsin m̄hhái ngūkkéi.

3. /ngāamngāam/

3. Ngòh ngāamngāam m̄hhái
ngūkkéi.

4. /hóu dò sìh dōu/

4. Ngòh hóu dò sìh dōu m̄hhái
ngūkkéi.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. /sɪhsɪh dōu/ | 5. Ngóh sɪhsɪh dōu m̀hái ngūkkéi. |
| 6. /yáuhshɪh/ | 6. Ngóh yáuhshɪh m̀hái ngūkkéi. |
| 7. /hóu síu/ | 7. Ngóh hóu síu m̀hái ngūkkéi. |
| + 8. /góján(sɪh)/
(at that time) | 8. Ngóh góján(sɪh) m̀hái ngūkkéi. |

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

- 1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport
- 2) gēi = fēigēi
- 3) chèuhng = M for wind
- 4) hònghùng gūngsī = airline company
- 5) (ng)ūkjyú = landlord, landlady
- 6) woh = that's what he said.
- 7) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
- 8) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahntēng)
- 9) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
- 10) ji ma = that's all
- 11) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
- 12) M̀hwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
- 13) fòngbihn = convenient
- 14) bīujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
- 15) sàangyi = commercial business
- 16) paai = send
- 17) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
- 18) dāan sàngyi = some business [dāan 'list,' M for sàangyi]
- 19) jām = discuss
- 20) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
- 21) Yuhtnàahm = Vietnam
- 22) Máhlòiha = Malaya
- 23) geiwúih = opportunity

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. You say to the person sitting next to you: | B. And he replies: |
| 1. That child is getting lazier and lazier. | 1. That's what I say too. |
| 2. The more you speak Cantonese the more fluent you become. | 2. The more I talk the worse it is. |
| 3. Didn't you say you were going to bed? How come you're still up? | 3. I went to bed but I couldn't get to sleep. |
| 4. Where are you meeting Miss Ma? | 4. At the library. |
| 5. His illness is getting more and more dangerous. | 5. Unfortunately he doesn't have the money to see a doctor. |
| 6. How much tuition do you pay for Cantonese Lessons? | 6. We don't have to pay tuition. |
| 7. I hear Mrs. Cheung made an appointment to go to Mrs. Chan's to play mahjong. | 7. She originally planned to go to Mrs. Chan's, but in the end she went to Mrs. Lau's for dinner. |
| 8. Does the rent include water and electricity? | 8. It includes the water but not electricity. |
| 9. His wife is over 30. | 9. Not just (over 30) -- she's over 40! |
| 10. Miss Wong doesn't have a phone-- how will I get in touch with her? | 10. There's nothing you can do. |
| 11. I don't know anything about playing mahjong. | 11. I'll teach you, OK? |
| 12. Even if you taught me, I'd still be stupid. | 12. You're too modest. |
| 13. There's a typhoon coming. | 13. Is that so? Have they put up the typhoon signal? |
| 14. Let's meet at the Hong Kong University library after you get off from work. | 14. I have a terrible headache today and I'm not going to go to work. |
| 15. Is Mr. Lau responsible for this matter? | 15. No, he isn't. |
-

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 30

1. búnlòih	MA: originally
2. daaihkói <u>or</u> daaihkoí	MA: probably
3. dá fùng	VO: have a typhoon [hit-wind]
4. daihyaht	Ph: another day, another time (reduced from <u>daih yih yaht</u>)
5. deui, deuiyù	prep: towards, for, in regard to
6. deui...yáuh cheuimeih	Ph: be interested in
7. dihdāng	n: electric light, electric lamp
8. dihnfai	n: electricity expense
9. fai	n: fees, expenses
10. fùng	n: wind
11. fùngkàuh	n: typhoon signal
12. ge lo bo!	ss: <u>ge/ga</u> 'that's the way it is'+ ss. <u>lobo</u> for good natured protest
13. ginmih	VO: meet [see-face]
14. góí	v: change, alter
15. gú	v: guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess
16. hósīk	MA: unfortunately
17. jáan	M: M for light or lamp
18. jāangdī	adv: almost, lacks a little
19. <u>A</u> ji <u>B</u>	Prep: between <u>A and B</u> , from <u>A to B</u>
20. līhn (màaih)	cv: including
21. līhn...dōu m̄h <u>V</u>	PhF: not even, even
22. m̄hjí	Ph: more than; not just...
23. Móuh baahnfaat.	Ph: 'There's no way;' 'can't do anything about it;' 'it can't be helped'
24. Néih m̄hhaih wah...?	Ph: Didn't you say...?
25. Néih yauh wah...?	Ph: You said...(but it's not so; what's up?)
26. séuifai	n: water expenses
27. t̀ungjì	v: communicate (with)
28. Wah!	Ex: Exclamation of awe
29. yáuh yīk	VO: benefit
30. yeuk	v: make an appointment
31. yeukhóu	v: agree on the time and/or place for an appointment

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

Lesson Sixteen

1. Two friends discuss what they did last Saturday:

A: Néih seuhng go láihbaai luhk heui bīndouh wán a?

B: Tūhng ngóh taaitái heui yàuhseui. Néih nē?

A: Láihbaai luhk ngóh dōu séung heui yàuhseui gé, daahnhaih ngóh néuihpàhngyáuh wah m̀heui. Sóyih ngóhdeih heuijò dá m̀hng k̀auh.

B: Hái bīndouh dá a?

A: Hái Bóuwahn Douh k̀auhch̀euhng. Néih hái gódouh dagwo meih a?

B: Meih. Ngóh meih hái gódouh dagwo. Hái bīndouh ngóh dōu m̀hjí.

A: Néih t̀ingyáht séung m̀hséung heui a? Ngóh daai néih heui ā.

B: T̀ingyáht ngóh m̀kdākhaahn. Daihyáht sīn lā.

1) wán = amuse oneself, general verb for leisure time activity

2) sóyih = therefore

3) dá m̀hng k̀auh = play tennis

4) Bóuwahn Douh = Bowen Road

5) k̀auh ch̀euhng = tennis court

6) daih yáht = daih (yih) yáht = another day

2. Discussing a trip to the Philippines:

A: Néih k̀ahmyáht heuijò bīndouh a? Ngóh dá dihnwá séung wán néih heui síhk ngaan. Néih beisyù wah néih heuijò Máhnheihlāai, heui gódouh yáuh m̀yéh síh a?

B: O. Gūngsī yáuh dī síh yiu ngóh heui Fēileuhtbān. Hái gó bihn máaihjó léuhng baak gih Fēileuhtbān sēutsām.

A: Néih hái góbihn yáuh móuh heui wán Wòhng Bóu-jūng a?

- B: Mòuh. Ngóh hóu séung heui wán kéuih a, daahnhaih dōu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.
 Hái gódouh ngóh jihng haih máaihjó dī yéh béi ngóh taaitáai
 t̀hng sailógō ja.
- A: Máaihjó dī mēyéh béi kéuihdeih a? Yauh haih máaih géi gih
 Fēileuhtbān sēutsāam a?
- B: M̀nhaih, ngóh t̀hng ngóh taaitáai máaihjó go sáudói, géi leng gé.
 Kéuih hóu j̀ngyi a. Yauh máaihjó go bō béi go jái--máaihjó
 go g̀ngjái béi go néui.
- A. O, gám jauh hóu lā. Wei! Dáng jahn yatchàih sihk ngaan ā? Ngóh
 t̀ngginwah Daaih Douh J̀ng yáuh gāan chāansāt géi hóu ge bo.
- B: Hóu a. Géidím a? Hái b̀ndouh d́ng a?
- A: Sahpyih dím daahp sām lā, hóu ma? Jauh hái néih g̀ngsī l̀uhhah
 ginmihl lā.
- B: Haih gám wah lā. Sahpyih dím daahp sām ngóh hái gódouh d́ng néih.
- 1) beisyù = secretary
 - 2) M̀hneihlāai = Manila
 - 3) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
 - 4) g̀ngjái = doll
 - 5) Wei = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's
 attention
 - 6) yatchàih = together
 - 7) ginmihl = meet
 - 8) Haih gám wah lā. = We'll do it the way you say.

3. Two women friends meet on the street downtown:

Hòh Táai : J̀usàhn Léih Táai, néih nīpáai heui b̀ndouh làih a?

Léih Táai: Móuh heui b̀ndouh ā. Ngóh nīpáai dōu hái ūkkéi jōuh sām--
 hóu m̀hdāk̀hàahn.

Hòh Táai : Haih laak. Néih dī jáinéui ỳngā dím a?

Léih Táai: Géi hóu. Kéuihdeih K̀hmyaht heuijó Gául̀hng ngóh m̀h mā
 douh. A! Hòh Táai, néih t̀ngyaht dāk m̀hdāk̀hàahn heui
 Chàhn Táai gódouh dá m̀hjeuk a?

- 1) Móuh heui b̀ndouh = Haven't gone anywhere

Hòh Táai : O! Dá mǎhjeuk àh. Dākàahn, néih dá dihnwá làih giu ngóh lā.

Láih Táai: Hóu aak, sái mǎsái ngóh jà chē làih jip néih a?

Hòh Táai : Mǎsái. Ngóh jidou díu heui Chàhn Táai douh ge laak. Chàhn Táai ukkéi hái Wíhng Ōn Gūngsī hàahng gwo dī, Wíhng Ōn Ngàhnhōhng gaakleih ā ma. Haih bo, kéuih gódouh jógán hó mǎhóyih paak chē ga?

Léih Táai: Hóyih. Néih sīnsàng tingyaht dāk mǎdākàahn a?

Hòh Táai : Dākàahn, yauh mēyéh sih nē?

Léih Táai: Ngóh sīnsàng séung chéng kéuih heui yám chàh.

Hòh Táai : Hóu, ngóh wah béi kéuih jī, giu kéuih hái séjihlauh dáng néih sīnsàng lā. Hmm, ngóh yihgā yiu heui Jūngwáahn Gàaisih máaih sung la.

Léih Táai: Hóu. Joigin.

Hòh Táai : Joigin.

1) ā ma = sen. suf. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way: 'This is pretty obvious'

2) haih bo = here: by the way,...

3) máaih sung = buy groceries

Lesson Seventeen

1. An American and Cantonese in Hong Kong talk about travel in America:

A: Tèngginwah néih hahgo láihbaai heui Méihgwok, haih mǎhah a?

B: Móuh cho, ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh heui, jīkhah láihbaaisei.

A: Haih mē? Néih yáuh móuh heuigwo Méihgwok a?

B: Yáuh, yāt-gáu-luhk-ńgh nǎhn heuiláih.

A: Hái Méihgwok heuigwo bīndī deihfòng a?

B: Ngóh heuigwo Sàamfàahnsih túhng Wàhsihngdeuhn.

A: Néih yáuh móuh chānchīk hái gó léuhng dāat deihfòng a?

B: Yáuh, gó léuhng dāat deihfòng, ngóh dōu yáuh chānchīk hái douh.

A: Doujó Wàhsihngdeuhn, jigányiu làih ngóh douh chóh a.

B: Hóu aak.

2. Telephone conversation about traveling:

A: Wéi, mǎhgoi néih giu Wòhng Sàng tèng dihnwá.

B: Hóu, mǎhgoi dáng jahn.

C: Wái, bǐn wái a?

A: Ngóh sing Chàhn.

C: Ah! Chàhn Sàng, yáuh mǎtyéh sih a?

- A: Móuh, ngòh séung mahnháh néih, jì m̀hji Léih Gwōng-l̀hng S̀ns̀aang géisih f̀aanheui Méihgwok j̀e?
- C: O! Kéuih hah go láihbaaiyih f̀aanheui, j̀ikhaih ǹi go yuht sahph baat houh.
- A: Gám, néih jì m̀hji kéuih f̀aanheui Méihgwok b̀indouh a?
- C: Ngòh m̀hchingchó bo, t̀engginwah kéuih f̀aanheui Ẁahsihngdeuhn.
- A: Haih m̀e! Ẁohng S̀aang, néih d̀ásyun géisih t̀uhng Ẁohng Táai heui S̀aamf̀aahnsih taam kéuih m̀ahm̀a a?
- C: Ngòhdeih d̀ásyun hahgo yuht heui.
- A: Gám, néihdeih daai m̀hdaai d̀i j̀ainéui heui a?
- C: Ngòhdeih hahchi ji daai kéuihdeih heui.
- A: Haih lé. Néih d̀i j̀ainéui haih m̀hhaih d̀ou hái Méihgwok ch̀eutsai ga?
- C: Haih, kéuihdeih d̀ou haih hái gòdouh ch̀eutsai ge.
- A: Ngòh heuigwo Méihgwok hóu dò chi, daahnhaih S̀aamf̀aahnsih t̀uhng Ẁahsihngdeuhn ngòh juhng meih heuigwo. Néihdeih f̀aandouheui j̀igányiu b̀ei go deihj̀i ngòh a?
- C: Hóu aak. Ngòh yihgá góng b̀ei néih t̀eng sin l̀a.
- A: Hóu, d̀ang ngòh l̀ó j̀i b̀at làih sin.
- 1) Móuh = Nothing special
 - 2) jì = (not until) then
 - 3) go deihj̀i = here: your address

3. Talking about a trip to Singapore:

- A: Lóuh Wóng, hóu noih móuh gin. Heui b̀indouh làih a?
- B: O. Ngòh heuijó Singgabō, ngāamngāam seuhng go láihbaai ji f̀aanl̀aih.
- A: Haih m̀e? Néih géisí heui ga?
- B: Ngòh seuhng go yuht yihshahp houh heui ge.
- A: Néih yáuh móuh daai néih taaitáai t̀uhngm̀aaih d̀i sailógō heui a?
- B: J̀ihnghaih t̀uhng ngòh taaitáai heui. D̀i sailógō heuijó Tòihwāan j̀yuh hái ngòh taaitáai ngūkkéi, kéuihdeih k̀ahmyaht ngāamngāam j̀i f̀aanl̀aih.
- 1) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
 - 2) Singgabō = Singapore
 - 3) ngāamngāam = just
 - 4) jì = (only) then, (not until) then
 - 5) t̀uhngm̀aaih = t̀uhng
 - 6) Tòihwāan = Taiwan

- A: Néih yíhchíhn heuigwo Singgabō meih a?
- B: O, heuigwo la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé, bātgwo ngóh taaitáai yíhchíhn meih heuigwo. Néih nē?
- A: Ngóh gauhnín daih yāt chi heui. Yíhgā hái gódouh ngóh yáuh dī sàangyi. Chēutnín sàamyuht ngóh waahkjé joi heui.
- B: Néih taaitáai heui m̀heui a?
- A: Wáh m̀hdihng a. Seuhng chi ngóh móuh daai kéuih heui, béi kéuih jídou ngóh hái góbíhn yáuh go néuihpáhngyáuh. Ha. Ha. Ha.
- B: Ha. Ha....
- 1) yíhchíhn = previously
- 2) sàangyi = (commercial) business

Lesson Eighteen

1. Street scene: two women gossip about recent events:

- Wòhng Táai: Jèung Táai, heui bíndouh a?
- Jèung Táai: Ngóh heui ngàhnòhng ló chíhn. Néih nē?
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui fāangùng. Tèngginwah néih hahgo láihbaailuhk yiu bún ùk, haih m̀hahh a?
- Jèung Táai: Haih. Ngóh séung bún heui Gáulùhng jjuh.
- Wòhng Táai: Néih hái Hèunggóng jjuhjó móuh géinói jē. Jouh m̀atyéh yiu bún a?
- Jèung Táai: Móuh, ngóh dī jáinéui hái Daaihluhk chēutjó làih, m̀hgau deihfóng jjuh.
- Wòhng Táai: O. Néih dī jáinéui hái Gwóngjàu chēutjó làih mē?
- Jèung Táai: Haih aak. Kéuihdeih yíhging daaihhoik bāt yihp laak. Yíhgā chēutlàih Hèunggóng jjuh, dásyun heui Méihgwok làuhhoik. Néih dī jáinéui yauh móuh dásyun chēutheui a?
- Wòhng Táai: Yáuh. Daahnhaih ngóh jídō béi go jái heui jē. Néih dī jáinéui heui dou Méihgwok haih m̀hahh hái chānchík douh jjuh a?
- Jèung Táai: Hái, ngóh hèimohng kéuihdeih heui Wàhsihngdeuhn. Gám, jauh hóyíh jjuh hái chānchík ùkkéi laak.
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yíhchíhn dōu yáuh chānchík hái Sàamfāahnsíh, yíhgā búnjó heui Tòihwāan hái Tòihbāk jjuh. Tèngginwah gódouh hóuhóu jjuh jē, néih séung m̀hséung bún fāanheui a?
- Jèung Táai: Ngóh juhng meih kyutdihng. Yúhgwó yáuh chíhn, jauh bún fāanheui.
- Wòhng Táai: Ngóh làihjó Hèunggóng jíhauh jauh m̀hséung bún la. Jisíu juhng yiu dāng yāt níhn yíhhauh joi dásyun laak.
- 1) Jouh m̀atyéh = How come?
- 2) Móuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.

Jèung Táai: Yíngā sahpyāt dím daahp sah laak, ngóh yiu fàan ūkkéi sìhk ngaanjau la, joigin.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

1) sìhk ngaanjau = sìhk ngaan = eat lunch

a) ngaanjau = 'noon'

2. Talking about schooldays:

A: Gàmyaht géidō houh a?

B: Gàmyaht sahpsàam houh.

A: Yí--Gàmyaht yáuh go tùnghohk gitfàn bo. Ngóh yiu chēutheui máaih dī yéh sung béi kéuih.

B: Bīndouh ge tùnghohk a?

A: Kéuih tùngh ngóh haih jùnghohk ge tùnghohk. Ngóhdeih yārchàih bātyihp ge.

B: Néih haih bīnnih bātyihp ga?

A: Yāt-gáu-luhk-sàam nih. Gójahnsih ngóhdeih hái Oumún jjuh.

B: Ngóh yíhchihn m̀hjidou néih hái Oumún jjuhgwó. Hái gódouh jjuhjó géi nói a?

A: Sahp géi nih la. Ngóh hái gódouh chēutsai gé. Jùnghohk bātyihp jíhauh, ji làih Hèunggóng duhk daaihohk. Néih heuigwo Oumún meih a?

B: Ngóh yíhchihn heuigwo yāt chi.

A: Yíhauh yùngwó yáuh sìngaang ngóh fàanheui gójahn, tùngh néih heui wáan a.

B: Hóu aak.

1) tùnghohk = schoolmate

2) jùnghohk = high school, middle school

3) yārchàih = together

4) gójahnsih = at that time

5) sahpgéi = more than ten [ten-several]

6) ji = (not until) then, (only) then

7) wáan = play, amuse oneself, entertain, enjoy leisure time

Lesson Nineteen

1. A Hong Kong resident tells a new American resident about H.K. money exchange.

Hongkongite: Jèung Sàang, kyutdihngjó géisí heui máaih yéh meih a?

American : Ngóh dásyun gàmyaht heui gé. Daahnhaih ngóh kàhmyaht m̀hgeidāk heui ngànhòhng wuhn Góngjǐ. Gàmyaht waahkjé

m̄hheidāk laak.

Hongkongite: Oh, nīdoh dī daaih gūngsī dōu yuhng Méihgām waahkjé
Yīngbóng gé. M̄hsái yātdihng bēi Góngjī ga.

American : Haih mē? Gám, yāt mán Méihgām jīkhaih géi chīn Góngjī a?

Hongkongite: Yāt go ngàhnchīn Méihgām jisiu hōyih wuhn luhk mán,
jido luhk go līhng ngh gamseuhnghá lā.

American : Hmm...Yūhgwó ngòh gāmyaht heui máaih yéh, néih dāk
m̄hdākhaahn túhng ngòh yārchàih heui a?

Hongkongite: Dāk! Néih séung géidim heui a?

American : Yātján ngòh chéng néih heui sikh ngaanjau sīn, yīnhauh
ji heui lā.

Hongkongite: Hóu aak. Dòjeh sīn la.

1) m̄hheidāk = can't go

a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix (explain
in Lesson 20)

2) yāt go ngàhnchīn = one dollar (\$1.00) (See L-21,
Ex. 8)

3) sikh ngaanjau = eat lunch

2. A telephone inquiry:

A: Wái.

B: Sàam Hīng Gūngsī àh. M̄hgòì chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwòng Sīnsàang tèng
dihnwá.

A: Yīngā juhng meih séuhng bāan. M̄hgòì néih bun go jūngtàuh joi dá
lāih lā.

B: Hóu, m̄hgòì.

(After half hour he calls again)

C: Wái, Sàam Hīng Gūngsī.

B: M̄hgòì chéng Wòhng Sing-Gwòng Sīnsàang tèng dihnwá.

C: Wòhng Sàang heuijó Yahtbún bo. Bīn wái wán kéuih a?

B: O. Ngòh sing Jèung. Kéuih géisih fàanlāih a?

C: Wah m̄hdihng ga.

B: Hahgo yuht kéuih daaihkoi fàanlāih meih a?

C: Hahgo yuht yātdihng fàanlāih ge la. Yáuh mēyéh sih a?

B: Néih haih m̄hhaiah kéuih ge beisyù a?

C: Haih a.

1) séuhng bāan = start work

2) daaihkoi = probably

3) beisyù = secretary

- B: Wòhng Sàang léuhng go láihbaai jíchíhn tùhng ngòh góng wah yiu máaih ngòh ga chè. Mhji kéuih yingā juhng séung mhséung máaih nē?
- C: Kéuih móuh tùhng ngòh gónggwo bo. Bāt-gwo kéuih seuhng go láihbaai hóuchih yinging máaihjó ga laak. Mhji kéuih juhng yiu mhyiu máaih nē?
- B: O. Gám àh, dāng kéuih fāan làih ngòh joi dá dihnwá béi kéuih la. Mhgoisaai.
- C: Hóu wah.
- 1) hóu chíh = it seems
 - 2) Hóu wah, = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all', Response to being thanked for a service.

3. Talking with a friend on the telephone:

- A: Wéi.
- B: Wéi. Chāhn Waih-jùng ah? Néih síhkjó máahn faahn meih? Heui m̀heui tái hei a?
- A: Wòhng Jit-Mihng a mah? Tái hei àh, m̀hdāk bo. Ngòh juhng yáuh hóudò gùngfo yiu jòuh.
- B: Ngòh táidóu bouji wah Hòuh Wàh Heiyún chēut hei m̀cho bo. Néih yingā joi jòuh léuhng go jùngtáuh gùngfo juhng gòndākchit ga. Ngòh sín heui máaih fēi. Gáudimjùng hái heiyun muhnhau dang néih là?
- A: M̀hdāk. Ngòhdeih juhng meih síhk faahn. Síhkyùhn faahn, duhkyùhn syù jauh gónmhchit tái hei ge la.
- B: Gám ah. Hah chí sín la! Haih laak--Ngòh go dáfógēi ngāamngāam máaihjó yāt go láihbaai, káhyahht jauh m̀ginjó. Mhji yauh móuh lauhdài hái néih úkkéi nē? Néih yáuh móuh táidóu a?
- A: Ngòh móuh táidóu bo, dāng ngòh mahnháh m̀hmā. Mā, yáuh móuh táidóu Wòhng Jit-Mihng go dáfógēi a? Kéuih wah káhyahht hónahng lauhdài hái nīdoh.
- 1) a mah? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)
cf. French 'n'est ce pas
 - 2) gùngfo = lessons, homework
 - 3) gòndākchit = can make it in time; there will be time to do it
 - 4) fēi = ticket
 - 5) -yùhn = finish a) síhkyùhn = finish eating
b) duhkyùhn = finish studying
 - 6) gónmhchit = can't make it in time
 - 7) ngāamngāam = just
 - 8) lauhdài = leave behind
 - 9) hónahng = probably

C: Haih a. Hái néih gāan fóng jèung tóih douh a máh.

A: Wái, Lóuh Wóng--hái douh a. Ngóh tìngyaht níngfàan bái néih ā?

B: Hóu, m̀ngòisaai. Gám, néih m̀hheui tái hei lā ma?

A: M̀hheui la.

C: Waih-Jùng, hòi faahn la. M̀hhou góng gám dò la.

A: Lóuh Wóng, haih gám sìn la, tìngyaht gin la.

B: Hóu, tìngyaht gin. M̀hhou m̀hgeidāk níngfàan go dáfógēi bái ngóh bo.

A: Dāk la. Tìngyaht gin lā.

1) fóng = room

2) a máh = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also L16, CL3 ā ma)

3) Lóuh Wóng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of address to a man by good friends.

4) hòi faahn = 'Dinner is ready'

5) Haih gám sìn la = 'That's all for now'

4. Talking about renting a house and buying furniture:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah néih yiu wán ūk. Wándóu meih a?

Hòh Siujé : Haih a! Kàhmyaht sìnji wándóu. Hái Nèihdēun Douh.

Wòhng Táai: Géi láu a?

Hòh Siujé : Sàam láu. Ngóh tùhng néih heui táiháh ā?

(They arrive at the house)

Wòhng Táai: A! Ní gāan ūk hóu m̀hcho bo! Yāt go yuht géi chín jòu a?

Hòh Siujé : Yāt chín mán, néih wah gwai m̀hgwai dī a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih gamseuhngá lā. Gám, néih dásyun géisih bìn làih a?

Hòh Siujé : Yíngā juhng meih jídou. Ní gāan ūk m̀yéh dōu móuh, dāng ngóh m̀aaihjó dī gāsí, yíhnhauh jí bundak ga.

Wòhng Táai: Ngāam laak, ngóh yáuh go chānchík haih maaih gāsí gé, néih séung m̀hséung heui gódouh táiháh nē?

Hòh Siujé : Hóu aak! Yùhgwó néih yíngā dākhàahn, jauh tùhng ngóh yātchàih heui lā!

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh heui já ga chē làih, néih jauh hái nídouh dāng ngóh lā!

Hòh Siujé : Jànhaih m̀ngòisaai la.

Wòhng Táai: M̀hsái haakhei.

(They drive to the store)

Wòhng Táai: A! dou laak. Ngóhdeih hái nídouh paak chē sìn, yíhnhauh hàahng gwo heui la.

1) m̀yéh dōu móuh = doesn't have anything

Hòh Siujé : Ní tou baahk sík ge géi leng bo! Bāt̄gwo luhk baak m̄an
 jauh gwaidí la! A, luhk baak m̄an jíkhaih chābāt̄dō yāt
 baak m̄an Méihgām ge la. Haih m̄hhaih a?

Wòhng Táai: Haih ge la. Néih jùngyi, jauh máaihjó kéuih lā.

Hòh Siujé : (to the clerk) Hóu lā! Gám, t̄ngyaht sungheui béi ngóh,
 yihnhauh béi chin dāk m̄hdāk a?

Sih Táu : Dāk. M̄hgòì néih sé go deihjí béi ngóh lā.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóhdeih hóyih jáu laak.

Sínsàang : Joigin, maahn m̄aan hàahng a.

Wòhng Táai: Joigin.

Hòh Siujé : Joigin.

1) chābāt̄dō = chāmhdō

2) Máaihjó kéuih lā. = Buy it. (imperative--see L24,N __)

3) Maahn m̄aan hàahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite
 goodby form, said to person
 leaving by person remaining.

Lesson Twenty

1. Going to the airport:

A: Chéngmahn néih, yáuh n̄idouh díng heui fēigēi chēuhng a?

B: Aiyē, hóu deuih̄jyuh laak, ngóh m̄hchingchó bo. Yánwaih ngóh hái
 Héunggóng gó bihn jyuh gé, ngóh m̄hhaih géi sík Gáulung ní bihn
 dī lauh ga.

A: Gám a, néih jí m̄hjí ní tiuh louh yáuh móuh bási gwo ge nē?

B: Mm..., n̄ijógán dōu tái m̄hdóu yáuh chējaahm, waahkjé móuh laak.

A: Haih gám, dāng ngóh wándóu bási daap góján, ngóh pāhngyáuh chóh
 gó bāan fēigēi dōu yínging hōijó la.

B: Yùhnlòih néih haih heui sung gēi ga? Gám, néih chóh dīksí heui la.

A: Gám, ngóh hàahng gwo sēsíu heui giu dīksí lā. M̄hgòisaai bo.

B: Hóu wah.

1) louh = road

2) gwo = pass by

3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane

4) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. At the train station:

A: Yí, yíngā sínji daahp sàam jē, díngáai bāan fóchē yínging hōijó
 ge la? Ngóh go biu móuh cho ā? A, Sínsàang, chéngmahn daahp bun
 hòì gó bāan fóchē doujó meih a?

B: Sahp díng bun gó bāan chē m̄hhaih yahtyaht dōu hòì ga. Jihnghaih
 láihbaailuhk t̄uhng láihbaaiyaht jí yáuh ge ja.

- A: Haih bo. Ngóh dōu m̀hgeidāk tīm. Chéngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap géi houh bāsi a?
- B: Ngóh dōu m̀hhaih géi chingchó bo, néih heui bāsi jaahm góbihn mahn-háh lā.
- A: Hóu, m̀hgòl.

(A goes to bus stop)

- A: Chéngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap géi houh bāsi a?
- C: Sahp gáu houh a lā.
- A: Hah yāt bāan bāsi daahp géi hòl a?
- C: Daahp bun jauh hòl ge la.
- A: Hóu, m̀hgòl. O--Heui Sàtihn ge chē gēi nòl hòl yāt bāan ga?
- C: Bun go jùngtòuh yāt bāan.
- A: M̀hgòisaaí.

1) Sàtihn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong

3. Two overseas Chinese students in Taiwan discuss going to Hong Kong:
- Jèung Sàang: Máh Siujé, néih géisih heui Hèunggóng a?
- Máh Siujé : Nī go láihbaaiyaht, jīkhaih sahphouh.
- Jèung Sàang: Gám, néih dásyun hái Hèunggóng jyuh géi nòl a?
- Máh Siujé : Yāt go láihbaai gamseuhnghá lā.
- Jèung Sàang: Ngóh dōu yiu fàanheui Hèunggóng taam ngóh bàhbā tùhng màhmā. Ngóh múih nihndōu fàanheui yāt chí ga.
- Máh Siujé : O, néih géisí jáu a?
- Jèung Sàang: Ngóh hah go láihbaaiyih jáu, fàandouheui Hèunggóng ngóh dá dihwa wán néih ā.
- Máh Siujé : Hóu aak, néih yiu daai ngóh heui dī hóu wáan ge deihfōng hàahngháh jí dāk ge bo.
- Jèung Sàang: Dāk la. Náh, ngóh wándou néih jíhauh, sín daai néih heui chóh laahmché, séuhngheui Sàandéng táiháh Hèunggóng ge fùnggíng. Yihnhauh tùhng néih heui hàahngháh gūngsí a, máaiháh yéh a. Gám, hóu m̀hhóu a?
- Máh Siujé : Hóu, bātgowo ngóh juhng séung guo hól hàahngháh, néih sík m̀hsík louh a?

- 1) fàandouheui = arrive back
- 2) hóu wáan ge deihfōng = fun places, amusing places
- 3) Náh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen',...
- 4) fùnggíng = scenery
- 5) louh = road
 - a) sík louh = know the road; know your way around

Jèung Sàang: Māt m̄hsĭk a? Ngóh jyuh hái Gáulùhng gé.

Máh Siujé : Gám, jauh ngāamsaai laak. Ngóh hóu séung heui Sàngaai hàahngáh tím bo.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk, yùhgwó gau sĭngaan, ngóh jauh daai néih chòh fóchē heui Sàngaai là.

Máh Siujé : Gám, m̄hgòisaai sĭn bo. A, yĭhgā ngóh yiu heui ló fēigēi piu, joigin laak. Fàandouheui Hèunggóng jigányiu làih wān ngóh a.

Jèung Sàang: Dāk ga la. Joigin.

1) Māt m̄hsĭk a? = What do you mean, not know?

2) piu = ticket

Lesson Twenty-one

1. Two women discuss taking their children swimming:

Léih Táai : Chàhn Táai, jóusàhn, gàm̄yaht gam dākhaahn a?

Chàhn Táai: Haih a. Gàm̄yaht m̄hsái fàangùng, daai dĭ sailóugō chēut làih hàahngáh.

Léih Táai : Eh...gàm̄yaht géi yĭht bo. Néih ngāamngām hái Tòihwāan fàanlàih. Tòihwāan yáuh móuh nĭdoh gam yĭht a?

Chàhn Táai: Dōu haih yātyeuhng gam yĭht. Gàm̄yaht gam yĭht, ngóh hóu séung heui hóitān yàuhséui.

Léih Táai : Haih a! Gam yĭht heui yàuhséui jei hóu ge laak. Ngóh gàm̄yaht dōu dākhaahn sah̄p dĭm jūng ngóh jà ga chē tūhng dĭ sailóugō làih jip néihdeih yāchhàih heui ā? Hóu m̄hhou a?

Chàhn Táai: Mh, heui bĭndoh nē?

Léih Táai : Heui Chĭn Séui Wān là, hóu m̄hhou a?

Chàhn Táai: Hóu aak. A, néih dĭ sailóugō gĭhgā géi daaih la. Ngóh géi nĭhn meih gĭngwo kéuihdeih laak.

Léih Táai : O! Ngóh go jái chāt seui, go néui dōu ngh seui la. Kéuihdeih dōu hóu jūngyi yàuhséui gé.

Chàhn Táai: A! Ngóh dōu yiu máaih dĭ yéh daaiheui ji dāk gá. Deuimĭhn yáuh jĭu maaih. Dáng ngóh heui máaih dĭ la.

Léih Táai : Hóu aak. Dĭ sailóugō ji jūngyi sĭhk jĭu ge laak. Gám, ngóh yĭhgā fàanheui sĭn, sah̄p dĭm làih jip néihdeih là.

Chàhn Táai: Hóu, joigin.

Léih Táai : Joigon.

1) hói tān = seaside

2) Chĭn Séui Wān = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]

2. Two friends discuss where to go swimming:

A: Gàmyaht hóu yiht la.

B: Haih a. Gàmyaht yihtgwo káhmyaht hóudò.

A: Heui m̀hheui Chínséui Wāan yàuhséui a?

B: M̀hdāk a. Ngóh yiu fàangùng. Tíngyaht láihbaailuhk, m̀hsái fàangùng. Tíngyaht heui ā.

A: Tíngyaht ngóh m̀hdākhaahn. Láihbaai ā.

B: Hóu lā. Daahnhaih ngóh wah Chínséui Wāan móuh Chekchyúh gam hóu bo.

A: Ngóh wah léuhng douh dōu yātyeuhng gam hóu. Daap bāsi heui Chekchyúh taai noih, sóyih dōu haih heui Chínséui Wāan fòngbihn dī.

B: Hóu lā. Hóu lā. Gám, láihbaaiyaht ngóhdeih heui Chínséui Wāan lā.

1) Chínséui Wāan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South Shore of Hong Kong island.

2) Chekchyúh = Stanley, a village and beach on the southeastern tip of Hong Kong island.

3) taai = too

4) fòngbihn = convenient

3. Two friends talk about the marriage of a 3rd friend:

A: Néih jí m̀hjí a, Lóuh Léih gitjófàn la bo.

B: Haih mē! Tùhng bíngó a?

A: Sing Wòhng ge--gámnin sahpgáu sei ja.

B: Mēyéh wá? Māt Lóuh Léih daaih kéuih sèhng yihsahp sei ah!

A: Haih a. Haih kéuih hohksāang làih gé. Hái hohkhaauh haih jeui leng jeui lēk ga.

B: O, Ngóh juhng yihwàih néih wah kéuih Lóuhdauh hái Hèunggóng haih jeui yauh chin ge tím.

A: Aaa--M̀nhhaih--bātgwo kéuihdeih dou hóu yáuh chin ga.

B: Wàh háai. Wai, kéuih Lóuhdauh juhng yáuh móuh daihyih go néui ga? Ha. Ha....

1) Lóuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lóuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.

2) māt = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'

3) sèhng yihsahp sei = a full 20 years

4) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'

5) yáuh chin = rich, wealthy

6) Wàh...háai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

Lesson Twenty-two

1. Mr. Cheung compliments his foreign friend Mr. Lee on his Cantonese:

Jèung Sàang: Léih Sàang, néih dī Gwóngdùngwá góngdāk m̄hcho bo.
Hohkjó gèi noih la?

Léih Sàang : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh tùhng ngóh taaitáai ngāamngāam
hohkjó sàam go yuht. Yíngā góngdāk juhng hóu leuhnjeuhn
ga.

Jèung Sàang: O! Néih taaitáai dōu hohk Gwóngdùngwá àh!

Léih Sàang : Haih a. Ngóhdeih léuhng go yatchàih hohk ge, bātgo ngóh
taaitáai hóu kahnlihk, sóyih kéuih hohkdāk hóu faai.
Yíngā góngdāk béi ngóh làuhleih.

Jèung Sàang: Néih jànhaih taai him la. Néih góngdāk gèi hóu ā.

2. Two friends at the swimming pool:

Jèung Sàang: Néih yàuhdāk gam lēk, haih m̄hhaih sinsih dōu làih yàuh-
séui ga?

Chàhn Sàang: M̄hhaih sinsih dōu yàuh, ngóh bīndouh yáuh gam dò sihgaan
a? Bātgo ngóh dukh siuhohk gójān jauh hóu júngyi
yàuhséui ge la. Néih yàuhdāk dōu m̄hcho ā!

Jèung Sàang: Ngóh m̄hdāk gé.

Chàhn Sàang: Wàh! Yínging sahpyih dīm làh, ngóhdeih séuhngheui sikh
ngaanjau sin, hóu ma?

Jèung Sàang: Hóu a!

1) siuhohk = elementary school

2) sikh ngaanjau = sikh ngaan = 'eat lunch'

3. Mr. Lee is driving his car with Mr. Wong as passenger:

Wòhng: Néih jà chē jādāk m̄hcho bo.

Léih : Néih gwojéung jē. Ngóh dōu hóu síu jà ge.

Wòhng: Néih agō haih m̄hhaih nīpáai héisáu hohk chē a?

Léih : Haih. Kéuih tùhng ngóh gājē yatchàih hohk.

Wòhng: Hohkdāk dīm a?

Léih : Màmádéi lā.

Wòhng: Néih yáuh móuh gaauháh kéuihdeih a?

Léih : Móuh. Ngóh jihnghaih sík jà, m̄hsík gaau ga.

4. Miss Chan and Miss Ma talk about their younger sisters' progress in school:

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Néih saimúi dukh syù meih a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Gāmnín ngāamngāam héisáu dukh.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Dukhdāk lēk m̄hlēk a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Dōu géi lēk, daahnhaih hóu láahn.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Gám, kéuih dī jih sēdāk leng m̀hleng a?

Máh Ngáh-gwān : M̀hmadéi lā. M̀muh néih saimúí sēdāk gam hóu.

Chàhn Siu-yíng: Néih gwojéung jē. Kéuih yáuhsih sēdāk hóu hóu,
yáuhsih dōu sēdāk hóu yáih ga.

Máh Ngáh-gwān : Ngóh saimúí yauh haih gám ge.

Lesson Twenty-three

1. Hotel, hotel guest and room boy

R: Sinsàang yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: M̀hgòì ning dò géi go sàangá làih ā. Ngóh yáuh dò géi gihn sàam
yiu gwa.

R: O, yiu géi dò go a?

G: Sei go gau laak.

R: Hóu, jauh ló làih.

(He returns with the clothes hangers)

R: Dī sàangá hái douh. Juhng yáuh mēyéh fànfu a?

G: Haih la. Chisó móuh chijí, jauh móuh móuhgān tím.

R: Chijí ngóh yātjahn ning làih lā. Móuhgān yiu dá dihnwá béi
sáisaambouh giu keuihdeih sunglāih. Bātgowo ngóh gámjiu tēng
keuihdeih wah daaih móuhgān yínging yúhng saai. Yiu ngaan
dī ji yáuh.

G: Yíngā yínging hahjau laak. Yātdihng yáuh ge la.

1) sáisaambouh = laundry department

2. Husband and wife:

Husband: Tingjiu m̀hsái jing jóuchāan béi ngóh sihk laak.

Wife : Díngáai a?

Husband: Yánwaih gámjiu sihkjó jóuchāan ji fàan gūng, gónm̀hchit daap
bási.

Wife : Gám, ngóh hóyih tingjiu jóudī héisàn jing béi néih sihk ga.

Husband: M̀hsái la. Néih fan-ngaandī lā.

Wife : M̀hgányiu. Néih séung géi díng sihk a?

Husband: Jóu gwo gámjiu bun go jūngtáuh jauh dāk laak.

Wife : Hóu lā. A, hóu yeh ge la, néih fan meih a?

Husband: Ngóh juhng meih chùnglèuhng. Néih fan sín lā.

1) fan ngaandī = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than
usual)

2) chùnglèuhng = take a bath, take a shower

Wife : Chūnglèuhngfóng móuh móuhgān ga, néih nǐng tǐuh yáhpheui ji hóu ná.

Husband: Dāk la. Yáuh móuh fàangáan a?

Wife : Yáuh.

1) chūnglèuhngfóng = bathroom

3. Two women discuss servant problems:

Léih Táai : Yí, Chàhn Táai, māt yiu néih jihgái làih tong sām a? Go gūngyàhn nē?

Chàhn Táai: Aih, m̀hóu góng la. A Sei chíhnyáht ji wah ngóh jí, kéuih yiu fāan Daaihluhk taam gājē, káhyáht heuijǒ la.

Léih Táai : Gám dím dāk ga? Néih dím gāai m̀hgiu kéuih dāng néih wándóu yáhn ji heui ā?

Chàhn Táai: Ngóh dóu haih gám wah ge laak. Daahnhaih kéuih yātdihng yiu káhyáht jauh heui, Juhng wah jeui jǒu yiu hanho yuht ji fāandaklāih tím bo.

Léih Táai : Aiya, néih jihgái yāt go yān dím jouhdāk gam dò yéh ga?

Chàhn Táai: Yāt go yuht jē, m̀hgányiu gé.

Léih Táai : Néih jànhaih lēk ga laak. Yeuhng yeuhng dóu dāk.

Chàhn Táai: M̀hhaih gé, yiu jough jauh jough ge jē...Chóhháh yám búi chàh sǐn lá.

Léih Táai : M̀hsái haakhei la. Ngóh jauh jáu ge laak.

1) māt = here: dím gāai?

2) jihgái = yourself

3) Gám dím dāk ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such...

4) yeuhng yeuhng = everything

4. Elder brother, younger sister and servant:

Elder brother : Luhk jé, ngóh gihn sēutsām hóu laahттаат. M̀hgoi néih túhng ngóh sáijǒ kéuih lá.

Luhk jé : O, néih gón m̀hgónjyuh yiu ga?

Elder brother : Yiu a, ngóh tǐngjǐu jauh yiu jeuk fāan hohk ge la.

Younger sister: A, Luhk jé, ngóh yáuh tǐuh kwáhn dóu yiu sái. M̀hgoi néih yatcháih lǒ heui ā.

1) Luhk jé = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyíng or Chàhn Ngáh-luhk) and the jé part means 'elder sister'.

2) gón = in a hurry; gón m̀hgónjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?

- Luhk jé : Hóu, juhng yáuh dī mēyéh yiu sái waahkjé yiu tong ga?
 Elder brother : Mm. Haih laak. Nídouh juhng yáuh tíuh fu, ngóh káhmyaht jǐngchàauhjó. Néih dākhaahn góján, m̀ngòì néih tùhng ngóh tongháh kéuih lā.
- Younger sister: Luhk jé a, luhk dím bun la. Ngóh tùhng Agō chāt dím bun yiu heui tái dá bō. Sihkdāk faahn meih a?
- Luhk jé : Dāk ge la. Taaitáai heuijó Hòh Táai ngūkkéi dá páai, ngaamngāam dá dihnwá faanlāih wah m̀hsái dang kéuih sihk faahn. Néihdeih sihk sín lā.
- Younger sister: Gám, Agō faai dī lā! M̀hhaih jauh gónm̀hchit ge la.
- Elder brother : Hóu, jauh làih.
- 1) sihk dāk faahn meih? = Can we eat yet?
 2) m̀hhaih = otherwise, if not,...

Lesson Twenty-four

1. Prospective tenant and landlady:

- Prospective tenant: Néihdeih nídouh haih m̀hhaih yáuh deihfòng jòu a?
 Landlady : Haih a. Chéng yahplāih táiháh lā. Chéng gwolāih nībihn lā.
- Prospective tenant: Hóu, m̀ngòì.
- Landlady : Nī gāan syùfóng tùhng gó gāan seuihfóng dōu haih jòu ge. Néih táiháh ngāam m̀hngāam?
- Prospective tenant: Mm, gāan syùfóng dōu géi daaih, go seuihfóng yahp-bihh juhng yáuh chisó. Géi hóu a. Néih yiu géi chin go yuht nē?
- Landlady : Sei baak mán jē. Daahn haih yiu sín béi léuhng go yuht jòu bo.
- Prospective tenant: M̀hgányiu. Ngóh séung táiháh go chyùhfóng--háì bíndouh a?
- Landlady : Chéng yahphei lā...Ngóhdeih chyùhfóng hóu gōn-jehng ga.
- Prospective tenant: Mm, m̀hcho a, néihdeih yáuh dihnwá ga?
 Landlady : Yáuh. Néih dōu hóyíh yuhng gé.
- Prospective tenant: Gám, dōu géi fòngbihn. Ngóh gāmmáahn daai ngóh sínsàng làih táiháh sín lā.
- 1) gwolāih nībihn = come over here
 2) fòngbihn = convenient

2. Mother and daughter discuss broken teapot:

- Mother : Siu Mihng, māt jèung tóigam dò séui yan ga? Dóuséjò mēyéh a?
 1) māt + sentence = How come...?

Síu Míhng: Dóuséjǒ dī cháh lòh. Juhng dálaahnjǒ go cháhwa tím bo.
 Mother : Bǐngǒ gam mǎhsíusām nē? Dá laahnjǒ bǐn go cháhwa a?
 Síu Míhng: Haih A Yèh dálaahn ga. Hóuchóí haih gauh gó go ja.
 Mother : Gám, dōu yiu máaihfaan dò yāt go hái douh ji dāk gá. Yùh-
 gwó mǎmáaihfaan go sǎn ge jauh mǎngau yuhng ge laak.
 Síu Míhng: Máaih go dǎmhlahn ge lā.

- 1) A Yèh = Grandfather (on father's side)
- 2) hái douh = here: and have it here

3. Talk between a young lady and a household servant:

Síujé: A Sei, mǎngòí néih tùhng ngóh chùng wùh yíht cháh làih lā.
 Ngóh hái kèhláu nǐdouh a.
 A Sei: Hóu a. Síujé, juhng yáuh mēyéh fanfu nē?
 Síujé: A, juhng yáuh. Mǎngòí néih séuhngheui ngóh gǎan fǒng ló tíuh
 baak kwáhn heui tong ā. Ngóh léuhng dím bun yiu chēut gāai.
 Faaidí bo! Mǎhah jauh gónǎkchit ge la.
 A Sei: Dāk laak. Yíngā sínji léuhng dím. Yātdihng gónǎkchit béi néih
 gé. Aiya! Bǐngǒ dóusé dī ngàuhnáaih hái deihhá a? Gam laht-
 taat!
 Síujé: Ngóh dōu mǎhji a. Faai dī yahpheui ló faai bou làih maatjǒ
 kéuh lā.
 A Sei: Síujé, hóuchíh wúh lohk yúh bo. Dǎngjǎn chēut gāai geidāk
 daai jē a.
 Síujé: Hóu, Haih laak--dǎngjahn Cháhn Táai dá dihnwá làih, néih wah
 kéuh jí, ngóh gǎmáahn mǎdǎkháahn heui kéuh ngúkkéi,
 yànwaih ngóh yáuh dī gányiu sih yiu jough.
 A Sei: Jǐdou laak.
 Síujé: Aiya! Yíngǐng léuhng dím yāt go gwāt laak, ngóh yiu wuhn sām
 la. Tíuh kwáhn tonghóu meih a?
 A Sei: Tonghóu laak. Nàh, tongdāk leng mǎhleng a?
 Síujé: Mǎcho! Ngóh yiu faaidí wuhn jí dāk laak. Mǎngòí néih tùhng ngóh
 níng nǐdǐ syù chēutheui jǎi hái ga chē douh sín. Go sǎudóí
 dōu yārchǎih ló heui lā.
 A Sei: Dāk la.

- 1) ngóh gǎan fǒng = my room
- 2) mǎhah = if not, otherwise
- 3) sínji = only
- 4) gónǎkchit = there's enough time or You can make it or
 If you hurry you'll make it.
- 5) deihhá = floor
- 6) geidāk = remember

Síujé: Dángjahn lohk yúh, jigányiu geidāk sàan chēung a.

Lesson Twenty-five

1. Talking about how to keep awake:

A: Dīngáai gámjiu gam móuh jingsáhn a?

B: Kàhmáahn yihtgwotàuh, fanmhjeuhk, sóyih gámjiu hóu ngáahnfan.

A: Gám, wán dī dungdúngdéi ge yéh yámháh lā. Ngóh síhsih ngáahnfan dōu júngyi yám dung ge yéh ga.

B: Yáuh méyéh dung yéh hóu yám a?

A: Yám bùi dung bējáu lā.

B: Mhdāk! Yámjó juhng ngáahnfan tím!

A: Heiséui lā.

B: Ngóh jí pa yám heiséui ge laak, yámjó gokdāk hóu géngshot gé.

A: Dung gafē yātdihng ngāam néih laak.

B: Hm, hóu, ngóh géi júngyi gafē ge. Néih dōu yám bùi lā.

A: Hóu aak!

B: Gám, dāng ngóh dá dihnwá giu làuhhah sung séuhnglāih sín.

2. Two friends discuss Szechwanese food:

A: Néih haih m̀h haih síhsih dōu chēutheui síhk Seichyùn choi ga?

B: Haih a. Jouh māt a?

A: Móuh, nī léuhng yaht ngóh yiu chéng haak. Séung síháh Seichyùn choi jē. Yáuh méyéh hóu síhk ge, gaaisiuhháh lā.

B: Aiya! Ngóh m̀hsík dī choi méng ge bo.

A: Gám, néih dím giu choi a?

B: Ngóh síhsih dōu haih tùhng pàhngyáuh yārchàih heui gé. Chichi dōuhaih kéuih giu méyéh ngóh jauh síhk méyéh ge ja.

A: Gám, néih yāt yeuhng dōu m̀hgeidāk mē?

B: Ngóh jihng haih geidāk yáuh go tòng syūnsyūndéi, lahtláatdéi, giujouh syūnlaht tòng, yáuh yeuhng yú tihhtímdéi, syūnsyūndéi, hóuhóusíhk ge, giujouh tòhngchou yú. Daihyihdī choi ngóh jauh sík síhk m̀hsík góng laak.

1) Seichyùn = Szechwan

2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?

3) Móuh = Nothing special

4) chichi = every time

5) syūnlaht tòng = pungent pepper soup

6) tòhngchou yú = sweet and sour fish

A: Gám, néih tùng ngóh mahnháh néih gó go pàhngyáuh ā.

B: Dāk, ngóh tìngyaht fàanlaih wah néih jì lā.

Lesson Twenty-six

1. Mrs. Wong and Mrs. Lee discuss Mrs. Lee's new job:

Wòhng Táai: Tèngginwah yáuh gáan ngànhòhng béi hóu gòu sànséui chéng néih bo! Haih mhhaih a?

Léih Táai : Haih a. Méihgwok Ngànhòhng chéng ngóh fuhjaak yāt go bouhfahn. Hah go yuht yāt houh héisáu séuhng gùng ge la.

Wòhng Táai: Gám, néih heuijò fàangùng, bíngò tùng néih chau dī sailóugō a?

Léih Táai : Sóyih ngóh yiu wán yàhn làih tùng ngóh chau kéuihdeih. Néih hó mhhóyih gaaisiuh go béi ngóh ā?

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh yiu mahnháh ngóh go gùngyàhn sinji dāk. Néih dásyun béi géi chin yàhgùng a?

Léih Táai : Yùhgwó wándóu go yàhn yauh gònjehng yauh kàhnlihk ge, jauh dōdī chin dōu mouh sowaih ge.

Wòhng Táai: Yìngā chéng gùngyàhn, jisíu dōu yiu sàam baak lèhng mán ge la.

Léih Táai : Haih a. Juhng mhhaih gam yih chéngdākdóu tím bo.

Wòhng Táai: Ngóh tùng néih mahn dò géi go yàhn lā.

Léih Táai : Gám, mhgò néih sín bo!

Wòhng Táai: Mhsái haakhei.

1) chau = to take care (of children)

a) chaujái = baby asah

2. Mrs. Cheung calls the air conditioner repair company:

A: Hèunggóng Láahnghei Gūngsī a?

B: Haih a, mēyéh sih nē?

A: Ngóh ūkkéi go láahnghei gēi waaihjó. Ngóh chihnyaht yìhging dágwo dihnwá giu néih gūngsī wán yàhn làih tùng ngóh jing ge la. Dìnggái gam yaht juhng meih làih ga?

B: Yáuh gám ge sih mē? Chéng mahn néih haih bíndouh ga?

A: Ngóh nīdouh haih Daaih Douh Jūng yih yāt baat houh, yih láu sing Wòhng ge.

B: Gám, néih go láahngheigēi waaihjó mēyéh a?

A: Go láahnghei gēi hòijó hóu noih dōu mhdāk láahng lòh.

B: Hóu lā, ngóh yātján giu yàhn heui lā.

A: Faaidī lā, nīpái gam yiht, móuh láahnghei hóu nàahn fandāk jeuhk ga.

B: Dāk la, gāmyaht yātdihng tùhng néih jǐngfàanhóu kéuih la.

A: Haih le bo. Mhgoi néih.

3. Two young men run into each other on the street and decide to go swimming:

A: Wai. Lóuh Jēung, heui yáuh séui le.

B: Hóu aak. Wán Hòh Siujé yārchàih heui a.

A: Bǐngo Hòh Siujé a?

B: Hái gūngsǐ dá jih gógo lē.

A: O--Gám, néih yǐngā dá dihnwá béi kéuih. Ngóh sǐn heui máaih yéh.
Yúhgwó mhhaih jauh gónmhchit léuhng díng gó bāan chē ge la.

(Later:)

A: Ei, díng a? Hòh Siujé géisih chēut làih a?

B: Hā. Kéuih hái ūkkéi dágán páai. Kéuih wah mhhēui dāk wóh.

A: Mēyéh wá? Mhhēui àh. Ngóh dí yéh hahmbahlaahng dōu máaihsaai la bo.

B: Wai, juhng yáuh bǐngo néuihjái ūkkéi yáuh dihnwá ga?

A: Léih Siu-lihng lā.

B: Mhdāk ge. Yǐngā kéuih yātdihng jouhgán gūngfo. Kéuih mǎhmā mhwúih béi kéuih chēut làih ge.

A: A, Mǎh Gwai-fōng hàahnggán gwo làih. Ngóhdeih heui mahnháh kéuih lā.

B: Mǎh Siuje, dāk mhdākhaahn a? Ngóhdeih chéng néih heui yàuhséui ā?

M: A. Jánhah deuihahjyuh laak. Ngóh pǎhngyáuh hái Tǐnsǐng Máhtàuh dǎnggán ngóh. Gāmyaht mhhēuidāk la. Daih yaht sǐn lā. Joigin.

A&B: Joigin.

A: Gám, ngóhdeih jihgéi heui la. Ha--Ha--.

1) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!

2) wóh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'

3) néuihjái = young girl

4) jouhgán gūngfo = do homework, lessons

5) jihgéi = ourselves, myself, himself, etc.
here: ourselves alone

Lesson Twenty-seven

1. Two friends discuss buying Japanese goods:

A: Díngáai néih gam jūngyi máaih Yahtbún yéh ga?

B: Yànwaih Yahtbún yéh jouhdāk tùhng lòihlóu ge chà mhdāk géidò, daahnhaaih jauh pēhng hóu dò la.

1) chà mhdāk géi dò = chàhdò = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]

A: Sèuiyihh haih jingdāk leng jē, daahnhaih m̄htùhng gé. Yahtbún yéh, yuhng móuhgéinoih jauh laahn ge la.

B: M̄hgindāk ā! Kèihsaht yáuhsh̄h dī Yahtbún yéh juhng hóu tím. Fáan-jing yáuh dī yéh yuhng móuh géi noih jauh yiu wuhn sán ge laak. Maaish lòihlòu ge yuhngdou gauh dōu meih laahn, dāmjó kéuih yauh m̄hóu, m̄hdám yauh m̄hórtái, hóu nàahn gé.

A: Néih góngdāk dōu géi ngāam, daahnhaih deui ngóh làih góng, ngóh jauh maaish bundeih yéh dōu m̄hmáaih Yahtbún ge laak.

B: Hā, néih go yáhn jánhaih ā!

1) M̄hgindāk ā! = Not necessarily!

2) Fáanjing = anyway, besides,...

3) Néih go yáhn jánhaih ā = You really are something!

2. Talking about the importance of male children:

Jèung Táai: Wòhng Táai chihnyaht sàangjó go néui bo. Néih jí m̄hjí a?

Léih Siujé: Haih mē? Néih yihgā góng ngóh jí jí ja. Gám, kéuih yāt-dihng hóu hōisām ge là?

Jèung Táai: Hóuchih wah m̄hhaih bo. Kéuihdeih gódouh dī yáhn hóu hēi-mohng sàang go jái ga, yihgā sàangjó go néui, sóyih kéuihdeih m̄hhaih géi júngyi lòh.

Léih Siujé: Kèihsaht jáineui yáuh māt fanbiht a? Dōuhaih jihgéi ge sailógō jē.

Jèung Táai: Léih Siujé, néih meih gitfàn jauh m̄hjí ge laak. Deuiyù Júngwokyahh làih góng, dōsou dōu yihwàih móuh jái haih hóu daaih gihn sih ga.

Léih Siujé: Ngóh dōu jidou. Daahnhaih Wòhng Táai nī go bātgowo haih daih yāt go sailógō jē. M̄hsai gam mēyeh ga?

Jèung Táai: Móuh cho. Bātgowo yùhgwó daih yāt go jauh haih jái jauh hóu hóudò la ma.

Léih Siujé: Māt néih dōu yáuh gám ge séungfaat ge mē?

Jèung Táai: Ngóh jihgéi jauh móuh sówaih. Daahnhaih A Jèung jauh hóu chíh Wòhng Táai kéuihdeih gám m̄hjúngyi neui ga.

1) sàangjó = gave birth (to)

2) hōisām = happy

3) jihgéi ge = one's own, your own, etc.

4) M̄hsai gam mēyeh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?

5) séungfaat = idea, concept

6) A Jùng = Mrs. Jèung's husband

7) hóu chíh = similar to A similar to B.
(A Jèung is similar to Wòhng Táai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

Léih Siujé: Haih mē? Gám, néihdeih yáuh géidò go jáinéui a?

Jèung Táai: Ngòhdeih juhng meih yáuh sailóugō.

Léih Siujé: Gám, néih daih yāt go jigányiu sàang go jái ji dāk bo!

Jèung Táai: Ha-ha. Jèui hóu haih gám lā.

Lesson Twenty-eight

1. Delivering goods to the wrong address:

Jèung Táai: Mātyéh sih a?

Fógei : Sung fo làih a.

Jèung Táai: Bīndouh ga?

Fógei : WihngŌn Gūngsī ge.

Jèung Táai: WihngŌn Gūngsī sung yéh lái? Ngòh móuh heui máaihgwō yéh bo. Mmm, ch̀euihf̀ei ngòh s̀ins̀aang máaih ge lā.

Fógei : Bīngō máaih dōu hóu la. Haih sé néihdeih nīdouh s̀au ge, m̀hg̀oi néih ch̀im méng s̀auj̀o kéuih la.

Jèung Táai: Yáuh móuh sé haih mēyéh làih ga?

Fógei : M̀hji bo. Ngòh m̀hsik Yingmán ga, néih jingéi nīkheui tái háh la.

Jèung Táai: Yāt tou b̀uidip? Yāt dā m̀ouhgān? M̀hchih bo. Ngòhdeih m̀hwúih máaih nīdī gám ge yéh gá.

Fógei : Gám, néih s̀au m̀hs̀au ga? B́eijó chin geulòh bo.

Jèung Táai: Ỳungwó m̀hhaih ngòhdeih máaih gé, b́eijó chin dōu m̀hhaih ngòhdeih s̀au gá. Bātỳuh néih dāng ngòh dāng dihnwá b́ei ngòh s̀ins̀aang mahnháh haih m̀hhaih kéuih dāng gá?

Fógei : Hóu la, hóu la, m̀hg̀oi néih faaidī la. Ngòh juhng yiu heui hóu dò deihf̀ong ga.

Jèung Táai: M̀hg̀oi dāng yātjahn ā.

Fógei : Jàn m̀hfhāahn!

1) fo = goods

2) lái? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.

3) nīkheui = ningheui

4) m̀hchih bo = Not likely!

5) Jàn m̀hfhāahn = What a nuisance!

2. Servant talks to housewife about opening a bank account:

A Jyù : Siu-Nāai a, néih géisih heui ngànhhòhng tùhngm̀aaih ngòh heui, dāk m̀hdāk a?

1) A Jyù = servant's name

2) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the

family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family but it is not now restricted to that meaning.

Siu-Nāai: Heui ngànhòhng néih dōu m̄hsīk lauh mē?

A Jyù : Lauh jauh sīk gé, bātgow ngòh m̄hji jài chīn yahphei yiu mēyeh sáujukh jē.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung jài chīn heui ngànhòhng àh? Hóu yih jē. Jiyiu néih daai jihgēi jèung sánfánjing heui hòih wuhháu, chīm go méng jauh dāk ge laak.

A Jyù : Aiya--Siu Nāai, néih dōu m̄hshaih m̄hji ngòh m̄hsīk jih ge lā. ngòh méng dōu m̄hsīk chīm ga!

Siu Nāai: Gám, yuhng tòuhjèung dōu dāk ge jē.

A Jyù : Tòuhjèung dōu dāk àh? Gám, ngòh yáuh a.

Siu Nāai: Néih séung géisih heui a?

A Jyù : Móuh sówaih gé. Dākhaahn ji heui dōu m̄hchih ga.

Siu Nāai: Bātyùh hajau sihkyùhn faahn ji heui lā. Ngànhòhng sàam dīm ji sàan m̄hn ga.

A Jyù : Hóu aak. Gám, ngòh heui jyú faahn sín la bo.

1) lauh = road

2) hòih wuhháu = open an account

Lesson Twenty-nine

1. A visit to the doctor:

Léih Siujé : Chàhn Yīsāng.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Ā, Léih Siujé, māt sih a?

Léih Siujé : Ngòh chihn géi yaht hái chyùhfóng ditchàn, go tàuh johngmāaih go syutgwaih douh, hóuchóih móuh māt sih. Daahnhaih ní léuhng yaht ngòh gokdāk hóu tauhtung, sóyih ngòh làih táihah jē.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Mmm, néih yihchihn yáuh móuh gámyéung tunggwo ga?

Léih Siujé : Meih sigwo ga. Gám, ngòh sinji pa a.

Chàhn Yīsāng: Nípāai fandākhóu ma?

Léih Siujé : Fandāk m̄hshaih géi hóu lòh. Hóu yeh dōu fānm̄hjeuhk, juhng sèhng máahn séng tím.

1) chihn géi yaht = a few days ago

2) tàuh = head

3) johngmāaih = hit

4) tung = hurt

Chàhn Yísāng: Fandāk m̀hóu dōu wúih tauhtung ga. Gwoheui go bihn,
ngóh t̀hng néih táiháh lā.

Léih Siujé : Hóu.

(The doctor finishes examining the patient:)

Léih Siujé : Díng a, yísāng?

Chàhn Yísāng: Móuh māt sih ge, m̀hgau fan ge jē. Ngóh hòih dī yeuhk
béih néih lā. Náh, múih máahn síhk yāt nāp jī fan,
néih jauh wúih hóu hóu fan ge laak, ỳhngwó gwo léuhng
sāam yaht juhng meih hóu, jauh joi lāih tái lā.

Léih Siujé : Hóu, m̀hgòisaai la, Chàhn Yísāng.

Chàhn Yísāng: Hóu wah.

1) yeuhk = medicine

hòih dī yeuhk = write a prescription

2) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.

3) Hóu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. Young lady goes to the hospital to visit her injured friend:

A: S̀insāang, chéng mahn Gául̀hng Ỳiyún hái b̀indouh a?

B: Gául̀hng Ỳiyún ah. Né, jauh hái Taaijī Douh t̀hng Wòdálóuh Douh
jīgāan.

A: Ỳauh ǹidouh heui káhn m̀hkáhn a?

B: O--Léih ǹidouh móuh géi ỳhn jē. Né, gahnjyuh daihyih go chē
jaahm góidouh jauh haih laak.

A: M̀hgòisaai.

(She arrives at her friend's room in the hospital:)

A: A, Siu-fóng, móuh mēyéh sih lā ma?

C: Móuh, béih chē johngchàn jī ma. Hóu hóudò la. Ỳauh sàm.

A: Johngchàn b̀indouh a?

C: Né, johngchàn jek geuk lòh.

A: Aiyáh. Hái b̀indouh johngchàn a?

C: Jauh hái ngóh gūngsī gaaklèih.

A: Hahchi chēut gāi síusàm dī la.

C: Jídou la.

1) Taaijī Douh = Prince Road

2) Wòdálóuh Douh = Waterloo Road

3) jī ma = that's all

4) Ỳauh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire

- A: Nàh, Ngóh daaijǒ dī gāitòng làih. Yíngā juhng yihtyítdeí. Yámjǒ kéuih sīn la.
- C: O, mhgòí. Mmm. Dī gāitòng hóu leng a.
- A: Haih a, ngóh dahnjǒ sèhng yaht ga la.
- C: Ha. Gám, ngóh hahchi yiu bēi chē johng dò géi chi ji dāk.
- A: Hē, hahchi ngóh tái dōu mhtái néih a. Hóu laak, ngóh yíngā yiu fāangíng laak. Tíngyaht ji làih taam néih la.
- C: Hóu, mhgòisaai. Tíngyaht geidāk joi daai gāitòng làih bēi ngóh yám a?
- A: Hóu la. Hóu la. Joigin.
- 1) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
 - 2) tái dōu mhtái néih = won't even come see you

3. Miss Lee visits a fellow worker, Mr. Lau, in the hospital:

- A: Làuh Sàang, dím a?
- B: O--Léih Siujé. Hóu dī la. Yáuh sàm. Néih dím ji ngóh jyuh hái yíyún ga?
- A: Haih Lóuh Jēung góng bēi ngóh tēng ge. Daahnhaih kéuih wah dōu mǎhji néih haih mēyeh behng. Mēyeh sih a?
- B: Eh. Chōchō jihngghaih yáuh dī sēungfūng tùhngmàaih mhsyùfuhk. Ngóh yáuh móuh heui tái yísāng. Daih yaht jauh faat siu la. Sāumēi--mhhaih jauh làih jǒ nīdough lō!
- A: Géi dō douh yiht a?
- B: Kàhmyaht juhng haih sa'ahgáu douh a.
- A: Aiyah. Māt gam gányiu a. Yísāng dím wah a?
- B: Gámyaht hóu hóudò la. Tàuhshīn yísāng joi bēijǒ dī yeuhkséui tùhng yeuhkyún ngóh sihk. Kéuih wah gwo léuhng yaht jauh hóyih chēut yún.
- A: O, Gám, jauh hóu la. Nàh. Nīdī cháang ngóh tùhng néih jàihóu kéuih a.
- B: Néih juhng gam haakhei. Jànhaih dòjehsaai.
- A: Siu yisi jē. Ngóh dōu yiu jáu la. Dáng néih chēutjǒ yún, ngóhdeih
- 1) Yáuh sàm = It's kind of you to inquire.
 - 2) daih yaht = the next day
 - 3) mhhaih jauh làihjǒ nīdough lō: = Wasn't it that I came here!
i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)
 - 4) douh = degree (of temperature)
 - 5) chēut yún = get out of the hospital
 - 6) Siu yisi jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response to thanks for a gift.

wánmáaih Lóuh Jēung yātchāih heui yám chàh lā.

B: Hóu aak--joigin.

A: Joigin.

1) wánmáaih = get together with

Lesson Thirty

1. An overdue plane:

Sailóu: Fùng dihnbou haih mhhaih saimúí dáfaanlāih ga?

Agō : Haih a. Kéuih wah gámáahn hái Yahtbún gēichèuhng jáudim jjuh. Yánwaih gódouh dágán fùng, fēigēi mhhóí. Jí faai dōu yiu tīngyaht jí fàandaklāih.

Sailóu: Gám, ngóhdeih m̀hjí géisih heui jip gēi ge lo bo.

Agō : Líhn kéuih jīngēi dōu m̀hjí géisih jí yáuh fēigēi hòí, ngóhdeih yauh díng jí a?

Sailóu: Gám, néih gú kéuih wúih m̀hwúih joi dá dihnbou fàanlāih a?

Agō : Daaihkoí wúih gé. Chèuihfèi góm̀hchit lā.

Sailóu: Aí, ngóh jánhah pa Yahtbún ní chèuhng fùng wúih yuht dá yuht daaih tím bo.

Agō : Dōu m̀hgányiu gé. Jidò hái Yahtbún jjuh dò géi yaht jē. Yauh m̀hsái bēi jáudim chin gé.

Sailóu: M̀t jjuh gēichèuhng jáudim m̀hsái bēi chin ge mē?

Agō : Haih a, hònhghùng gūngsī fuhjaak ge ma.

Sailóu: Haih àh? Hósīk dáfung m̀hchēutdākheui hàahng gāai m̀hhaih géi hóu ge bo.

1) gēichèuhng = fēigēichèuhng = airport

2) gēi = fēigēi

3) chèuhng = M for wind

4) hònhghùng gūngsī = airline company

2. Renting a house:

A: Chàhn Táai, néih m̀hhaih wah gám̀yaht heui tái úk gé? Dìngáai juhng m̀hheui a?

B: Haih a. Ngóh búnlòih tùhng úkjyú yeukhóu gám̀jiu sahng díng ginmihng gé, daahnhaih ngáamngáam kéuih giu yáhn tùngjí ngóh wah hahjau jí dāk̀hàahn woh. Sóyih hahjau jí heui lā.

(That afternoon:)

Landlord: O, Chàhn Taaitáai. Chéng yahplāih ā.

1) úkjyú = landlord, landlady

2) woh = that's what he said.

Chàhn : M̀hgoi.

Landlord: Nídouh yáuh sàam fóng léuhng tēng, chyùhfóng hái hauhbihn. Chisó tùhng chungléuhngfóng hái nídouh. Kèhláu hái chíhn-bihn. Deihfóng m̀hcho ga.

Chàhn : Mmm. Yí, jáan dihndāng waaihjó gé.

Landlord: Móuh. Móuh dihndāngdáam ji ma. Móuh waahdou gé.

Chàhn : Yāt go yuht géi chín jōu a?

Landlord: Luhk baak mán jē. Hóu pèhng ga la.

Chàhn : Lihn m̀hlihnmaaih séuidihnfai a?

Landlord: Lihnmāaih séuifai, daahnhaih m̀hlihn dihnfai. Chàhn Táai gokdāk dím a?

Chàhn : Deihfóng dōu géi hóu, bātgowo ūkjōu gwai dī la.

Landlord: Ah, Chàhn Táai, Wòhng Sàang gaaishiuh làih ge. M̀hwúih sàu gwai ge la, nídouh yáuh yáuh dihnwá. Hóu fòngbihn ga.

Chàhn : Pèhngdī m̀hdāk àh?

Landlord: Móuh baahnfaat la, yínging haih jeui pèhng ge la.

Chàhn : Gám, ngóh fàanheui mahnháh ngóh s̀insàang sin lā. M̀hgoisaaí.

Landlord: M̀hsái haakhei.

- 1) sàam fóng = 3 bedrooms
- 2) léuhng tēng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (léuhng tēng = haaktēng + faahatēng)
- 3) dihndāngdáam = light bulb
- 4) ji ma = that's all
- 5) séuidihnfai = water and electricity fees
- 6) M̀hwúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
- 7) fòngbihn = convenient

3. Mr. Brown tells his friend Mr. Cheung about his Cantonese course and his plans for an upcoming trip:

A: Jèung Sàang. Hóu noi h móuh gin bo. Géi hóu ma?

B: Yí. Māt Bāau Sàang néih s̀ik góng Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Haih a. Ngāamngāam hohk gé.

B: Haih mē. Góngdāk gam bíujéun gé. Haih laak--Bāau Sàang, néih dímgaai wúih heui hohk Gwóngdùngwá ga?

A: Óh. Yíngā ngóhdeih gūngsī hóudò sàangyi yiu góng Gwóngdùngwá ji

- 1) bíujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
- 2) sàangyi = commercial business

dāk. Sòyih gūngsī paai ngòh heui hohk.

B: Hohkjó géi noih a?

A: Luhk go yuht.

B: Gám, néih gokdāk hohk Gwóngdùngwá nàahn mhnàahn a?

A: Mhwúih ā. Ngòh deui Gwóngdùngwá hóu yáuh hingcheui. Bātgo héisáu hohk góján, ngòh lihn yāt yih saam jaangdí dou góng mhcheutlaih. Daaihkoi hohkjó léuhng go yuht, jauh hóu hóu dò la.

B: Hā. Bāau Sàang yingā tēng néih góng dĩ Gwóngdùngwá yuht làih yuht làuhleih.

A: Hah. Néih gwojéung jē.

B: Haih laak--hah go láihbaai néih dāk mhdākhaahn a? Láu dāan sàangyi ngòh séung yeuk néih cheutlaih jámháh.

A: O. Mhdāk bo. Ngòh gūngsī yiu paai ngòh heui Dūng Nàahm A táiháh gó bihn ge sàangyi. Hauhyaht jauh yiu jáu laak.

B: Ó. Gam faai àh. Heui dĩ mēyéh deihfòng a?

A: Yuhtnàahm Sīnggabō, Máhlòihā dōu yiu heui--Búnlòih seuhng go yuht jauh yiu heui ge la, daahnhaiah ngòh ngāamngāam hohkgán Gwóngdùngwá. Sòyih yingā jí heui.

B: Gám, jauh ngāamsaai la. Háí gó bihn néih jauh yáuh hóudò gèiwúih góng Gwóngdùngwá ga.

A: Haih a. Ní go gèiwúih hóu mhcho ga. Mún--Néih dāan sàangyi ngòh wán Lóuh Láu yeuk go síhgaan túhng néih jām ā.

B: Hóu aak. Mhgòisaai bo. Hau yaht ngòh yáuh dĩ síh, daaihkoi mhheui-dāk sung néih fēigēi.

A: Mhsái haakhei.

- 1) paai = send
- 2) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
- 3) dāan sàangyi = some business [dāan = 'list,' M for sàangyi]
- 4) jām = discuss
- 5) Dūng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
- 6) Yuhtnàahm = VietNam
- 7) Máhlòihā = Malaya
- 8) gèiwúih = opportunity

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers to the left of the period refer to lesson numbers, and those to the right, to page numbers.

- a, suffix to members of series in parallel construction, 19.72
- addresses, larger units precede smaller, 17.27
- Adj, measurable, 21.128-30
- amáh?(var:āma), interrogative sen. suf. checking on an assumption: 'isn't it?'; 29.313
- amáh, sen.suf. for obviousness, 29.313, 327
- Aux. verbs, wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199
- bātyùh... bá laak, 'it would be better to....', 28.290
- béi, 'by', 29.312
- béi, 'compared to', in comparison pattern, 21.126-127
- béigaau, comparatively, in comparison pattern, 21.127
- búnloh, 'originally', 30.343
- chèuhfèi, 'unless,' 'only if', 28.289-90
- chèuhjò....(jì ngoih),, 'with the exception of...', 28.1-2, 28.288-89
- chíh, 'is similar to, resembles,' 27.265 comparison patterns, adjectives, 21.126-28; verbs, 22.152-153
- daaih, 'big', used in reference to years of age, 21.130
- daih - M, contraction of daihyih M, 16.9
- daihyih M, another (additional) M, 16.9
- dāk, Vsuf. 'can', 20.97; with performance-achievement Verb: V-dāk-achievement, 'can perform-achieve', 23.174-76; in VO phrase: V-dāk-O, 'can VO', 23.176
- dāk-, in manner patterns, 22.150; manner pattern used in adjectival time phrases with jóu, ngaan, yeh: V-dāk-jóu = eat/ate early, 23.177
- dates, 17.27-29; larger units precede smaller, 17.27; days of the week, 17.27; question-word formulas for dates, 17.29; gái yuht? and bīn yuht?, 'what month?', 17.31; chart for sections of the day, 23.177
- deui, 'towards, about, for, with', 'in regard to', in deui Obj Adj phrase, 30.338
- dím?, 'how', in manner patterns, 22.151
- dímjūng, hour, as post-verb time spent word, 20.101
- dòsou, 'most'; 'mostly', as noun modifier, 27.267; as adverb, 27.268
- duplicated adjectives, Adj-adj-déi, 'a little bit Adj.', 25.223
- duplicated M for TW, 'Each and every', 20.99-100
- duplicated Measures for indiv. Nouns, 'every N', 27.267; 27.275
- faaidí, 'quickly', in pre-verb and post-verb position, 24.200
- frequency words, 21.130

- gám, 'such', as independent unit, 'such things', 'in such a way', 26.246; 'this way', as modifier of Verb this way, 26.246; as modifier of noun, 'this kind of N', 26.246; substituting for VP gám jòuh, 'do/did it thus', 26.249-50; compared with gam, 'so', 26.247
- gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316; compared with káhn, near, 29.316
- V-gán, 'V is going on', V.suf, calling attention to action in progress, 26.245; position in directional verb compounds, 26.245
- ge lo bo, sen.suf ge/ga, 'that's the way it is,' + sen.suf. lo bo for good-natured protest, 30.340
- gé, ss. ge + rising intonation connotes impatience, 19.88
- géi?, which number (i.e., how much/many?) and compared with géi, 'several', 18.53; before measurable adjectives, 21.128
- gójahn, When..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as TW, 18.48
- Góngjǐ, 'Hong Kong money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86
- gwo, in comparison pattern: Adj-gwo, 'more Adj than', 21.126-27; in comp. pattern for Verbs Vdāk Adjgwo ngóh, 22.152
- gwo, another(as replacement), in V-gwo(nu.) M pattern, 24.201
- háí, from, interchangeable with yàuh, 'from', 17.38
- háí bǐndouh V - ge, 19.72-73; not basically a past reference form, 19.73
- hauh, var of: jihauh), after #M of time, 20.18
- hóu, V.suf. indicating satisfactory conclusion of performance, 19.74
- Hóu choi...jē, 'At least it's lucky...', 24.200; 24.214
- Hóu V (O) (la), an imperative form: 'do V,' 'hadn't you better V?', 25.224-25
- jái, 'put, place', 24.199-200
- ...jē, ...dōu..., 'Even though..., still....', 30.340
- jeui-, jeui Adj = superlative degree, 21.128
- jèung, 'take', in jèung O, V-complement pattern, 28.291; compared with Mandarin bǎ construction, 28.291
- jīgān, 'between', 29.314-15
- ji (var: sínji) '(only) then', 19.72
- ji-, ji Adj = superlative degree, 21.128
- jíchǐn, before..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu-M jíchǐn, 18.48
- jihauh, after..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of TW phrase: Nu.M. jihauh, 18.48
- ...jǐ ngoih, 'outside of,' 'aside from...', 26.3; 26.247
- jǐyiu..., jauh..., 'just have to..., then....', 28.288
- jǐngsǎhn, energy; feel well, belongs to two word classes: N and Adj., 25.225
- jǐng, 'fix,' 'make', as first element in performance-achievement verb compound, 24.203
- jiujiu, every morning, 23.178
- jǐ, verb suf. in time spent sentences of past reference, 18.49; Vsuf in imperative sentence, 'V-jǐ = 'get V done', 23.176
- jo, as adj suffix, end result of a process, 24.201
- juhng, in comparison pattern, 21.128

- káhn, 'near', 29.316; compared with gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316
- kèihsaht, 'But actually....', 27.268
- lā, sen.suf. for uncertainty; la for change + raised intonation for uncertainty, 17.29
- la, ss in time spent sentence of past reference, indicating 'up to now', 18.49-50
- la, sen.suf. in imperative sen, indicating friendly advice, 24.200
- lāih, 'for the purpose of' 24.202; 24.211
- lāih, VP suffix, contradicting stimulus sentence assertion of action performed, 16.8
- lāih, sen.suf. in past reference sentences: Movement Verb Phrase + lāih = return from having been away, 16.8; 26.253
- lāihbaai, 'week', as 'Sunday', 17.28
- lèih, 'distance from', 29.315
- lihn(màaih), 'including', 'and', 'even'; 'to include', 30.339-40
- lo bo, sen.suf. connotes good-natured protest 27.268
- lòh, ss: making a bid for sympathy, 25.224
- mhhaih, as variant of yùhgwó mhhaih, 'otherwise' (QV), 25.225
- mhtùhng, 'not alike', not used as Main Verb in affirmative, 27.269
- máahn máahn, 'every evening', 23.178
- Mandarin-Cantonese compared: Verbal modifier to Sp-M-N, 20.103; taai, 'excessively', 20.103; wúih, 'likely to,' 24.199.
- Manner patterns, 22.150-53
- Measures, voyage measures, 20.100
- meih, 'not yet', in sentences of future reference, 19.71
- meih...jìchihh, interchangeable with jìchihh clause without meih, 18.48
- Méihgām, 'American money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86
- Móuh sówàih ge, 'Whatever you say.', 26.247-48
- Moveable Adverbs, 18.48
- múih, 'every', 'each', 20.99
- (ng)aan, 'late (in the daytime)', 23.177
- noun modification, SV modifier to SP-M-N in direct modification, 20.103
- noun types, the VO-ge construction, 'one who VOs for an occupation', 26.247
- number-measure expressions, with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers, 20.97-98
- numbers, fractions, 20.97-98; serial numbers as approximate numbers, 20.98-99; approximate numbers: sahpgei baakgei, etc., 20.99
- Paired Conjunctions, chéuihfèi...
jauh... 'Must..., in order that...', 'unless..., then....' 23.3; chéuihfèi..., ji... 'Must ..., in order that...', 'unless ..., then...', 23.3; chéuihfèi..., yùhgwó mhhaih..., 'must..., otherwise...', 23.3; chéuihjó..., juhng..., 28.288; chéuihjó..., jauh..., 28.288-89; jíyiu..., jauh..., 28.288; séuiyihh..., daahnhaih..., 25.223; yánwaih, sóyih, 20.97; yat..., jauh..., 'as soon as..., then...', 28.290-91

- 'Passive', construction in Cantonese, 29.312
- Possessive modification, saimúí w/without ge/M, mui with ge/M, 22.154
- Pronouns, pronoun object required in imperative V-jó, 23.176
- Question-words used as non-questions 25.225-27
- Questions negatively phrased, responses to, 16.9; ordinary denial, 16.17; spirited denial, 16.17.
- sai, 'small', used in reference to years of age, 21.130
- sahpgeí, as approximate number, 20.99
- Sentence suffixes: (see individual entries) amáh?, 29.313; amáh, 29.313; ge lo bo, 30.340; ge, 19.88; la, 17.29; la, 'up to now', 18.49-50; la, 'friendly advice', 24.200; lah, 'contradictory', 16.8; lah, 'return', 16.8; 26.253; lo bo, 27.268; loh, 25.224; tim, 25.234
- Sentence type, past reference with TW focus: TW V-ge, 17.35
- Sentence type, Time-spent sentences: past reference with V-jó or V-gwo, 18.49-50; sentence position relative to other post verbal expressions, 18.50-51
- Sentence type, time-since sentences 18.51
- sèuiyh..., daahnhaih... 'although ..., still...', 25.223
- séung, 'think of', past reference verb forms, 16.11
- séung, 'wish to', past reference verb forms, 16.10
- sinji (var:ji), '(only) then', 19.72
- sóyih, see yánwaih, sóyih.
- specifiers, múh, 20.99
- superlative degree, 21.128
- taai, 'excessively', 'too', 22.153
- tim, sen.suf., indicates speaker taken by surprise, 25.234
- Timewords, 17.29
- tùhng, 'to be alike, similar', not used as V in affirmative, 27.269
- Verb suffixes, role in Cantonese, 16.6-7; role in Cantonese and English compared, 16.7
- Verb suffixes, (see individual entries) -dák, -gán, -jó, -yuhn
- Verbs, Class 1 verbs: partial distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.4
- Verbs, Class 2 verbs: no distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.5
- Verbs, Past reference: uninflected verb to express general activity, 16.6
- Verbs, role of verb suffixes in Cantonese, 16.6
- Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past affirmative forms, 19.69
- Verb forms for talking about the past negative forms: mouh V and meih V, 19.70

- Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past, choice questions yáuh móuh V?, and V-jó, etc. meih, 19.70
- Verbs, V-ge pattern, not necessarily a past reference form, 19.86
- Verbs, mhV, as 'not willing to V' 20.101-02
- Verbs, absence of active-passive distinction: 22.151; 23.176; 29.312
- Verbs, performance-achievement verb compounds: 24.202-03; in sentences of past reference, 24.202; in sentences of customary action, 24.203; with dák, 'can' = V-dákAdj, 24.203
- VO-ge, 'one who does VO as occupation', 26.247
- wúih, 'likely to', 24.199; in sentences of past probability, 24.199; compared with Mandarin hwèi, 24.199
- yánwaih..., sóyih..., 'Because...', therefore, 20.97
- yàhnyàhn, 'everybody', 27.267
- yāt, omission before Measure in a múih phrase, 20.99
- yāt..., jauh..., 'as soon as...', then ...', 28.290-91
- yáuh 'have', in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yáuh SVO, 23.178; as equating verb in Timespent sentence, 20.102-03; equating verb in measurable adjective sentence, 21.130; 'to have'; 'there is', as equating verb in a lèih, 'distance from' sentence, 29.316
- yáuhdí, 'some', 27.266
- yáuhdí..., yáuhdí.... 'some..., others....', 27.266
- yeh, 'late (in the evening)', 23.177
- yeuk, 'request, make, an appointment', 30.337
- yihchihh, 'previously', 18.48
- yihhauh, 'afterwards' 18.48
- yih ngoih, same as ji ngoih, (QV), 26.247
- yihwàih, 'to be under the impression', 25.223
- yingbohng, (var:-bóng), 'English pound (sterling)', grammatically a Measure, 19.86
- yiuh, 'require,' as 'cause or make (someone do something)', 20.102; 20.105; 29.313
- yügwó mhhaih, 'otherwise; if not' 25.225
- yühn, Vsuf indicating finishing an action, 26.245
- yuht...yuht... 'more and more....', 30.337

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY LIST

LESSONS 16-30

Entries are arranged in alphabetical order by syllable, with h indicating lower register disregarded alphabetically. When words having the same syllable but different tones are listed, the sequence of tone listing is: high level, mid level, low level, high falling, low falling, high rising, low rising. Numbers in the right hand column refer to the lesson in which the item first appears, thus:

18 = Lesson 18 Basic Conversation

18.1 = Lesson 18, Drill 1

29N = Lesson 29, Notes

Items which appear for the first time in the Notes are listed again when appearing for the first time in the main body of the text. Measures for the nouns follow the noun entries in brackets. In this volume ng is listed separately from n as an initial consonant.

A

a	呀	suf. to members of series in parallel construction	19
āma? (or amáh?)	呀嗎	ss. isn't that right? interrogative sen. suf., checking an assumption	29
āma (or amáh)	呀嗎	ss. for obviousness. in response sentence explaining why/where/when/what/who, <u>āma</u> adds the connotation (cheerfully, without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.	29.15
āam	啱	fitting, suitable, that's fine! splendid! (var. pro: ngāam)	19
āamāam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. pro: ngāamngāam)	22
aan	晏	late (in the day) (var. pro: ngaan)	23.9
aanjau	晏晝	around noon; morning (var. pro: ngaanjau)	23.1
aanjau sahyih dim	晏晝十二點	12 noon (var. pro: <u>ngaanjau-</u>)	23N2

B

bāsi[ga]	巴士	bus	20.1
bāan	班	flight, trip. voyage Measure	20
baatyuh	八月	August	17N
Baihlaak!	弊喇	exclamation of annoyance (var: Baihlok!)	24

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

bātyihp	畢業	to graduate	18
bātyùh, X, bá laak (or lā)	不如... 罷咗	it would be preferable to do <u>X</u>	28
béi	被	introduces the agent of an action, 'by ____'	29
<u>X</u> béi <u>Y</u>	比	<u>X</u> in comparison to <u>Y</u> ; <u>X</u> compared to <u>Y</u>	21
béifāan	畀返	give back	18.10
béigaa	比較	in comparison, comparatively	21
behng	病	illness	29.7
behngjǒ	病咗	got sick	29.1
bīn-	邊	any (one, place, etc.); whatever (one, place, etc.)	25.5
bīndouh	邊度	anywhere; wherever	25.5
bīngo	邊個	anyone; whoever	25.5
bīn nihn?	邊年	which year?	17.3
bīn nihn, bīn yuht, bīn yaht?	邊年邊月	what date?	17.3
bīnsyu?	邊日	where?	28.11
bīn yaht?	邊處	what day?	17.3
bīn yuht?	邊日	what month?	17.3
bǒ [go]	邊月	ball	16.4
boh	波	thin (in thickness, as of cloth)	27.14
boujǐ [jèung]	簿	newspaper	19.2
būi-díp [tou]	報紙	tea set	19.16
bun yeh sahpyih dím	杯碟	twelve midnight	23N2
bùn	半夜十二點	move	18.11
bùn (ng)ŋk	搬	move house	18.11
búnlǒih	搬屋	originally	30.4
búndei hwá	本來	local language	27.3
	本地話		
<u>CH</u>			
chámhdǒ	差唔多	more or less, approximately	21
cháauh	皺	wrinkled	23.6
chānchǐk	親戚	relative(s)	17
-chàn	親	injure, hurt, damage	29
chātjuht	親	July	17N
chek	七月	foot (measurement)	21.5
	尺		

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

chéng	請	invite, request	19
chéngdóu	請到	invite and have the invitation accepted; <u>re</u> servants, to hire them; <u>re</u> dinner guests, to have them accept your invitation	19
chéng gúngyáhn	請工人	hire servants	19
chéng haak	請客	have a dinner party	16.8
chéng síhk faahn, chéng yáhn síhk faahn	請食飯 請人食飯	invite someone for dinner	16.8
cheuimeih	趣味	see: yáuh cheuimeih	21.1
deui <u>X</u> yáuh cheuimeih	對...趣味	be interested in <u>X</u>	30.6
chèuihfèi	除非	unless; only if	28
chèuihjó...(ji ngóih)	除咗	aside from...; other than...; in addition to	28
chēung [go]	窗	window	24
chēunglím [tòhng; faai] [tòu] set; [go]	窗簾	curtain	19
chēuhng tòuh dihnwá [go]	長途電話	long distance phone call	28.1
chēut		M. for movie, a film	16
chēutnín	出年	next year	17
chēutsai	出世	to be born	17
chíjǐ [jèung] [gyún] [daahp]	廁紙	toilet paper roll stack	23.5
chísó [go]	廁所	toilet	22.2
chíh	遲	late (for an appointment), tardy	23.9
chíh	似	is similar to; resembles	27; 27.1
chím méng [go]	簽名	sign one's name	28
-chíhn	前ago (following a Nu-M of time)	22.17
chíhnjǐu	前朝	day before yesterday in the morning	23.7
chíhnmáahn	前晚	night before last	23.7
chíhnyáht	前日	day before yesterday	23.2
chōchō	初初	at first, in the beginning	29
chóh + <u>vehicle</u>	坐	travel by (vehicle), go by (vehicle)	20.1
chòhng [jèung]	床	bed	24.3
chùng chàh	沖茶	make tea	24
chùnglèuhngfóng	沖涼房	bathroom; i.e., room for bathing	24.2
chúhng	重	heavy	21.1

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

ohyùhfóng [go]	廚房	kitchen	24.1
ohyun	寸	inch	21.5
<u>D</u>			
dá	打	hit; to type (follow form of <u>dá jih</u> , [hit-words], i.e. to type	26.1
dá bō	打球	play ball	16.4
dá chéuhng tòuh dihmwá	打長途電話	make a long distance call	28.1
dá dihnbou	打電報	send a telegram	28.1
dáfógèi [go]	打火機	(cigarette) lighter	16
dá fùng	打風	have a typhoon [hit-wind]	30
dá jih	打字	to type (on the typewriter) [hit-words]	26.1
dájihgēi [go][ga]	打字機	typewriter	26.5
dáléih	打理	take care of, attend to	26
dá mǎnjéuk	打麻雀	play mahjong	16.3
dá páai	打牌	play mahjong	16
dásyun	打算	plan on, plan to	17
daai	帶	wear, as of watches, hats, things on top	24.11
daaih	大	in ref. to age: older (in comparison sentences); how old? (in Qwsen)	21.5
daaihhohk [gàan]	大學	university	18
daaihkoi or daaihkói	大概	probably	30
daaihluk	大陸	continent; term used to refer to mainland China	18.1
daaihyàhn [go]	大人	adults	26
dāan [jèung]	單	list	23
daap	搭	travel by (vehicle), take (vehicle); catch (vehicle)	20
daat	撻	Measure for a place	17
daihdí	第的	others, reduced form of daihyih dí, 'other ones,' 'others'	16N
daihyaht	第日	another day, another time (reduced form from <u>daihyih yaht</u>)	30
daihyih (+M)	第二	another..., other, others (boundword, bound to following Measure)	16
daihyih dí	第二的	others, other Ns [daihyih + M]	16

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

-dāk	得	'can,' 'able to' verb suf. indicating physical ability; heuidāk = can go; hāahngdāk = is able to walk	20
V-dāk-hóu Adj	得好	dāk in this pattern is a grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells the manner in which the verb is done or what the result of the verb is	22
Dākgwokyáhn [go]	德國人	German person	27.1
dākhàahn	得閑	free, at leisure, not busy	16
Dākmáhn (also: -mán)	德文	German (language)	27.3
dám		throw out, discard	25
deihfōng [daat] or deihfōng	地方	place	17
deihjǐ [go]	地址	address	17
deui, deuiyù Obj	對, 對於	towards, for, in regard to Obj	30
deui <u>X</u> làih góng	對...嚟講	speaking for <u>X</u> , from the point of view of <u>X</u> , in regard to <u>X</u>	27
deui <u>X</u> yáuh cheuimeih	對...有趣味	be interested in <u>X</u>	30.6
díksi [ga]	的士	taxi	20.3
dím	點	any manner, whatever manner, however	25.5
<u>X</u> díng?	...點	how about <u>X</u> ?, what's <u>X</u> like?	21
díngáai?	點解	why?	20
dímjūng	點鐘	hour	20.6
Dím syun a?	點算呀	'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'	28
dihnbou [fùng]	電報	telegram, cablegram	28.1
dihnbougúk or dihnbouguk [gaàn]	電報局	telegram office	28.1
dihndāng [jáan or jí]	電燈	electric light, electric lamp	30.4
dihnfai	電費	electricity expenses	30.4
dihnsih [ga]	電視	television	16.6
dihnsihgēi [ga]	電視機	TV set	26.5
díp [jek] [go]	碟	plate	19
dit	跌	drop	24
dítchàn	跌親	fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt	29.1
ditlaahm	跌爛	drop and break	24

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

dòsou	多數	mostly, for the most part; the majority	27
dōu	都	still	26.2
douh	道	M for doors	24.7
<u>nu.m.</u> -dóu	度	approximately <u>nu.m</u> (suf. to nu.m. expression)	18
dóusé	倒瀉	spill	24
duhk daaihhoik	讀大學	study at a university, attend a university	18
duhk syù	讀書	to study, to go to school	18
dung	凍	cold	21
<u>F</u>			
faai	塊	piece; M for dishcloth	24
faaidī	快的	hurry and...,right away	24
faahntēng [go]	飯廳	dining room	24.1
fàngáan [gauh]	番規	soap	23.5
fàanheui	返去	go back, return (there)	17
faatsāng	發生	happen	29
faatsiù	發燒	have a fever	29.1
Faatgwokyàhn [go]	法國人	Frenchman	27.1
Faatmàhn (also: <u>-mán</u>)	法文	French (language)	27.3
fai	費	fees, expense	30.4
fan	瞓	sleep	23
fan(gaau)	瞓	go to bed, sleep	23
fanm̀hjeuhk	瞓唔着	can't get to sleep	25
fanjeuhk	瞓着	get to sleep, fall asleep	25
fàn	分	divide, divide up	26
fànbiht	分別	difference	27
fànfu	吩咐	instructions	23
fēigēi [ga]	飛機	airplane	20
fēigēi ch̀euhng [go]	飛機場	airport	20.1
fóchē [ga]	火車	train	20.1
fongg̀ung	放工	leave work, get off from work	29
Fong sām lāi!	放心啦	Don't worry!	26N
fóng [gàan]	房	room	24.2

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

fuhjaak	負責	take responsibility for, is responsible for	26
fù yeuhk	敷藥	treat with medicine	29
fú	苦	strong [bitter]	25.1
fùng	封	M. for telegram M. for letters, telegrams	28.1 26.8
fùng	風	wind	30
fùngkàuh	風球	typhoon signal	30
G			
gājē	家姊	elder sister	18
gāsi [tou] [dī]	傢俬	furniture	19
gàyàhn [dī]	家人	members of the immediate family	20
gaaisiuhseun [fùng]	介紹信	letter of recommendation	26
gàmchi	今次	this time	24.12
gàmjiu	今朝	this morning	23.3
gàmmáahn	今晚	to-night	23.3
gàmnín	今年	this year	17.3
gàmyaht	今日	today	16
gàmyaht hahjau	今日下晝	this afternoon	23.3
gàmyaht (ng)aanjau	今日晏晝	this morning; today around noon	23.3
gám	噉	in such a way; this way, that way; as V, reduced form of <u>gám jòuh</u> , 'do/did it this way,' restricted to use in affirmative only	26
...gám	...噉	that kind of thing, such things	19
gahn(jyuh)	近	near (followed by a placeword object)	29
gàn	跟	from(as in to learn from someone, i.e., learn following someone as model)	22
-gán	緊	Vsuf calling attention to fact that performance is in process	26
gányiu	緊要	important, serious	22.2
gauh	舊	M. for soap	23.5
gauhín	舊年	last year	17.3
gáumhgáu	久唔久	from time to time	26.12
gáuyuht	九月	September	17N
gái-	幾	any (number)	25.5
gei	寄	to mail	28.1

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

géidím	幾點	whatever hour, any hour, any time	25
gei seun	寄信	mail a letter, send a letter	28.1
géi(do)houh?	幾號	what day of the month?	17.3
géi nói?	幾耐	how long (time)?	18
géisi... (or -sih)	幾時	whenever; anytime	25
géiyuht?	幾月	what month?	17.3
génghot	頸渴	thirsty	25.6
geuk [jek]	脚	leg, foot	29
gin	見	meet, see	17
ginmihn	見面	to meet	30
gitfàn	結婚	get married	18.8
giuséng	叫醒	wake someone up	23
gogo láihbaai	個個禮拜	every week	20.2
gogo yuht	個個月	every month	20.2
góján(sih)	個陣(時)	at that time	30.16
VP góján(or gójahn)	個陣	When <u>VP</u> , At the time that <u>VP</u>	18
gói	改	change, alter	30
gokdāk	覺得	feel, consider, realize	21
gònjehtng	乾淨	clean	23
gónm̀hohit	趕唔切	can't make it in time, not have time [hurry-not make it]	20
góngji	港紙	Hong Kong money	19.13
góng yéh	講嘢	[say-things], i.e. to talk	22.8
gòu	高	tall	21.1
gú	估	guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess	30
guih	瘡	tired	25
gùng	工	work	26
gùngfù	工夫	work	26
gwa	掛	hang up	23.14
gwaihtúng [go]	櫃桶	drawer	28
gwāt [gauh]	骨	bone	29
gwahouh	掛號	to register	28
gwahouhseun [fùng]	掛號信	registered letter	28
gwahóu	掛好	hang up	23.14
-gwo	過	used to form the comparative: <u>Adj</u> -er than, more <u>Adj</u> than	21

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

<u>Y-gwo M</u>	過	do another <u>M</u> (as replacement for the original one)	24
gwo hoi	過海	cross the harbour [cross the sea]. in Hong Kong, the expression used to refer to crossing the harbour from the Hong Kong side to the Kowloon side, and vice versa.	16
Gwojéung la	過獎嘞	'You praise me too much! said in response to a compliment	22
Adj-gwotàuh	過頭	too <u>Adj.</u> , excessively <u>Adj.</u>	25.1
Gwóngjàu	廣州	Canton, city of Canton	18
<u>H</u>			
hañchi	下次	next time	17
hahgo láihbaai	下個禮拜	next week	17
hahgo yuht	下個月	next month	17.1
hahjau	下晝	afternoon	23
hahyät <u>M</u>	下一	the next <u>M</u>	20.1
haakténg [go]	客廳	living room	24
háahm	鹹	salty	25.1
háahng	行	runs (of watches)	22.14
háahng gūngsí	行公司	windowshop	16
háahng louh	行路	go on foot [walk-road]	20.1
Haih gám wah lá.	係噉話啦	That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]	28
háí	係	from	17.14
háí <u>X</u> tùhng <u>Y</u> jIgdán	係同之間	between X and Y	29
hahmbahlaahng	哈崩哈	altogether	26
hahmáahn	後晚	day after tomorrow night	23.7
hahyaht	後日	the day after tomorrow	23
háuh	厚	thick	27.14
hei [cheut]	戲	movie	16
heiyún [gàan]	戲院	movie theatre	16
hèimohng	希望	to hope	18
héisàn	起身	get up (from bed) [raise-body]	19.2
héisáu	起首	begin	22
him	謙	modest	22

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

híngdaih	兄弟	elder and younger brothers	22N
hósík	可惜	unfortunately, it is unfortunate (+ sen)	30
hohkfai	學費	tuition	30.4
hòì	開	start off, set out, (for vehicles)	20
hòì (chē)	開	drive (a car)	22.2
hòichí	開始	begin	22N
hòì láahnghei	開冷氣	turn on the air conditioner	28.5
hòì mùhn	開門	open the door(s)	24.7
<u>Tw</u> hòì mùhn		'open at <u>X</u> time' (expresses the opening time of a store)	25.10
hòì sāuyāngēi	開收音機	turn on the radio	27.11
hóì	海	sea	16
-houh	號	day of the month [number]	17.3
yāt houh	一號	the first	
yih houh	二號	the 2d	
sāam houh, etc.	三號	the 3d	
Hòuh Wàh Heiyún	豪華戲院	Hoover Theatre	16
-hóu	好	bring to satisfactory conclusion	19
hóu + Verb phrase + la	好	'It would be a good idea to ...' a form used in making a suggestion	25
hóu chíh	好似	it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely	23
hóuchóì	好彩	luckily, 'Thank goodness'	24
Hóu choi <u>X</u> jē.	好彩...啱	It's lucky that <u>X</u> , at least.	24
hóudòsìh (dōu)	好多時	very often	21.17
hóufāan	好返	get well, return to good health	29.13
Hóu noih móuh gin.	好耐冇見	'Long time no see'.	17
Hóusēng.	好	'Be careful.' 'Mind (you don't...)'	24
hóusíu	好少	rarely, seldom	21.17
hóutái	好睇	nice-looking, pretty (not said in reference to people)	21.16
hóu wúih <u>V</u>	好會	does a good job of <u>V</u> -ing, is good at <u>V</u> -ing	22.10
hùhng	紅	red	25

J

jà faaiji	揸筷子	use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]	17.14
jáan	盞	<u>M.</u> for light or lamp	30.4
jāngdí	掙的	almost, lacks a little	30

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jái	擠	put, place	24
jàn je	真嘅	true; the truth	27
jeui <u>Adj</u>	最	used to form the superlative: most <u>Adj</u> , <u>Adj-est</u>	21.13
jèun [go]	樽	bottle	29.3
jèung	張	M for table, newspaper	19.12;26.8
jèung	張	take	28
jīgāan	之間	between	29
ji <u>Adj</u>	至	used to form the superlative: <u>Adj-est</u> most <u>Adj</u>	21
<u>TW</u> ji <u>TW</u>	至	<u>TW</u> to <u>TW</u> , <u>TW</u> until <u>TW</u> ; between <u>TW</u> and <u>TW</u>	26;30
ji	至	finally, (not until) then, (only) then; (variant of <u>sinji</u>)	19
...ji dāk	...至得	...that'll do it. ..., only then will the requirements be satisfied	24
jidò	至多	at most, the most	18.7
jigányiu jigán(yiu)	至緊要	be sure to, by all means do	17
jisíu	至少	at least, the least	18
jih [go]	字	written word, written figure word used for Chinese ideographs	22
jihgéi	自己	oneself, myself, himself, etc.	28
...ji...	...之...	'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it.	26
____jichihm	之前	before____ (combines with preceding <u>VP</u> or <u>nu.m.</u> length-of-time expression)	18
<u>nu.+time M</u> jichihm	之前	____ago, ____previously, ____before	22.17
____jihauh	之後	after____ (combines with preceding <u>VP</u> or <u>nu.m.</u> length-of-time expression) 'after (thus and so)'	18
...ji ngoih	之內	aside from..., outside (of)....	26
jímuih	姊妹	elder and younger sisters	22N
jíyiu..., jauh...	祇要...,就...	just have to..., then...; as long as you...,	28
jíkhaak	即刻	immediately, right away	28
jíkhaih	即係	that is, in other words, that is to say	17
jihnghaih <u>V</u>	淨係	just, merely, only <u>V</u>	16
jingsàhn	精神	energy	25

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jíng	整	make, fix	19
jíng chāan	整槍	make, cook (Western) meals	19.1
jíng chē	整車	repair cars	19.15
jíng hóu	整好	fix satisfactorily	19
jíng fāan	整返	fix back to original shape	23.11
jiujiu	朝	every morning	23.13
jiujóu	朝早	morning	23
-jó	咗	verb suf. in time spent phrase indicating past reference	18
Jouh māt?	做乜	How come?	24.11
johng	撞	bump into	29
johngohàn	撞親	injure by bumping	29
jòu or jōu	租	rent	19
jóu	早	early	23
jóu bou [jèung]	早報	morning paper	24.9
jūngtáuh	鐘頭	hour	18.2
juhng	重	even	21
juhng Adj dí	重...的	even more Adj, even Adj-er	21
jú	煮	to cook	19.1
jú faahn	煮飯	cook Chinese style food	19.1
júfāan [go] or júfaahn	煮飯	a person who works as a cook in a private home (usually a woman)	26
júsíhk	煮食	cooking	26

K

kámmáahn	尋晚	last night	23.2
kámyaht	尋日	yesterday	16
kámyaht hahjau	尋日下晝	yesterday afternoon	23.2
kámyaht jiu	尋日朝	yesterday morning	23.2
kámyaht (ng)aanjau	尋日晏晝	yesterday noon	23.2
kámlihk	勤力	industrious	22.18
káhn	近	near	29.4
kèhláu [go]	近騎樓	veranda, terrace	24
kèhsaht	其實	in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' (leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence)	27

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

kinggái	傾偈	have a chat, talk casually	22
kyutdihng	決定	decide	18
L			
laahmchē [ga]	纜車	cable car. in HK: the Peak Tram	20.1
làahm	藍	blue	25.1
laahn	爛	broken	24
laahnjó	爛咗	has become spoiled, rotten (of perishables)	25
láahn	懶	lazy, idle	22.18
láahnghei (gēi) [go, ga]	冷氣	air conditioner	26.5
láahngtín	冷天	winter	21
laaht	辣	peppery	25.1
laahttaat	辣撻	dirty	23.6
lâih	㗎	to, in order to, for the purpose of	24.10
-lâih	㗎	VPSuf in response sen adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'	16
-lâih	㗎	VPSuf in sen. of past reference suffixed to <u>heui</u> phrases, indicates that person has returned from where he went	16
Lâih (PW) chón ā! lâ!	㗎 (PW) 坐啦	Come visit (place)!	17
lâihbaai [go]	禮拜	week	17
lâihbaai	禮拜	Sunday [lit: week]	17.2
lâihbaai géi?	禮拜幾	what day of the week?	17.3
lâihbaailuhk	禮拜六	Saturday	17.2
lâihbaaiŋgh	禮拜五	Friday	17.2
lâihbaaisâam	禮拜三	Wednesday	17.2
lâihbaaisei	禮拜四	Thursday	17
lâihbaaiyaht	禮拜日	Sunday	17.2
lâihbaaiyāt	禮拜一	Monday	17.2
lâihbaaiyih	禮拜二	Tuesday	17.2
lauh	漏	leak	22.2
lauhdài	留低	leave/left (something) behind	24.1
lâuhhohk	留學	study abroad	18
lâuhleih	流利	fluent in speech, fluently	22.2
lèih <u>X</u>	離	distance from <u>X</u>	29

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

lêk	叻	smart, brilliant	21.1
léuihhàhng	旅行	excursion	20.1
leuhnjeuhn	掄盡	clumsy, awkward, stupid	22
lèuhn	輪	one journey, referring to bus, train, trams	20.1
lèuhng	涼	cool	21.1
lih	連	to include	30N
lih...dōu	連...都	not even	30.4
lih(màaih)	連(埋)	including	30.4
lihngsingwún	領事館	consulate	27
lobol	囉啫	sen.suf. with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.	27
lòh	囉	sen.suf. signifying a bid for sympathy	25
lohkyúh	落雨	to rain [down-rain]	24
lauh	路	road	20.1
luhk	綠	green	25.1
luhkyuht	六月	June	17N
<u>M</u>			
mhdàkhàahn	唔得閑	busy	16
mhhaih	唔係	otherwise, if not	25.4
mhjì	唔止	more than, not just	30.8
mhjingsáhn	唔精神	not feel well, not have energy	28.3
mhsik jih	唔識字	illiterate	28
mhsyùfuhk	唔舒服	not feel well, <u>i.e.</u> , feel sick	29.1
mhtùhng	唔同	not alike; used as <u>V</u> in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative	27; 27.6
màhfàahn	麻煩	trouble	28
màhjéuk	麻雀	mahjong; [fu] set; [tòih] table; [jek] tile; [hyūn] games	16.3
màhmádeí	麻麻地	middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by	22
-màaih	埋	together, tight; sómàaih-locked up	28
maahn	萬	ten thousand	19.1
máahnfaahn	晚飯	supper	19.2

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

máahn máahn	晚晚	every evening	23.18
maat	抹	wipe, polish; wet-mop	24
máhn	聞	to smell	27.4
Mát + sentence	乜	How come? + sen.	25
měyéh	乜嘢	anything; everything; whatever	25
meih	味	smell, odor, fragrance	27.4
meih <u>VP</u> jichihm	未...之前	before_____ (combines with enclosed verb phrase to express 'before (thus and so)')	18
méihgām	美金	American money [American-gold]	19.13
mòuhgān [tíuh]	毛巾	towels	23.5
Móuh!	冇	'Nothing special.' 'Nothing much.' A response making light of the topic under discussion.	29
Móuh bashnfaat.	冇辦法	'There's nothing(you/we) can do.' 'It can't be helped.'	30
móuhgéincóih	冇幾耐	a short period [not long]	18.3
Móuh sówáih ge.	冇所謂嘅	'Any way is OK with me.' 'o complaints.'	26
múí [go]	妹	younger sister	22.1
múih	每	every, each	20
mùhn [dóuh]	門	door	24.7
<u>N</u>			
nàahmyán [go]	男人	man	27.10
nàahn	難	difficult	21.1
nàahn hohk	難學	difficult to learn	21.10
Néih m̀hhaìh wah....?	你唔係話	Didn't you say....?	30.4
Néih yauh wah....?	你又話	You said....(but it's not so; what's up)?	30.5
néuihjái [go]	女仔	girl, young woman	29.2
néuihyán [go]	女人	woman	27.10
nī go láihbaai	呢個禮拜	this week	17.3
nī go yuht	呢個月	this month	17.3
nīpáai	呢	lately, recently; these few days	16.1
nīhn	年	year	17
nīhnnīhn	年年	every year	20.2
noih	耐	long (time)	17

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

NG

nghyuht	五月	May	17N
(ng)āam	啱	fitting, suitable (var. of āam)	19
(Ng)āam la(ak)!	啱嘞	That's fine!, Splendid!(var:āam la(ak))	19
(ng)āam(ng)āam	啱啱	just, only a moment ago (var. of āamāam)	22
(ng)aan	晏	late (in the day) (var: aan)	23.9
(ng)aanjau	晏晝	around noon, morning (var: aanjau)	23.1
(ng)aanjau sahpyihdim	晏晝十二點	twelve noon	23N2
ngáahnfan	眼瞓	sleepy	25
ngáihhim	危險	dangerous, danger	29
ngohngódséi	餓餓地	a bit hungry	25
ngoih	外	outside	26
(ng)ūkjòu, (ng)ūkjòu	屋租	house rent (var ūkjòu, ūkjòu)	19.1

Q

Qumún	澳門	Macau	18.11
-------	----	-------	-------

P

pa	怕	frightened of, be afraid of	20
----	---	-----------------------------	----

S

sāangá [go]	衫架	coat hanger	23.5
Sāamfāahnsih	三藩市	San Francisco	17
sāamsei	三四	three or four	20
Sāamyuht	三月	March	17N
sāan	門	close, shut	24
Sāandéng	山頂	the Peak	20.1
sāan mǔhn	門門	close the door(s)	24.7
<u>TW</u> sāan mǔhn	門門	'close the doors (of a store) at <u>X</u> time,' expresses closing time of a store	25.10
sāan sāuyāngèi	門收音機	turn off the radio	28.4
sàng	生	raw, underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)	25.1
sai	細	younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'	21.6

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

sailouhnéui [go]	細佬女	little girl	27.13
sailóu [go]	細佬	younger brother	22.1
sailóugō [go]	細佬哥	child	16.5
saisèng	細聲	quiet voiced, in a small voice, soft (opposite of loud) in speech. [small-sound]	22.3
Sàiyàhn [go]	西人	Westerner, European, Caucasian	27.1
sái	洗	wash	23
sáidākohit	洗得切	able to get it washed in time	23
sàn làih ge yàhn	新嚟嘅人	newcomer, new arrival	19
sánfánjing [jèung]	身份証	I.D. card	26
Sàngaai	新界	the New Territories	20.1
sànséui	薪水	salary (of white collar workers)	19.1
sāp	濕	wet, damp	21
sahpgei	十幾	a few more than 10 [ten-several]	20
Sahpyātyuht	十一月	November	17N
Sahpyihyuht	十二月	December	17N
Sahpyuht	十月	October	17N
sāumēi	收尾	finally, in the end	29
sāuyāngèi [go, ga]	收音機	radio	26.5
sàu	收	receive, collect, take in	28
sàu seun	收信	receive a letter	28.3
sáujuhk	手續	procedure(s)	28
sé jih	寫字	write [write-words]	19.15
séfāan	寫返	write and return	23
Seiyuht	四月	April	17N
sàng	聲	sound, noise	27.4
sèhng	成	entire, whole; fully	26
séng	醒	wake up, awaken	23
seui	歲	years of age	21.5
seuihfóng [go]	睡房	bedroom	24.1
sèuiyih	雖然	although	25
sèuiyih...daahnhaih	雖然...但係	although..., still,,,; though..., still...	25
séuifai	水費	water payment, fees, expenses	30.4
séuihàuh [go] [tìuh]	水喉	water faucet [go]; water pipes [tìuh]	22.3

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

seun [fùng]	信	letter	26
sēungfùng	傷風	have a cold, catch a cold	29.1
seuhng go láihbaai	上個禮拜	last week	17.3
seuhng go yuht	上個月	last month	17.3
séuhng gung	上工	start work	26
sihjái [go]	侍仔	roomboy	23
sihtáu [go]	事頭	employer, boss	28
sihgaan [dī]	時間	time	16
sihsin	時時	always, at all times	21
(sin)ji	(先)至	(not until) then, (only) then, finally	19
sīngkèih [go]	星期	week	17N
siu	少	few	27.11
siusām	小心	careful	22.18
só	鎖	to lock	28
sómáaih	鎖埋	lock up, lock tight	28
sósih [tíuh]	鎖鑰	key	28
[cháu]		bunch held together (spoken form)	
[chyun]		(use for written form) link of keys	
sóyih	所以	therefore	20
sóng	鬆	crisp	25
suhk	熟	done (of cooked things), ripe (of fruit)	25.1
syùfóng [go]	書房	study, den [book-room]	24.1
syùtóih [jèung]	書枱	desk	24.1
syun	算	is considered, can be considered as..., counted as ...	29
syun la(ak)!	算嘞	Never mind! <u>or</u> Forget it!	28
syùn	酸	sour	25.1
syùnlaht tòng [go][wún]	酸辣湯	vinegar-pepper soup	28.10
syùhn [jèk] [ga]	船	ship, ferry	20
syutgwaih [go]	雪櫃	refrigerator	25

T

taai	太	too, excessively	22
Taaitáai	太太	'Ma'am,' 'Missy.' (term used by ser- vant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)	24

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

tái dihnsih	睇電視	watch television	16.6
tái hei	睇戲	see a movie	16
tàuhseīn	頭先	just a while ago	29
tàuh tung	頭痛	have a headache; headache	29.1
téngginwah	聽見話	hear tell, I hear...	17
tíhm	甜	sweet	25
tínhei	天氣	weather	21
tíngjiu	聽朝	tomorrow morning	23
tíngmáahn	聽晚	tomorrow night	23.4
tíngyaht	聽日	tomorrow	16
tíngyaht hahjau	聽日下晝	tomorrow afternoon	23.4
tíngyaht (ng)aanjau	聽日晏晝	tomorrow morning around noon	23.4
tóí [jèung]	枱	table	19.12
Tòihbāk	台北	Taipei	18
Tòihwāan or Tòihwāan	台灣	Taiwan	18
Tòihwāanyàhn [go]	台灣人	Taiwanese person	21
tokpún [go]	托盤	tray	24.1
tong	熨	to iron, press	23
tong wòhngjó	熨黃咗	scorched [iron-yellowed]	29.2
tou	套	set, M for set of furniture, set of dishes, etc.	19
tòuhjéung [go]	圖章	chop, seal	28
tóuhngoh	肚餓	hungry	25
túngji	通知	communicate with	30
túngsèuhng	通常	ordinarily, usually	26
túhng per. yārchàih V	同...一齊	<u>V</u> together with <u>person</u>	20
túhng <u>X</u> yātyeuhng	同...一樣	the same as <u>X</u>	21
túhngmàaih	同理	and, with	26
tyúhn	斷	to break (of bones and stick-like objects)	29
tihmsyùn yú [tiuh] [dihp]	甜酸魚	sweet and sour fish	28.10

U

ŭkjòu, ŭkjòu	屋租	see: <u>ngŭkjòu</u>	19.1
--------------	----	---------------------	------

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

W

Wah!	嘩	Exclamation of awe	30
Wah mhdihng.	話唔定	Can't say for sure; uncertain	17
Wáhsihngdeuhn	華盛頓	Washington	17
waaihjó	壞咗	out of order, broken down	26.4
wán yéh jòuh	搵嘢做	look for a job	18
wándóu	搵到	find [search-succeed]	19
wòhng	黃	yellow	25.1
wùh	壺	pot, container Measure	24
wùih seun	回信	answer a letter	28.1
wùih	會	likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)	24
wún-dihp [tou]	碗碟	a set of china	19.16

Y

yáih	吟	terrible, awful	22
yan [go]	印	spot	23
yánwaih	因為	because	20
yánwaih..., sóyih...	因為...所以...	because ..., therefore...; since..., so...	20
yáhgùng	人工	wages (of servants, day laborers)	19.1
yāt V^1 , jauh V^2	一...	as soon as V^1 , then V^2 .	28
yāt go yán	一個人	alone, by oneself	26
yātchàih	一齊	together	19
yātdihng	一定	certainly, definitely	19
yājtán	一陣	in a little while, in just a little while	23.10
Yātyuht	一月	January	17N
yaht	日	day	17.3
yahtyaht	日日	every day	20.2
yàuh <u>X</u> dou <u>Y</u> jīgān	由X到Y之間	between <u>X</u> and <u>Y</u>	29.12
yàuhchàai [go]	郵差	postman	28
yàuhjinggúk (or -guhk)	[gāan] 郵政局	post office	28
yàuhhaak [di]	遊客	tourist	23
yàuhséui	游水	swim; swimming	16.3

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

yáuh behng	有病	be sick, have an illness	29.1
yáuh cheumeih	有趣味	interesting	21.1
yáuhdí	有的	some, a few	27
yáuhdí..., yáuhdí...	有的...有的..	some..., others...	27
yáuhsíh	有時	sometimes	21.17
yáuh yík	有益	beneficial	30
yeh	在	late (in the evening)	23.9
yehmáahn	在晚	at night	23.1
yeuk	約	make an appointment	30
yeukhóu	約好	agree on the time and/or place for an appointment [request-successful]	30
yeuhk	藥	medicine	29
yeuhkséui [jèun] [dihk]	藥水	(liquid) medicine [bottle][drop] drop	29.3
yeuhkyún [lāp] [jèun]	藥丸	medicine in pill form [M for pill][bottle]	29.3
yeuhngyeuhng	樣樣	everything, every kind of thing	28.12
yīyún [gàan]	醫院	hospital	29
yih	易	easy	21.1
yihyuht	二月	February	17
yihohé	而且	furthermore	20
yí [jèung]	椅	chair	19.16
yihohih	以前	previously, formerly, before	18
yihgíng	已經	already	19
yihhauh	以後	afterwards	18.14
yih ngoih	以內	outside of, aside from, with the exception of	26N
<u>X</u> yihseuhng	X 以上	above ..., more than... (follows number expression)	30
yihwàih	以為	think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be mistakenly had the impression)	25
yík	益	benefit, profit	30
yíng bóng	英鎊	British pounds sterling [English pound]	19.13
yiht	熱	hot	21.1
yihttjín	熱天	summer	21
yiú <u>length of time</u>	要	takes <u>length of time</u>	20

CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

yiú	要	cause, make (someone do something) make, cause (someone to do something)	20.1.4; 29
yùngwó	如果	if, on condition that	18
yùngwó m̀hhaìh	如果唔係	otherwise, if not	25
-yùhn	完	verb suf.: finish	26
yùhn lòih	原來	basically, originally; basis, origin	20
Yùhn lòih haih gám ge.	原來係噉 噉	Oh, <u>that's</u> why. So <u>that's</u> the reason!	20
yúhn	遠	far	29
yuht [go]	月	month	17.1
yuht...yuht...	愈...愈...	the more...the more...	30
yuht làih yuht <u>Adj</u>	愈噉愈	getting more and more <u>Adj</u>	30
